MUSLIMS AND CRUSADERS

CHRISTIANITY'S WARS IN THE MIDDLE EAST, 1095–1382, FROM THE ISLAMIC SOURCES

SEMINAR STUDIES

Niall Christie

ROUTLEDGE

VISIT...

SEMINAR STUDIES

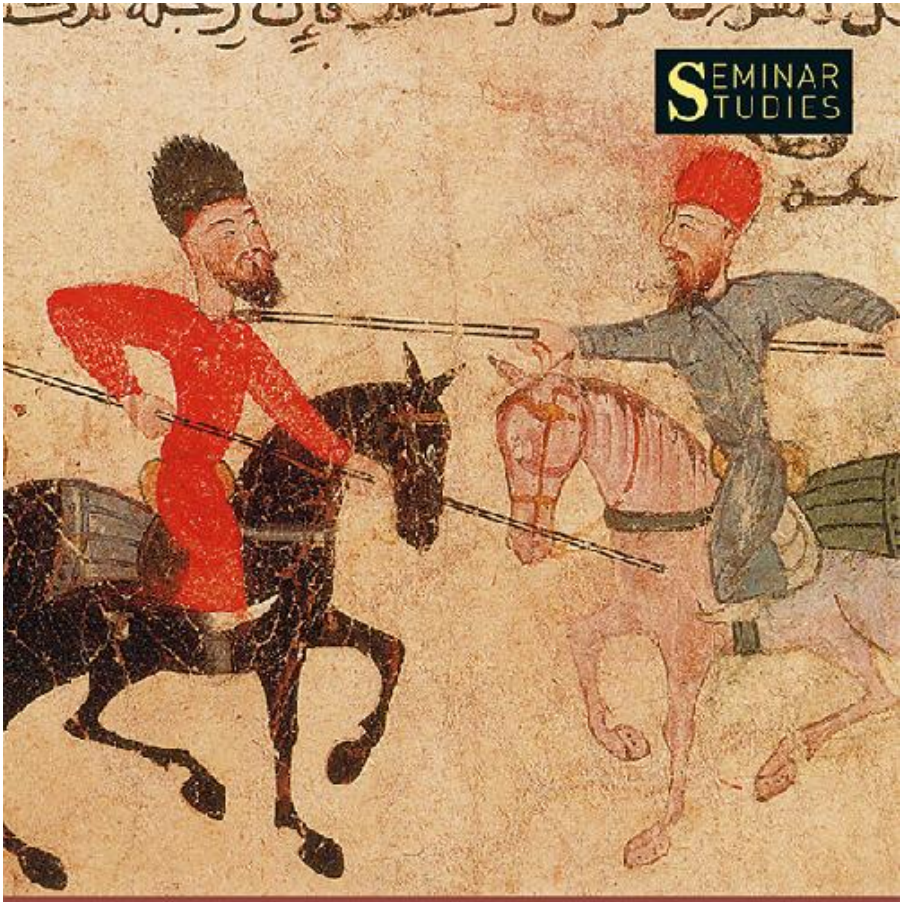
MUSLIMS AND CRUSADERS

Christianity's Wars in the Middle East, 1095–1382, from the Islamic Sources

Second Edition

NIALL CHRISTIE

ROUTLEDGE



MUSLIMS AND CRUSADERS

Christianity's Wars in the Middle East, 1095–1382, from the Islamic Sources

Second Edition

NIALL CHRISTIE

ROUTLEDGE

'The topic of the Muslim responses to the Crusades is a dense and complex field. Niall Christie's textbook, now in its expanded second edition, simplifies the subject and presents it in an engaging, succinct, but also thorough manner. I highly recommend this textbook for all university courses on the field of the Islamic World and the Crusades.'

Fadi Ragheb, Assistant Professor, Near and Middle Eastern Civilizations, *University of Toronto, Canada*

'In the twenty-first century, it is increasingly imperative that we teach the history of the crusades comparatively and critically, with attention to historical methods, contexts, and contingencies. Dr. Christie's groundbreaking textbook empowers instructors and students to do this, even if they are encountering Islamic history for the first time. Christie introduces key terms and concepts, rigorously contextualizes his sources, and thoughtfully considers historiographical debates. He accomplishes this concisely and in clear, student-friendly prose, while also providing a full range of teaching aids, including sometimes otherwise unavailable primary sources in translation. This book is absolutely essential for anyone teaching the history of the crusades.'

Susanna A. Throop, Associate Professor, *Ursinus College, USA*

Muslims and Crusaders

Muslims and Crusaders combines chronological narrative, discussion of important areas of scholarly enquiry and evidence from Islamic primary sources to give a well-rounded survey of Christianity's wars in the Middle East, 1095–1382.

Revised, expanded, and updated to take account of the most recent scholarship, this second edition enables readers to achieve a broader and more complete perspective on the crusading period by presenting the crusades from the viewpoints of those against whom they were waged, the Muslim peoples of the Levant. The book introduces the reader to the most significant issues that affected Muslim responses to the European crusaders and their descendants who would go on to live in the Latin Christian states that were created in the region. It considers not only the military encounters between Muslims and crusaders, but also the personal, political, diplomatic, and trade interactions that took place between the Muslims and Franks away from the battlefield.

Engaging with a wide range of translated primary source documents, including chronicles, dynastic histories, religious and legal texts, and poetry, *Muslims and Crusaders* is ideal for students and historians of the crusades.

Niall Christie in an instructor in history at Langara College in Vancouver, Canada, where he teaches the history of Europe and the Muslim world. He is also an adjunct professor of medieval studies at the University of Victoria. His research focuses on the Muslim response to the crusades. He is the author of numerous articles and *The Book of the Jihad of 'Ali ibn Tahir al-Sulami (d. 1106): Text, Translation and Commentary* (2015).

Introduction to the series

History is the narrative constructed by historians from traces left by the past. Historical enquiry is often driven by contemporary issues and, in consequence, historical narratives are constantly reconsidered, reconstructed and reshaped. The fact that different historians have different perspectives on issues means that there is often controversy and no universally agreed version of past events. *Seminar Studies* was designed to bridge the gap between current research and debate, and the broad, popular general surveys that often date rapidly.

The volumes in the series are written by historians who are not only familiar with the latest research and current debates concerning their topic, but who have themselves contributed to our understanding of the subject. The books are intended to provide the reader with a clear introduction to a major topic in history. They provide both a narrative of events and a critical analysis of contemporary interpretations. They include the kinds of tools generally omitted from specialist monographs: a chronology of events, a glossary of terms and brief biographies of 'who's who'. They also include bibliographical essays in order to guide students to the literature on various aspects of the subject. Students and teachers alike will find that the selection of documents will stimulate the discussion and offer insight into the raw materials used by historians in their attempt to understand the past.

Clive Emsley and Gordon Martel
Series Editors

Muslims and Crusaders

Christianity's Wars in the Middle East, 1095–1382, from the Islamic Sources

Second Edition

Niall Christie

Routledge
Taylor & Francis Group
LONDON AND NEW YORK

Second edition published 2020
by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon, OX14 4RN

and by Routledge
52 Vanderbilt Avenue, New York, NY 10017

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

© 2020 Niall Christie

The right of Niall Christie to be identified as author of this work has been asserted by him in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

Trademark notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

First edition published by Routledge 2014

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Names: Christie, Niall, author.
Title: Muslims and crusaders: Christianity's wars in the Middle East, 1095–1382, from the Islamic sources/Niall Christie.
Description: Second edition. | Abingdon, Oxon; New York, NY: Routledge, 2020. | Includes bibliographical references and index.
Identifiers: LCCN 2019047484 (print) | LCCN 2019047485 (ebook) | ISBN 9781138543102 (hardback) | ISBN 9781138543119 (paperback) | ISBN 9781351007368 (ebook)
Subjects: LCSH: Crusades. | Islam—Relations—Christianity—History—To 1500. | Christianity and other religions—Islam—History—To 1500. | Muslims—

Middle East—History—To 1500. | Crusades—Sources. | Islam—Relations—Christianity—History—To 1500—Sources. | Christianity and other religions—Islam—History—To 1500—Sources. | Muslims—Middle East—History—To 1500—Sources.
Classification: LCC D157. C474 2020 (print) | LCC D157 (ebook) | DDC 909.07—dc23
LC record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2019047484
LC ebook record available at https://lccn.loc.gov/2019047485

ISBN: 978-1-138-54310-2 (hbk)
ISBN: 978-1-138-54311-9 (pbk)
ISBN: 978-1-351-00736-8 (ebk)

Typeset in Sabon
by Apex CoVantage, LLC

For Jonathan Riley-Smith and Bernard Hamilton –
mentors to us all, sorely missed
And as always, for Steph – my guiding light

Contents

Acknowledgements
Guide to Muslim names
List of figures
List of maps
List of dynastic tables and genealogies
Chronology
Who's who
Glossary
Maps
Dynastic tables and genealogies

1 Introduction
Previous works on Muslim views of the crusades
The limitations of this work
The Muslim sources

2 The Muslim world before the crusades
A brief history
Core beliefs and practices
Jihad
Sunnis and Shi'ites
The Levantine economy and society
The Franks through Muslim eyes before 1096
The Levant in the 11th century
Further reading

3 The First Crusade and the Muslim response, 1095–1146
Chronological overview
The problem of the sources

Muslim views of the crusaders' motives
The first signs of counter-crusade
Zangi: the first great mujahid?
Conclusion
Further reading

4 Nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad*, 1146–1174
Chronological overview
The crusader attack on Damascus through Muslim eyes
The conversion of the Turks and the 'Sunni Revival'
Nur al-Din: 'La Plaque Tournante'?
Saladin and Nur al-Din
Conclusion
Further reading

5 Victory and stalemate, 1174–1193
Chronological overview
The problem of the sources
The articulation of power
The victorious mujahid
Facing the crusades of the late 12th century
Conclusion
Further reading

6 Making war in the Levant
The problem of the sources
'The Franks'
Jihad *and religious warfare*
Who should fight?
Legitimate targets
Rewards
The Abode of Islam and the Abode of War
Greater and lesser jihad
Muslim-Christian influences?
Armies and pitched battles
Fortifications and sieges
Fighting at sea
The Frankish influence?
Conclusion
Further reading

7 Making peace in the Levant
Truces
Muslims under Frankish rule
Trade
Muslim views on Frankish culture
Religion
Law
Medicine
Sexual morality
The cultural barrier?
Conclusion
Further reading

8 The successors of Saladin, 1193–1249
Chronological overview
Family politics in the Levant
The Ayyubids and the jihad
Relations with the Franks
Critics of the Ayyubids
Conclusion
Further reading

9 The Mamluks, 1249–1382
Chronological overview
Mamluk historiography
The Mamluk experience
The Mamluk state
Legitimizing rule
The Mamluk jihad
Conclusion
Further reading

10 Conclusion
The impact of the crusades on the medieval Middle East
The impact of the crusades on the modern-day Muslim consciousness
Rationalizing terrorism
Latter-day Saladins?
Final words
Further reading

Documents
Select bibliography
Index

Acknowledgements

As the title page indicates, this is the second edition of *Muslims and Crusaders*. I remain immensely grateful to all those who were involved in the production and success of the first edition and whose contributions are described in the Acknowledgements section of that volume. In writing the second edition, I have also benefitted from the support of many people. The team at Routledge has again been enormously helpful in bringing this book into print. I am particularly grateful to Laura Pilsworth, who requested this edition and ably took me through the initial commissioning process; Morwenna Scott, who was a constant fount of patient wisdom and guidance throughout the writing of this text; and Sarah Adams, who guided it through the production process. I am also obliged to Kevin Kelsey and all at Apex CoVantage for their work on the production of this volume. I would also like to express my heartfelt thanks to the anonymous readers who made a wealth of helpful suggestions regarding what should be in the second edition, and to the various presses, museums, archives, and individuals who kindly gave copyright permission for the images and primary texts reproduced in this book.

As with the first edition, while writing, I have been very fortunate to have received invaluable feedback from a number of scholars. I owe a prodigious debt of thanks to Susanna Throop, who gave me thorough, deep, and thoughtful advice on this project at every stage. I am also very grateful for the input of Barrie Brill, Michael Fulton, Jessica Hemming, Nicholas Morton, Paul Regush, and Lutz Richter-Bernburg, who kindly agreed to read and comment on the manuscript. Any remaining weaknesses in this text are entirely my own. I am also hugely thankful for the encouragement, suggestions, and moral support that I have received from Hélène Cazes, Jen Knapp, and all my friends and colleagues at Langara College, the University of British Columbia, the University of Victoria, and throughout the scholarly community. I also continue to be grateful to my family, for their love and support, and to my students, who continue to challenge and enlighten me as we jointly explore the

past in the classroom.

This book is dedicated to three people. Over the last three years, the crusades studies community has lost two of its greatest luminaries: Jonathan Riley-Smith (d. 2016) and Bernard Hamilton (d. 2019); as one of the countless beneficiaries of their advice and encouragement, I dedicate this work to their memory. And finally, I also dedicate it, with immeasurable gratitude, to my wife, Steph, my own guiding light, whose constant love and unfailing support were vital to this book's completion, and who continues to sustain and inspire me as we continue our own adventures through life together.

Every effort has been made to contact copyright holders. Please advise the publisher of any errors or omissions, and these will be corrected in subsequent editions.

Guide to Muslim names

Muslim names consist of a number of components:

1. *Ism* (given name): This is the name given to a child at birth, which usually takes one of the following forms: (1) the Arabic form of a Biblical name, as found in the *Qur'an* (e.g. Ibrahim [Abraham] or Maryam [Mary]); (2) an originally Arabic name (e.g. Muhammad or Fatima); (3) a compound of the word ʿAbd (servant of) and an epithet of God (e.g. ʿAbd Allah [Servant of God] or ʿAbd al-Malik [Servant of the King]); or (4) a non-Arabic name (e.g. Tughtigin).
2. *Nasab* (lineage): This follows the *ism* and normally refers to the individual's father, though some historical figures were known by *nasabs* indicating an ancestor instead. For males, the Arabic *nasab* consists of *ibn* ('son of', sometimes shortened to *bin* or simply *b.*), followed by the father's name (usually their *ism*). For females, it consists of *bint* ('daughter of', sometimes shortened to *bt.*), followed by the father's name; for example, the Prophet's daughter was called Fatima bint Muhammad. In Persian, the equivalent of *ibn* is *i* suffixed to the *ism* (e.g. Hasan-i Sabbah).
3. *Kunya* (parental honorific): This often precedes the *ism* and is a name taken by a parent after the birth of their first child, consisting of *Abu* ('father of') or *Umm* ('mother of'), followed by the child's name. In the period covered by this book, an honorific epithet was often used instead of a child's name.
4. *Laqab* (honorific): *Laqabs* are titles, and in medieval times, one individual might be granted several by their political superiors. They often come before the other elements of the name. Common forms for *laqabs* include compounds ending in *al-Din* ('of the faith'), *al-Mulk* ('of the kingdom'), or *al-Dawla* ('of the state') or compounds beginning with *al-Malik* ('the king'), although others exist. Examples include Sayf al-

Din ('Sword of the Faith'), Nizam al-Mulk ('Good Order of the Kingdom'), Taj al-Dawla ('Crown of the State') and al-Malik al-'Adil ('the Just King'). When referring to historical figures using their 'Malik' *laqab*, scholars often omit the first part; thus, the last example cited would usually be referred to simply as 'al-'Adil'.

5 *Nisba* (ascription): This is a wide category encompassing a range of descriptors including geographical origin, profession, ethnicity, preferred school of law, or simply a distinctive attribute, and an individual again might have several *nisbas*. *Nisbas* usually come last, begin with the definite article *al-* and end with a long *i* (if male) or with *iyya* (if female).

To take an example: probably the most famous Muslim from the crusading period is Saladin (r. 1169–93), whose name in Arabic can be given as:

Al-Malik al-Nasir Salah al-Din Abu'l-Muzaffar Yusuf ibn Ayyub al-Tikriti al-Kurdi

This can be translated as 'The King who Aids (*laqab*), Righteousness of the Faith (*laqab*), Father of the Victorious (*kunya*, honorific in this case), Joseph (*ism*, Qur'anic form of Biblical name), son of Job (*nasab*, again with Qur'anic form of Biblical name), of Tikrit (*nisba*), the Kurd (*nisba*)'.

Note that 'Saladin' is a Latin corruption of the sultan's *laqab* 'Salah al-Din'. Not all the components of Muslim names are used in the sources when referring to a particular individual, nor is there a standard practice for deciding which elements to include or omit or which order to place them in, so an individual might be referred to using different names at different times or by different authors, and the various components of their names might also come in different orders depending on the choice of the writer in question.

For further details, see P.M. Holt, *The Age of the Crusades* (1986), pp. xi–xii, and Jere L. Bachrach, *A Middle East Studies Handbook* (1984), p. 4, on which the previous discussion draws heavily.

Figures

3.1 The Cappella Palatina, Palermo
4.1 Nur al-Din's *minbar* in the Aqsa Mosque, Jerusalem
4.2 The Dome of the Rock, Jerusalem
5.1 The Citadel of Cairo, Egypt
6.1 The Citadel at Busra al-Sham, Syria
6.2 Bab al-Futuh, Cairo, Egypt
6.3 The Castle of Ajlun, Jordan
9.1 Mamluk administration in Egypt and Syria, late 13th century
9.2 Mosque lamp for the mausoleum of the Emir Aydakin al-'Ala'i al-Bunduqdar
9.3 *Dinar* of al-Malik al-Zahir Baybars 152
9.4 Jisr Jindas, Lydda (Lod), Israel 152
10.1 Propaganda picture of Saddam Husayn as the heir of SaladinHusayn as the heir of Saladin

Maps

1 *Bilad al-Sham* (northern half)
2 *Bilad al-Sham* (southern half)
3 The Nile Valley and the Red Sea
4 Asia Minor and the Northern *Bilad al-Sham* and Jazira

Dynastic tables and genealogies

1 The Ayyubids of Egypt, Damascus, and Aleppo
2 Al-Salih Ayyub and the Early Mamluk Sultans
3 The House of Qalawun

Chronology

610	The Prophet Muhammad begins to receive the revelation of the *Qur'an* at Mecca.
622	Emigration of the Muslims from Mecca to Medina.
630	Muslim conquest of Mecca.
630–632	Islam spreads across Arabia.
656–61	Caliphate of ʿAli ibn Abi Talib.
661–750	Umayyad Caliphate rules from Damascus. Muslim world expands to stretch from Transoxania and India in east to France and Spain in west.
750–1258	First reign of the ʿAbbasid Caliphate, from Baghdad (mostly) from 762.
910	ʿAbd Allah (or ʿUbayd Allah) al-Mahdi establishes Fatimid Caliphate at Qayrawan.
929	ʿAbd al-Rahman III declares himself caliph at Cordoba.
945–1055	Buyid domination of ʿAbbasid caliphs.
969	Fatimids take Egypt, reign from Cairo from 973.
1031	Collapse of the Umayyad Caliphate of Cordoba.
1055	Seljuks take Baghdad and establish Great Seljuk Sultanate.
1061–90	Norman conquest of Sicily.
1071	Alp-Arslan defeats Romanus Diogenes at Manzikert (Malasjird). The

	establishment of the Seljuk Sultanate of *Rum* follows.
1074	Badr al-Jamali becomes Fatimid vizier.
1085	Alfonso VI of León-Castile takes Toledo.
1086	Yusuf ibn Tashfin defeats Alfonso VI at al-Zallaqa/Sagrajas, begins Almoravid conquest of Muslim Iberia.
1090	Normans take Malta. Hasan-i Sabbah takes Alamut, establishes Nizari Ismaʿili Assassins. From 1097, the Assassins claim to have the true Ismaʿili *imam* resident among them.
1092	Deaths of Seljuk vizier Nizam al-Mulk and sultan Malik-Shah. Fragmentation of the Great Seljuk Sultanate.
1094	Nizari schism in Fatimid Caliphate.
1096 (Sep)	First wave of crusaders (People's Crusade) annihilated by Seljuks of *Rum*.
1097 (19 Jun)	Crusaders take Nicaea.
1097 (1 Jul)	Crusaders defeat Seljuks of *Rum* at Dorylaeum (Eskishehir).
1097 (c. 10 Sep)	Crusaders defeat Seljuks of *Rum* at Heraclea (Ereghli).
1098–1111	Periodic protests in Baghdad calling for Seljuk response to the First Crusade.
1098 (10 Mar)	Baldwin of Boulogne takes control of Edessa (Urfa).
1098 (29 Jun)	Crusaders take Antioch.
1098 (Jul)	Fatimids take Jerusalem from Seljuks.
1098 (11–12 Dec)	Crusaders take Maʿarrat al-Nuʿman.
1099 (15 Jul)	Crusaders take Jerusalem.
1099 (12 Aug)	Crusaders defeat Fatimid forces at Ascalon.
1105	Al-Sulami publicly composes *Kitab al-Jihad* at Damascus.
1109 (12 Jul)	Crusaders take Tripoli.
1110	Almoravids complete conquest of Muslim Iberia.

1110–15	Great Seljuk sultan Muhammad Tapar seeks to aid Muslims of Levant against Franks.
1113–14	Nizaris are driven from Aleppo.
1115 (Sep)	Forces sent by Muhammad Tapar defeated by Franks of Antioch at Danith.
1118	Death of Muhammad Tapar. Great Seljuk Sultanate splits, with western part becoming Sultanate of Iraq.
1119 (28 Jun)	Ilghazi of Mardin defeats and kills Roger of Antioch at Battle of Balat/ *Ager Sanguinis*.
1121	Ibn Tumart establishes Almohad movement in western North Africa.
1126	Nizaris at Damascus.
1127	Succession of ʿImad al-Din Zangi at Mosul.
1128 (Jan)	Succession of Zangi at Aleppo.
1129	Nizaris are driven from Damascus.
1130	Almohad ʿAbd al-Muʾmin declares himself caliph.
1130–31	Interregnum in Fatimid Caliphate, followed by Tayyibi Schism.
1135	Normans of Sicily take Djerba, leave Muslim ruler nominally in control.
1140s	Beginning of serious resentment of Almoravid rule in Iberia.
1141	Nizaris take Masyaf.
1144 (24 Dec)	Zangi takes Edessa.
1146 (Jun)	Normans of Sicily take Tripoli in North Africa.
1146 (14 Sep)	Death of Zangi. Sayf al-Din succeeds at Mosul and Nur al-Din succeeds at Aleppo.
1146 (Oct-Nov)	Nur al-Din foils a Frankish attempt to retake and hold Edessa.
1147 (24 Mar)	ʿAbd al-Muʾmin takes Marrakesh.
1147 (Apr)	Diplomatic agreement between Nur al-Din and Muʿin al-Din Unur.
1147 (25 Oct)	Afonso Henriques of Portugal takes

	Lisbon. ‘Abd al-Mu’min begins conquest of Muslim Iberia.
1148 (Jun)	Normans of Sicily take Mahdiyya.
1148 (24 Jun)	Crusaders decide to attack Damascus.
1148 (23–28 Jul)	Crusader attack on Damascus fails.
1149 (29 Jun)	Nur al-Din and Mu‘in al-Din defeat and kill Raymond of Antioch at Inab.
1152	Nizaris assassinate Raymond II of Tripoli, their first Frankish victim.
1153 (22 Aug)	Franks take Ascalon from the Fatimids.
1153 (Autumn)	Normans of Sicily reassert control over Djerba.
1154 (Apr)	Nur al-Din takes Damascus.
1156	Some Hanbali Muslims of the Frankish-controlled Nablus region emigrate to Muslim-controlled Damascus.
1157	Collapse of Great Seljuk Sultanate.
1160s	Almohads take Norman territories in North Africa. Widespread hostility to and mob violence against Muslims in Sicily.
1162	Nizari leader Hasan II sends Rashid al-Din Sinan, the ‘Old Man of the Mountain’, to *Bilad al-Sham*.
1163 (Sep)	Ousted Fatimid vizier Shawar seeks support of Nur al-Din.
1164 (Apr-Oct)	Shirkuh’s first expedition to Egypt restores Shawar to vizierate.
1164 (Aug)	Hasan II declares arrival of ‘Day of Resurrection’ at Alamut, begins to claim position of *imam*.
1167 (Feb-Aug)	Shirkuh’s second expedition to Egypt, including the Battle of al-Babayn (19 March 1167).
1168 (Nov)	Amalric takes Bilbays in Egypt. The Fatimid caliph al-‘Adid appeals to Nur al-Din for help.
1168 (Dec)	Shirkuh sets out for Egypt.
1169 (Jan)	Franks withdraw from Egypt. Shirkuh enters Egypt. Shawar is executed and

	Shirkuh is made Fatimid vizier.
1169 (23 Mar)	Death of Shirkuh. Saladin becomes Fatimid vizier.
1170s	Almohads have expanded territory in Iberia and North Africa.
1171 (Jun)	Nur al-Din orders Saladin to abolish the Fatimid caliphate.
1171 (Sep)	Saladin abolishes Fatimid caliphate.
1171 (Oct-Nov)	Saladin makes abortive attack on Shawbak (Crac de Montréal).
1173 (Jun)	Saladin conducts campaign against Kerak.
1174 (15 May)	Death of Nur al-Din.
1174 (Jul-Aug)	Saladin repels attack on Alexandria by Normans of Sicily.
1174 (Oct 28)	Saladin takes Damascus.
1175 (Jan)	Nizari Assassins attack Saladin.
1175 (13 Apr)	Saladin defeats Zangids at the Horns of Hamah.
1176 (22 Apr)	Saladin defeats Zangids at Tall al-Sultan.
1176 (May)	Nizari Assassins attack Saladin again.
1176 (Jul 29)	Peace treaty between Saladin and the Zangids.
1176 (Aug)	Saladin besieges Masyaf, comes to agreement with Rashid al-Din Sinan.
1176 (6 Sep)	Saladin marries ʻIsmat al-Din, widow of Nur al-Din.
1177 (Nov 25)	Franks defeat Saladin at Montgisard.
1179 (Apr)	Saladin defeats Franks in the Jawlan (Golan).
1179 (Jun)	Saladin defeats Franks at Marj ʻUyun.
1179 (29 Aug)	Saladin destroys Frankish castle of Bayt al-Ahzan, raids Frankish territory.
1181 (4 Dec)	Death of al-Salih Ismaʻil. Saladin claims succession to Aleppo.
1182 (May-Jul)	Saladin raids Kingdom of Jerusalem.
1183 (Spring)	Reynald of Châtillon's Red Sea expedition is defeated.
1183 (11 Jun)	Saladin takes Aleppo.
1183 (Oct-Dec)	Saladin attacks Kerak.

1184 (Aug)	Saladin attacks Kerak again.
1185 (Apr)	Saladin makes a truce with the Franks.
1186 (4 Mar)	Peace treaty with Mosul recognizes Saladin's authority.
1187 (Jan)	Reynald of Châtillon plunders a Muslim caravan.
1187 (2 Jul)	Saladin takes Tiberias. Franks hold council of war in which they decide to march on the city.
1187 (4 Jul)	Saladin destroys the Frankish field army at Hattin and subsequently conquers much Frankish territory.
1187 (2 Oct)	Saladin takes Jerusalem.
1189 (29 Aug)	Franks under Guy of Lusignan besiege Acre.
1189 (Winter)	Muslim rebellions in Sicily after the death of King William II in November.
1191 (20 Apr)	Philip II Augustus arrives at Acre.
1191 (8 Jun)	Richard I the Lionheart arrives at Acre.
1191 (12 Jul)	Acre surrenders to the Franks.
1191 (7 Sep)	Richard defeats Saladin at Arsuf. Richard subsequently takes Jaffa, while Saladin demolishes Ascalon.
1191 (Oct)	Richard attempts, unsuccessfully, to march on Jerusalem.
1192 (28 Apr)	Nizaris assassinate Conrad de Montferrat.
1192 (23 May)	Richard takes Darum (Dayr al-Balah).
1192 (24 Jun)	Richard seizes a Muslim caravan, subsequently attempts to march on Jerusalem again.
1192 (5 Jul)	Richard forced to turn back from Jerusalem.
1192 (30 Jul)	Saladin almost retakes Jaffa.
1192 (1–3 Oct)	Peace treaty between Saladin and Richard.
1193 (4 Mar)	Death of Saladin at Damascus. Succeeded by sons and relatives.
1194	Collapse of Seljuk Sultanate of Iraq.
1196 (Jun)	Al-'Adil Muhammad takes Damascus from al-Afdal 'Ali.

1197	Crusaders take Beirut and Sidon.
1200 (Feb)	Al-ʿAdil Muhammad takes Cairo and becomes head of the Ayyubid confederation.
1200 (Jul)	Papacy and Germans contest for control of Sicily. Germans, along with Sicilian Muslim allies, are defeated by papal forces.
1202	Authority of al-ʿAdil Muhammad recognized by al-Zahir Ghazi of Aleppo.
1206	Temujin/Chingiz Khan launches campaign of world conquest.
1210	Nizari *imam* Hasan III rejects Nizari teachings, embraces Sunni Islam.
1212 (16 Jul)	Spanish Christian armies defeat the Almohads at Las Navas de Tolosa.
1218 (May-Aug)	Crusaders attack Damietta and storm part of its defences.
1218 (31 Aug)	Death of al-ʿAdil Muhammad. Territories divided among his three eldest sons.
1219 (19 Mar)	Demolition of the fortifications of Jerusalem begins.
1219 (Sep, probably)	St Francis of Assisi visits al-Kamil Muhammad.
1219 (5 Nov)	Crusaders take Damietta.
1220	Mongols conquer state of Khwarazm-Shahs. Khwarazmian warriors subsequently move west into *Bilad al-Sham*.
1221–23	Frederick II invades Sicily, defeats Muslim rebellion, and starts deporting Muslims to Apulia. Most have been deported by 1246.
1221 (Aug)	Muslims defeat crusaders and negotiate their evacuation from Egypt.
1221–55	Reign of Nizari *imam* Muhammad III, who reintroduces Nizari beliefs and practices.
1226	Al-Kamil Muhammad offers Jerusalem

	to Frederick II.
1228	Almohads effectively abandon Iberia.
1229 (Feb)	Peace agreement between al-Kamil Muhammad and Frederick II returns most of Jerusalem to the Franks.
1229 (18 Mar)	Frederick II crowns himself King of Jerusalem at the Holy Sepulchre.
1236–41	Mongols invade Russia and eastern Europe.
1239 (7 Dec)	Al-Nasir Dawud takes Jerusalem, but returns it to the Franks the following year as part of an alliance agreement.
1243	Mongols subdue Seljuk Sultanate of *Rum*.
1244 (23 Aug)	Khwarazmians take Jerusalem.
1244 (17 Oct)	Khwarazmian-Egyptian coalition defeats Frankish-Syrian coalition at Harbiyya (La Forbie).
1245 (2 Oct)	Al-Salih Ayyub takes Damascus.
1246 (Mar)	Khwarazmians besiege Damascus.
1246 (18 May)	Khwarazmians are defeated and wiped out by troops from Homs and Aleppo.
1248	Kingdom of Granada becomes only remaining Muslim state in Iberia.
1249 (6 Jun)	Crusaders under Louis IX take Damietta.
1249 (21 Nov)	Al-Salih Ayyub dies. Shajar al-Durr and collaborators conceal his death.
1250–1382	Bahri/Turkic Mamluk Sultanate.
1250 (9 Feb)	Mamluks defeat crusaders at al-Mansura. Louis is subsequently captured.
1250 (2 May)	Mamluks kill Turan-Shah and take control of Egypt, appointing Shajar al-Durr as sovereign.
1250 (May)	Crusaders evacuate Egypt.
1250 (July)	Shajar al-Durr abdicates. Aybak al-Turkumani becomes sultan, then *atabeg* for an Ayyubid prince.
1254	Aybak deposes Ayyubid charge and re-assumes position of sultan, bringing

	Ayyubid sultanate of Egypt to definite end.
1255	Hülegü launches campaign into Persia and Iraq.
1256 (Dec)	Hülegü takes Alamut and drives Persian Nizaris into hiding.
1258 (12 Feb)	Hülegü takes Baghdad and executes ʻAbbasid caliph.
1260 (25 Jan)	Hülegü takes Aleppo.
1260 (2 Mar)	Mongol forces take Damascus. Hülegü returns east at about the same time.
1260 (3 Sep)	Mamluks defeat Mongols at ʻAyn Jalut. Mamluks complete conquest of *Bilad al-Sham* soon after.
1260 (24 Oct)	Murder of Qutuz. Baybars becomes Mamluk sultan.
1261 (13 Jun)	Baybars resurrects ʻAbbasid caliphate at Cairo.
1261–1517	Second reign of the ʻAbbasid caliphate.
1265–73	Baybars subdues Nizari Assassins of *Bilad al-Sham*.
1268 (18 May)	Baybars takes Antioch.
1269	Marinids take Marrakesh from the Almohads.
1277 (20 Jun)	Death of Baybars.
1279 (Nov)	Qalawun takes power.
1281 (29 Oct)	Qalawun defeats Mongols at Hims.
1289 (27 Apr)	Qalawun takes Tripoli.
1290 (10 Nov)	Death of Qalawun.
1291 (18 May)	Al-Ashraf Khalil takes Acre.
1365 (Oct)	Peter of Cyprus briefly occupies Alexandria.
1382	Sultanate usurped by the Circassian *mamluk* Barquq.
1382–1517	Burji/Circassian Mamluk Sultanate.
1396 (25 Sep)	Crusaders defeated by Ottomans at Nikopolis (Nikopol).
1492	Granada falls to the Catholic Monarchs, Ferdinand II of Aragon and Isabella I of Castile, bringing the last Muslim state in Iberia to its end.

1517	Ottoman conquest of Egypt.
1898	Kaiser Wilhelm II visits tomb of Saladin.
1899	Sayyid ʻAli al-Hariri describes European colonialism as a crusade in his history of the crusading period.
1906–66	Life of Sayyid Qutb, an influential figure in the development of modern Muslim extremism.
1987	Foundation of Hamas.
1988	Hamas produces original charter calling for the destruction of Israel.
1988 (approx.)	Usama ibn Ladin (Osama bin Laden) founds al-Qaʻida.
1990–91 (2 Aug-28 Feb)	US-led coalition forces eject Iraqi forces from Kuwait and briefly occupy Iraq.
2001 (11 Sep)	Al-Qaʻida makes co-ordinated terrorist attacks on US targets including the World Trade Center and the Pentagon.
2001 (16 Sep)	US President George W. Bush declares, 'This crusade, this war on terrorism is going to take a while'.
2001 (7 Oct-17 Dec)	US-led coalition forces invade Afghanistan and drive Taliban government from power.
2003 (19 Mar-1 May)	US-led coalition forces invade Iraq and topple Saddam Husayn's government.
2006	Hamas wins Palestinian Authority elections.
2007 (10–15 Jun)	Hamas seizes control of Gaza Strip.
2008–9 (27 Dec-18 Jan)	Gaza War (a.k.a. Operation Cast Lead) between (primarily) Israel and Hamas.
2014 (Feb)	Islamic State splits from Iraqi branch of al-Qaʻida and over following year rapidly expands territory in Iraq and Syria and influence in these territories and elsewhere.
2014 (8 Jul-26 Aug)	Israel-Gaza conflict (a.k.a. Operation Protective Edge) between (primarily) Israel and Hamas.

2017	Hamas produces new charter abandoning objective of destruction of Israel but calling for liberation of Palestine and opposition to ‘colonial Zionist project’.
2019 (Apr)	Islamic State loses last stronghold at al-Baghuz Fawqani in Syria.

Who's who

Al-'Adil Muhammad (btw. 1143 and 1145–1218) Al-Malik al-'Adil Muhammad ibn Ayyub was Saladin's brother and one of his closest supporters. He was entrusted with major responsibilities, including governing Egypt from 1174 to 1183 while Saladin was conquering *Bilad al-Sham*, and acting as Saladin's principal ambassador to Richard the Lionheart. After Saladin's death, he inherited territories in the northern and eastern frontier regions of the Ayyubid state but soon outmanoeuvred Saladin's sons to take control of the family confederation. He died on 31 August 1218 while *en route* to fight against the forces of the so-called Fifth Crusade at Damietta.

Al-Afdal Shahanshah (1066–1121) Al-Afdal was the son and successor of the Fatimid vizier Badr al-Jamali (d. 1094), reigning as vizier from 1094 until his death. He initially sought to establish an alliance with the forces of the First Crusade against the Seljuks, but when this failed, he attempted to oppose them, only to be defeated in battle at Ascalon on 12 August 1099. He subsequently sought to reform the army but was himself assassinated on the orders of the Fatimid caliph al-Amir (r. 1101–30) in December 1121.

Alp-Arslan (c. 1030–73) Alp-Arslan became the Great Seljuk Sultan in 1063. While he actually spent more time fighting against members of his own family or pursuing his own territorial ambitions in Armenia and Georgia, he is probably best known for defeating the Byzantine emperor Romanus Diogenes (r. 1068–71) at the Battle at Manzikert (Malasjird) in 1071, an event that opened Asia Minor to Turkmen invaders and spurred Byzantine appeals for aid to the powers of western Europe.

Al-Ashraf Khalil (c. 1262–93) Al-Malik al-Ashraf Khalil ibn Qalawun was the Mamluk sultan of Egypt and Syria from 1290 to 1293. Al-Ashraf only became the heir apparent in 1288, when his older, more popular brother 'Ali died, and apparently Qalawun himself had been reluctant to appoint his younger son to succeed him. However, he ascended smoothly to the throne, and one of his first major acts as sultan was to conduct the conquest of Acre

that his father had been planning, taking the city by storm on 18 May 1291, something that gave him great prestige. However, by 1293 he had alienated a number of important emirs, including his deputy, and he was killed by a group of conspirators on 14 December while out hunting.

Aybak (d. 1257) ʿIzz al-Din Aybak al-Turkumani was a *mamluk* emir who became Sultan of Egypt after the abdication in July 1250 of Shajar al-Durr, whom he then married. Forced by other *mamluk* emirs to abdicate in favour of a puppet Ayyubid child prince five days later, he became strong enough to depose the Ayyubid sultan and take power into his own hands again in 1254, ruling for three years. However, his jealous wife, Shajar al-Durr, hearing that he planned to marry another woman who would replace her as his chief wife, had him murdered by slaves while he was in a bath-house in April 1257.

Baha' al-Din ibn Shaddad (1145–1234) Baha' al-Din Yusuf ibn Shaddad was born and educated in Mosul. He spent time as a teacher in Baghdad and then back in Mosul and also served the Zangid rulers of the latter as an ambassador. In 1188, he performed the *hajj*, and on the way home he was recruited into the retinue of Saladin, who made him the *qadi* of his army. Thereafter the two men were close friends. After Saladin's death, Baha' al-Din served a number of the sultan's descendents before retiring. He wrote a number of works, of which the best known is his important biography of Saladin, *al-Nawadir al-Sultaniyya wa-l-Mahasin al-Yusufiyya* (The Rare Qualities of the Sultan and the Merits of Yusuf).

Baldwin of Boulogne (btw. 1061 and 1070–1118) Baldwin took part in the First Crusade, including founding the County of Edessa in March 1098. After the death of his brother Godfrey de Bouillon in 1100, he became the first Frankish King of Jerusalem, reigning until his own death. In the years that followed, he secured and expanded the holdings of the Kingdom of Jerusalem. He died while on campaign in Egypt on 2 April 1118.

Baybars al-Bunduqdari (1220s–77) Al-Malik al-Zahir Baybars al-Bunduqdari was the Mamluk Sultan of Egypt and Syria from 1260 to 1277. A member of the Bahri Mamluk regiment, he was chosen to rule after the assassination of his predecessor Qutuz (r. 1259–60) in the wake of the Battle of ʿAyn Jalut. Baybars spent much of his reign fighting multiple enemies, including subduing the Nizaris of *Bilad al-Sham*, fending off the Mongols and waging yearly campaigns against the Franks that included the conquest of Antioch in May 1268. He is also credited with putting many of the political, military, and religious structures of the Mamluk state in place.

Chingiz Khan (d. 1227) Temujin, better known by his title Chingiz Khan (or Genghis Khan ['Universal King']), was a Mongol chieftain who in 1206 forged a confederation of tribes on the steppes of eastern Asia. He entertained visions of world conquest, launching campaigns into northern China (1211), Central

Asia (1215) and the empire of the Khwarazm-Shahs (in present-day Iran and Turkmenistan [1218]). By his death, he ruled an empire stretching from the east coast of China to Rey, Nishapur, and Georgia in the east. His empire would be further expanded by his successors over the course of the 13th century.

Conrad III (1093–1152) Conrad III was the King of Germany from 1138 until his death and was a leader of the so-called Second Crusade. Conrad initially sought to take his armies overland to the east, but Turkish attacks and shortages of supplies depleted his forces, and he eventually travelled with his remaining troops from Constantinople to Acre by sea. In June 1148 he, Louis VII of France (r. 1137–80) and Baldwin III of Jerusalem (r. 1143–63) decided to mount an attack on Damascus, which failed in the face of both the inhabitants' resistance and the approach of Muslim reinforcements (July 1148). Conrad left for Germany the following September.

Frederick I Barbarossa (1122–90) King of Germany from 1152 and Holy Roman Emperor from 1155, Frederick Barbarossa ('red-beard') went on both the so-called Second (as a deputy for his uncle Conrad III) and Third Crusades. Despite his attempts to prepare the way ahead of his departure on the latter, Frederick's journey to the east was difficult, with his forces coming into conflict with both the Byzantines and the Seljuks of *Rum*, as well as suffering from food shortages and problems crossing difficult terrain. Frederick himself drowned in the River Saleph (Silifke) in Cilicia (Southern Turkey) on 10 June 1190, and his army subsequently broke up after reaching Antioch.

Frederick II (1194–1250) Frederick II was King of Germany from 1211, and Holy Roman Emperor from 1220, until his death. Frederick took the cross in 1215, but problems in his own lands forced him to postpone his departure for the Holy Land, and in September 1227 he was excommunicated by the pope for delaying. Frederick went east nonetheless, and there he negotiated with al-Kamil Muhammad the return of Jerusalem to Christian hands but with the Temple Mount and some nearby territories remaining under Muslim control, an agreement that angered both Christians and Muslims alike (February 1229). Even after returning home in May, Frederick remained involved in the crusading movement, providing support in particular in the form of diplomatic activity.

Genghis Khan See *Chingiz Khan*.

Guy of Lusignan (c. 1150–94) The son of a southern French nobleman, Guy of Lusignan became the King of Jerusalem after the death of King Baldwin V (r. 1185–86), by virtue of his being married to the king's mother Sibyl, who seized the throne after the death of her son. In July 1187, Guy led the army of the Kingdom of Jerusalem to its defeat at the hands of Saladin, himself being captured. Released in 1188, he gathered his forces and besieged Acre the

following year, the arrival of the forces under Philip II of France and Richard I of England providing reinforcements. By the time that the city fell to the crusaders, Sibyl had died and Guy's claim to the throne with her, but Guy was able to buy Cyprus from Richard I, establishing a dynasty there that would rule until 1489.

Hülegü (c. 1217–65) Hülegü was the brother of the Mongol Great Khan Möngke (r. 1251–59). In 1253, his brother sent him to lead the ongoing Mongol campaigns in Persia and Iraq. Hülegü destroyed Alamut in 1256, effectively ending the Persian branch of the Assassins, and then took Baghdad on 12 February 1258, killing the caliph and temporarily ending the ʿAbbasid caliphate. He went on to conquer northern *Bilad al-Sham* but returned home in the spring of 1260 to take part in the selection of the next Great Khan after Möngke's death. The small army that he left behind was defeated by the Mongols at ʿAyn Jalut in September 1160, and the Mongol advance stalled. In the meantime, the Mongol empire broke up, and Hülegü established a largely independent state in Iraq and Persia known as the Ilkhanate.

Husayn, Saddam (1937 or 1939–2006) Saddam Husayn was the President of Iraq from 1979–2003. Originally of peasant origins, Husayn rose through the ranks of the socialist Baʿth Party, which took a firm grip on power in Iraq in 1968. In 1979, he took over the presidency and engaged in a programme of political repression and military action within the country to secure his position and remove his opponents. He also engaged in foreign conflicts, including a war with Iran in 1980–88 and an invasion of Kuwait in 1990 that was driven back by a UN coalition force. Further conflict with the UN, and especially the United States, led to a US-led invasion of Iraq in 2003, in the course of which Husayn was captured. He was convicted of crimes against humanity by an Iraqi court in November 2006 and executed on 30 December.

Ibn ʿAsakir (1105–76) ʿAli ibn al-Hasan ibn ʿAsakir was born into a family of Shafiʿi scholars and began his study of religious texts at the age of 6. In 1126, he began to travel for the sake of learning, studying with religious scholars in major centres across the Muslim world, including Baghdad, Mecca, Medina, Kufa, Merv, Nishapur, and Herat, before settling back in Damascus. After Nur al-Din took the city in 1154, Ibn ʿAsakir became a propagandist for the sultan, preaching the *jihad* on his patron's behalf. Ibn ʿAsakir wrote several works, including his immense and famous biographical dictionary of the notables of Damascus, entitled *Ta'rikh Madinat Dimashq* (The History of the City of Damascus), and a collection of *hadiths* on the *jihad*, entitled *al-Arbaʿun Hadithan fi'l-Hathth ʿala al-Jihad* (The Forty *Hadiths* for Inciting *Jihad*).

Ibn al-Athir (1160–1233) ʿIzz al-Din Abu'l-Hasan ʿAli, known by his family name of Ibn al-Athir, was an Iraqi scholar and historian. While he spent most of his life in Mosul, he also travelled repeatedly to Baghdad and also in Syria,

including serving for a time in the army of Saladin. He wrote a number of works but is best known for his *Ta'rikh al-Bahir fi'l-Dawla al-Atabakiyya* (The Dazzling History of the Atabegid Regime), which is a rather partisan history of the Zangids of Mosul, and especially his *Kamil fi'l-Ta'rikh* (The Complete History), a chronicle of the world from the Creation to his own time. Ibn Athir's works are based on a mixture of other historical chronicles, some archival documents, and eyewitness accounts, including those of family members who served the Zangid regime in various capacities.

Ibn al-Qalanisi (1073–1160) Abu Ya'la Hamza ibn Asad al-Tamimi, better known by his family name of Ibn al-Qalanisi ('the son of the hatter'), was the author of *Dhayl Ta'rikh Dimashq* (The Continuation of the History of Damascus), a chronicle of the city that is one of the earliest Muslim sources for the crusading period. Ibn al-Qalanisi himself was both an educated scholar and an important figure in the city's administration; among other posts, he was twice head of the urban militia. In writing his history, Ibn al-Qalanisi made use of a wide range of sources, including earlier histories, official documents and correspondence, eyewitness accounts, and his own personal experiences of the dramatic events that unfolded in and around Damascus during his lifetime. His own work then became a major source for other historians such as Ibn al-Athir and Sibt ibn al-Jawzi.

Ibn Shaddad See *Baha' al-Din ibn Shaddad*.

Ibn Taymiyya (1268–1328) Taqi al-Din Ahmad ibn Taymiyya was a Hanbali religious scholar. Born in Harran, in 1269, his family fled before the Mongol advance to Damascus. There his father became the head of a *madrasa*, and in 1284, at the age of 19, Ibn Taymiyya succeeded him in this position. In 1293, he became involved in a political conflict, which led to the first of a number of spells in prison, yet at other times, he served the Mamluk sultans preaching the *jihad*, especially against the Mongols. He was a staunch advocate of the *jihad* in all its forms whose ideas were highly influential in his own time and continue to be today.

Ilghazi (c. 1062–1122) Najm al-Din Ilghazi ibn Artuk was a Turkmen chieftain. He initially served the Great Seljuks, but in 1108 or 1109, he took control of Mardin in what is now Turkey, establishing himself as effectively independent. In 1118, he expanded his influence over Aleppo after its citizens appealed to him for protection from Roger of Salerno, the regent of Antioch (r. 1113–19). The following year, he destroyed Roger's army at the Battle of Balat/*Ager Sanguinis*, the regent himself being among the slain. Ilghazi did not then follow up his victory with the conquest of Antioch itself, something that chroniclers of the time blamed on drunkenness but which was more likely a result of strategic concerns.

'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani (1125–1201) 'Imad al-Din Muhammad ibn

Muhammad al-Isfahani was born in Persia but educated at Baghdad. He initially worked for the vizier of the ʻAbbasid caliph, then Nur al-Din, before passing into Saladin's service in 1175. He soon became Saladin's personal secretary, close advisor, and almost constant companion until the latter's death in 1193, after which he retired to Damascus and devoted himself to literary activity. Both a historian and a literary enthusiast, he has left us, in addition to an anthology of 12th-century Arabic poetry, an autobiographical account of the campaigns of Saladin entitled *al-Barq al-Shami* (the Lightning of *al-Sham*), and an account of the years 1187 to 1193 entitled *al-Fath al-Qussi fi'l-Fath al-Qudsi* (Qussian Eloquence on the Conquest of Jerusalem).

Kalavun See *Qalawun*.

Al-Kamil Muhammad (btw. 1177 and 1180–1238) The son of the Ayyubid sultan al-ʻAdil Muhammad, al-Malik al-Kamil Muhammad ibn Muhammad (r. 1218–38) succeeded his father in Egypt while the forces of the Fifth Crusade were besieging Damietta. In the wake of the fall of the city, al-Kamil Muhammad, with the acquiescence of his brother al-Muʻazzam ʻIsa of Damascus (r. 1218–27), offered to return the old Kingdom of Jerusalem to the crusaders in exchange for their evacuation from Egypt, but the offer was refused. The crusader advance on Cairo was unsuccessful, however, and eventually they were forced to negotiate a safe withdrawal. Al-Kamil Muhammad did later negotiate the return of Jerusalem to Frederick II in 1229, though retaining the Temple Mount and other surrounding territories, a move that proved immensely unpopular among both Christians and Muslims alike.

Louis IX (1214–70) Louis IX was King of France from 1226 until his death. He was a pious man from an early age, and in 1244, he took his first vow to go on crusade. After seeking to set his affairs in order at home, he set out in 1248, but despite initial success in capturing Damietta, his crusade against Egypt was a failure, with Louis himself being captured by the Mamluks in 1250. Louis was released in exchange for Damietta and the evacuation of the crusaders from Egypt, and after four years spent improving the defences of the Kingdom of Jerusalem, he returned home. He sought to promote further piety and justice in both his own personal behaviour and the administration of his realm, then in 1267 resolved to go on crusade again, this time in North Africa. He landed at Tunis in July 1270 but fell ill soon after, dying on 25 August. He was canonized in 1297.

Malik-Shah (1055–92) Malik-Shah was a son of Alp-Arslan, who appointed him as his heir to the Great Seljuk Sultanate in 1066. While he had to face some initial rebellions from other members of his family when his father died in 1072, by 1084 he had secured his position and was able to embark on campaigns of expansion to both the east and the west; in the west, he mounted expeditions against the Fatimids, Georgia, and the Byzantine Empire, which

included the successful conquest of northern *Bilad al-Sham*. Malik-Shah died in murky circumstances during a hunting expedition in November 1092, a month after the killing of his vizier Nizam al-Mulk by the Nizari Assassins, and the Great Seljuk Sultanate fragmented as various claimants fought over his legacy.

Al-Masʿudi (before 893–956) Abu'l-Hasan ʿAli ibn al-Husayn al-Masʿudi was a Muslim scholar, traveller, and geographer. He journeyed throughout and beyond the Muslim world, including in China, India, Africa, the Byzantine Empire, and eastern and central Europe. He has left us two geographical works, *Muruj al-Dhahab wa-Maʿadin al-Jawhar* (Meadows of Gold and Mines of Gemstone), and the shorter *Kitab al-Tanbih wa-l-Ishraf* (The Book of Admonition and Overseeing), which contain important accounts of Europeans dating from before the crusades.

Muhammad (c. 570–632) The Prophet Muhammad was born in the Arabian city of Mecca. Orphaned at an early age, he was brought up in the house of his uncle and pursued a successful career as a merchant. According to Muslim belief, in 610, Muhammad started receiving revelations from God, which would eventually be compiled, after his death, into the Muslim scripture known as the *Qur'an*. Muhammad gathered a group of followers but was forced to emigrate from Mecca in 622, after his teachings encountered opposition from the pagan authorities there. He settled at Medina, from which he fought an eight-year war with Mecca, finally taking the city in 630 and demonstrating that the Kaʿba, its holiest site, was meant to be devoted to worship of the one true God. Muhammad died two years later, on 8 June 632, but the Muslim world expanded dramatically over the decades that followed his death.

Muʿin al-Din (d. 1149) Muʿin al-Din Unur was a Turkmen *mamluk* of Tughtigin, who took power in Damascus through a military coup in April 1138, although without deposing its leaders. Instead, Muʿin al-Din ruled as *atabeg* and commander of the army, thus wielding effective power while maintaining the Burid dynasty in place. He thereafter maintained Damascus' independence through a mixture of warfare and alliances with the Franks and the Zangids, including defending the city successfully against the crusader siege of Damascus in 1148. He died of dysentery on 28 August 1149.

Al-Nasir Dawud (1207–58) Al-Nasir Dawud was the son of the Ayyubid sultan of Damascus, al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa (r. 1218–27). Al-Nasir Dawud succeeded to his father's throne in 1228 but was driven out the following year by other members of his family. He received lands in Palestine and Transjordan as compensation and made his capital at Kerak. As a result of family politics, he lost further territories, even being forced to hand back Jerusalem after he took it from the Franks in 1239. Forced out of Kerak in 1249, he spent the following

years unsuccessfully trying to find a new state to rule and eventually died in May 1258 after a failed attempt to assist Baghdad against the Mongols.

Nur al-Din (1118–74) Nur al-Din Mahmud ibn Zangi inherited the western half of his father's territories, including Aleppo and Edessa, when the latter died in 1146. From there, he pursued a policy of expansion into northern *Bilad al-Sham* while simultaneously fighting against the Franks, including advancing on Damascus with a relief force when crusaders attacked it in 1148. Thereafter he himself made several attempts to take the city, citing the need for Muslim unity against the Franks, and finally achieving its handover to him in April 1154. In the 1160s, he sent forces to intervene in Egypt, which resulted in it coming under the control of his deputies Shirkuh and then Saladin. When the latter proved uncooperative, Nur al-Din prepared an army with which to take direct control of Egypt but became ill and died before the expedition could be launched.

Osama bin Laden See *Usama ibn Ladin*.

Al-Qadi al-Fadil (1135–1200) ʿAbd al-Rahman ibn ʿAli al-ʿAsqalani al-Qadi al-Fadil was the director of the Fatimid chancery when he came to Saladin's attention. Saladin, at the time the Fatimid vizier, took him into his service in 1171, and the two men soon became close friends and collaborators. Saladin appointed al-Fadil to run the administration of Egypt, which included providing the greater portion of the finances that enabled the sultan to conquer *Bilad al-Sham*. Al-Fadil, despite poor health, outlived Saladin, serving two of the latter's sons before his own death in 1200. The official documents and letters that al-Fadil composed are a major source for the life and career of the sultan.

Qalawun (1222–90) Al-Malik al-Mansur Qalawun al-Alfi ('of the thousand [dinars]') was the Mamluk Sultan of Egypt from 1279 to 1290. Qalawun was a Kipchak Turkic *mamluk* who became an emir in the Bahriyya under Baybars. He seized control of the sultanate during the extended struggle for power that followed Baybars' death, and then once he had consolidated his position, he directed his attention to external threats, turning back a second Mongol attempt to invade *Bilad al-Sham* at the Battle of Hims in 1281, and also conquering a number of Frankish strongholds, including Tripoli in 1289. He was preparing to take the last Latin capital, Acre, when he died on 10 November 1290.

Qutb, Sayyid (1906–66) An Egyptian member of the Muslim Brotherhood, Qutb has been seen by some as the most influential figure in the birth of modern Islamist extremist movements. Early in his life, he was attracted to western ways, but he reportedly became disillusioned after the foundation of Israel and a visit to America in 1949–51, during which he came to see western society as decadent, materialist, and anti-Arab. He sought to encourage his

contemporaries to return to a pure form of Islam as laid out in *Qur'an* and Islamic law, rejecting modernization and materialism as forces drawing humans away from God. Anything contrary to Islam was evil and should be opposed, with force if necessary. Qutb was executed by the Egyptian government for treason on 29 Aug 1966, but his ideas were highly influential in the development of later organizations such as Hamas and al-Qa'ida.

Qutuz (d. 1260) The *mamluk* al-Muzaffar Qutuz usurped the throne of the Mamluk Sultanate in 1259, deposing the young sultan al-Mansur 'Ali (r. 1257–59). Qutuz justified his action on the grounds that a more experienced sultan was needed to defend the sultanate against the Mongol advance. He may also have claimed to be a descendent of the eastern Khwarazm-Shah dynasty that had been destroyed by the Mongols in the course of their campaigns, now seeking legitimate revenge. In any case, Qutuz led his army from Egypt into *Bilad al-Sham*, where it defeated the Mongol forces at the Battle of 'Ayn Jalut in 1260. However, Qutuz himself was assassinated *en route* back to Egypt by a group of Mamluks, one of whom was Baybars, who became the new Mamluk sultan.

Raymond III of Tripoli (1140–87) Raymond III became Count of Tripoli in 1152 while still a minor, actually taking government into his own hands three years later. He spent ten years, from 1164 to 1174, as a captive of Nur al-Din, during which time he probably gained a greater familiarity with Islam and Muslims than did his contemporaries. He twice served as regent of the Kingdom of Jerusalem (1174–76 and 1185–86). Raymond opposed Guy of Lusignan's appointment as King of Jerusalem in 1186 but was forced to accept him by his own vassals. During the Battle of Hattin in July 1187, Raymond attempted to break the cordon that the Muslims had cast around the Frankish army, but while he and his followers escaped, his effort did not save his coreligionists. He escaped to Tripoli, where he died in September, probably of pleurisy.

Reynald of Châtillon (c. 1125–87) A knight from central France, Reynald of Châtillon became Prince of Antioch in 1153, holding the principality for ten years. However, in 1160 or 1161, he was captured by Nur al-Din and imprisoned for over 15 years, and, like Raymond of Tripoli, this probably gave him a better knowledge of Islam and its followers than that of his contemporaries. By the time that Reynald was released, his lands had passed into the hands of his stepson, but in 1176–77, he received Hebron and Transjordan. He took part in a number of military actions against the Muslims, including his notorious Red Sea expedition of 1183 that threatened Mecca and Medina, and in early 1187 captured a Muslim caravan during a period of truce, an act that Saladin used as a pretext to launch the campaign that culminated in the Battle of Hattin. At the battle, Reynald was captured and personally

executed by Saladin.

Richard I (1157–99) Richard the Lionheart was King of England from 1189 to 1199. Richard took a vow to go on crusade soon after the fall of Jerusalem to Saladin in 1187, but political concerns at home and a desire to set his realm in order before his departure prevented him from leaving until mid-1190. *En route* to the Holy Land, he took Cyprus from its Byzantine ruler (May–June 1191), an act that would provide Europeans with a foothold in the eastern Mediterranean for centuries. He finally arrived at Acre on 8 June 1191, and after its fall (12 July) began his efforts to take Jerusalem from Saladin. However, after over a year of inconclusive campaigning the two men, who apparently admired each other greatly, were forced to recognize a stalemate, and peace was made between them on 2 September 1192.

Saladin (1138–93) Salah al-Din Yusuf ibn Ayyub was born in Tikrit in Iraq. After reaching adulthood, he served in the army of Nur al-Din. He accompanied his uncle Shirkuh on his three expeditions to Egypt in the 1160s, and after his uncle's death on 26 March 1169 became vizier to the Fatimid caliph. In September 1171, he abolished the Fatimid caliphate and in the years following extended his territories into the rest of *Bilad al-Sham*, mostly at the expense of his Muslim neighbours. He also directed periodic attacks against the Franks, and on 4 July 1187 scored a major victory against them at the Battle of Hattin, which enabled him subsequently to take much of their territory, including Jerusalem. The last years of his life were spent fighting the forces of the so-called Third Crusade to a stalemate (1189–92). He died in Damascus on 4 March 1193.

Al-Salih Ayyub (1206 or 1207–49) Al-Salih Ayyub was the eldest son of the Ayyubid sultan al-Kamil Muhammad (r. 1218–38). Even though he had been removed from the succession, in 1240 he managed to seize control of Egypt. In summer of 1244, Khwarazmian Turk warriors in his employ sacked Jerusalem, then allied with him to defeat other members of his family at the Battle of Harbiyya (La Forbie) the following October, a victory that assisted him in taking Damascus from his uncle in 1245. He thereafter ruled two major Ayyubid centres until his death, which took place on 21 November 1249 while he was defending Egypt from the forces of St Louis' crusade. By now he had built up large contingents of *mamluk* troops in his armies, and it was left to them to save Egypt after his death.

Shajar al-Durr (d. 1257) Shajar (or Shajarat) al-Durr was a Turkic slave and concubine of the Ayyubid Sultan al-Salih Ayyub. When she gave him a son, al-Salih Ayyub freed and married her, even though her son died while young. When al-Salih Ayyub died in 1249, while the crusaders were active in the Nile Delta, Shajar al-Durr was able, in collaboration with a senior *mamluk* emir, to ensure that resistance continued by concealing the sultan's death. After the

crusaders were defeated, the sultanate was taken up by al-Salih Ayyub's son Turan-Shah (r. 1249–50), but the new sultan alienated his father's *mamluks* and was eventually murdered by them. Shajar al-Durr was then elected sovereign, ruling for about 80 days before being replaced by the *mamluk* emir Aybak, whom she married. Threatened by her husband's plans to take a second wife, she had him murdered, but was herself killed soon after, apparently by his vengeful concubines.

Shirkuh (d. 1169) Asad al-Din Shirkuh ibn Shadhi was a Kurd from Dvin, near Tiflis (Tbilisi, Georgia). About 1138, after Shirkuh killed a man in an argument, he and his brother Ayyub (d. 1173) were expelled from Tikrit, where Ayyub had been serving as castellan. The brothers passed into the service of Zangi and later Nur al-Din, and Shirkuh led the three expeditions that Nur al-Din sent to intervene in Egypt in the 1160s. In 1169, he was appointed as vizier by the Fatimid caliph but died of unclear causes on 23 March. He was succeeded in his post by Saladin, his nephew and the son of Ayyub.

Sibt ibn al-Jawzi (1185 or 1186–1257) Shams al-Din Yusuf ibn Qizughli, known as Sibt ibn al-Jawzi (the grandson of Ibn al-Jawzi [meaning the famous historian and jurisprudent ʿAbd al-Rahman ibn al-Jawzi, c. 1116–1201]), was a well-known religious scholar and preacher. He was initially brought up by his illustrious grandfather, and then after the latter died, he moved to Damascus, where he spent most of his time teaching, writing and preaching. He also went on preaching tours in the Jazira and *Bilad al-Sham* and is said to have moved his audiences to tears with his eloquence. He wrote a number of works, including a universal history entitled *Mir'at al-Zaman fi Ta'rikh al-Aʿyan* (The Mirror of Time on the History of Important People).

Al-Sulami (1039 or 1040–1106) ʿAli ibn Tahir al-Sulami was a Damascene religious scholar and grammarian, a member of a family of scholars who followed the Shafiʿi school of law. He taught Arabic grammar in the Umayyad Great Mosque in Damascus. Over the course of 1105, al-Sulami publicly composed a treatise on *jihad*, *Kitab al-Jihad* (the Book of the *Jihad*) at the Mosque of Bayt Lihya in the agricultural suburbs of Damascus, aiming thereby to call on his fellow Muslims to oppose the crusaders. His call seems to have been mostly ignored by the political authorities of the day, but his ideas probably influenced later, more successful calls to the *jihad* against the Frankish invaders.

Tughtigin (d. 1128) Zahir al-Din Tughtigin began his career as a Turkic emir in the service of the Seljuk rulers Alp-Arslan and Tutush (r. 1078–95). The latter appointed him as *atabeg* of Damascus in 1093, and by 1105, he had established himself as an effectively independent ruler there. Tughtigin thereafter devoted most of his attention to securing and expanding his own territory, fighting or allying with other Muslim and Frankish powers as

circumstances dictated. In 1115, he managed to be recognized by the Great Seljuk Sultan Muhammad (r. 1105–18) as the emir of Damascus, with his family, the Burids, having right of inheritance of the title. He died in 1128 after a two-year illness and was succeeded by his son Buri (r. 1128–32).

Turan-Shah (d. 1250) Al-Mu'azzam Turan-Shah ibn Ayyub was one of the last Ayyubid sultans of Egypt (r. 1249–50). Turan-Shah was governing Ayyubid territories in the northern Jazira when the first crusade of St Louis attacked Egypt, so when his father al-Salih Ayyub died in November 1249, his father's wife Shajar al-Durr, in collaboration with a senior *mamluk* emir, concealed the sultan's death, and resistance continued, with the crusaders being defeated in battle in February 1250. Turan-Shah arrived on February 24, in time to take part in the last stages of the defeat of the crusade, but he soon alienated his father's *mamluks* by promoting his own ahead of them. On 2 May, before St Louis had even left Egypt, Turan-Shah was murdered by a group of Bahri *mamluks*, who installed Shajar al-Durr as the new ruler.

Usama ibn Ladin (Osama bin Laden, 1957–2011) Usama ibn Ladin was born on 10 March 1957 in Riyadh, Saudi Arabia, and was the son of a rich businessman. At university, he earned a degree in civil engineering, but he also developed a radical belief that Muslim nations needed to be liberated from interference by foreign powers. He became involved in the Afghan *jihad* against the Soviet occupation of Afghanistan, using his wealth to support the resistance. Then in 1988, he founded al-Qa'ida (al-Qaeda, 'the Base'), which would in time become a world-spanning terrorist network. Ibn Ladin was outspoken in his criticism of the Saudi monarchy's invitation of American forces onto Saudi soil in 1990 and was eventually banished. Soon after, he began organizing operations against American targets, of which the most notorious was the attacks of 11 September 2001. He was eventually tracked down and killed by American special forces on 2 May 2011.

Usama ibn Munqidh (1095–1188) Usama ibn Murshid ibn 'Ali, better known as Usama ibn Munqidh (his family name), was a Bedouin emir and man of letters. Born at his clan stronghold of Shayzar, he enjoyed a chequered career that included political entanglements and frequent journeys, as well as fighting in armies against the crusaders. He ended his days as a dependent of Saladin at the remarkable age of 93. Usama was famous in his own day as a poet, but he also wrote a number of other works, of which the best known to modern readers is his *Kitab al-I'tibar* (Book of Contemplation), an account of his experiences that includes his lively observations on the Franks.

Zangi (c. 1084–1146) 'Imad al-Din Zangi ibn Aksungur was the son of a Turkic emir who served the Great Seljuk Sultan Malik-Shah. He was appointed to the governorship of Mosul in 1127 and immediately began enlarging his territory, including negotiating the handover of Aleppo in 1128. He continued

to expand his holdings to the west and east at the expense of Franks and Muslims alike, including repeated attempts to take Damascus. On 24 December 1144, he scored his most famous victory, taking Edessa and thus bringing the first Frankish capital under Muslim control, an act for which he was lauded as a *mujahid* by his contemporaries, despite the fact that he was unquestionably ruthless and primarily driven by political ambition. He died on 14 September 1146, allegedly stabbed by a Frankish slave after having drunk himself into unconsciousness.

Glossary

'Abbasids The dynasty of Sunni caliphs reigning at the time of the crusades. The 'Abbasids deposed and took power from the previous reigning dynasty, the Umayyads, in 750. Soon after, they established their capital at Baghdad, from which they reigned until the Mongol conquest of 1258 (with the exception of a portion of the 9th century, when they made Samarra their capital). Baybars re-established the caliphate in Cairo in 1261, from which they reigned until the Ottoman conquest of the Mamluk state in 1516–17.

Allah The Arabic word for God, meaning the god worshipped by followers of all the major monotheistic faiths.

Al-Andalus The Arabic term used to refer to the Iberian Peninsula and the Muslim states therein. The modern Spanish word 'Andalucia' derives from this.

Almohads See *al-muwahhidun*.

Almoravids See *al-murabitun*.

Assassins See *Nizaris*.

Atabeg Turkish: 'father-lord'. *Atabegs* were military regents, ruling on the behalf of a (usually underage) Seljuk prince. They were normally originally *mamluks*. Needless to say, in a significant number of cases, *atabegs* usurped power from their charges.

Awlad al-Nas Arabic: 'the sons of the people'. The term used to refer to the descendants of *mamluks* in the Mamluk Sultanate. Although they might be wealthy and privileged, they were usually limited in how far they could ascend the military-political hierarchy.

Ayyubids Term used to refer to the family of Ayyub ibn Shadhi (d. 1173), the father of Saladin (r. 1169–93). After Saladin's death, other Ayyubids took over his territories, ruling them until the mid-13th century.

Bahri (Turkic) Mamluk Sultanate The first period of *mamluk* rule in Egypt and *Bilad al-Sham* (1250–1382), named after the Bahriyya and characterized

by the fact that most of the sultans were Kipchak Turks.

Bahriyya An important *mamluk* regiment. The Bahriyya was created by the Ayyubid sultan al-Salih Ayyub (r. 1240–49). The name derives from the fact that their original barracks was on Rawda island on the River (Arabic: *bahr*) Nile.

Bilad al-Sham Arabic: 'the country of Syria'. The term used in the Arabic sources to refer to, approximately, modern Syria, Lebanon, Jordan, Israel, the Palestinian autonomous areas, and the south-east edge of Turkey. Sometimes the region is simply referred to as *al-Sham*.

Burji (Circassian) Mamluk Sultanate The second period of *mamluk* rule in Egypt and *Bilad al-Sham* (1382–1517), during which most of the sultans were Circassians.

Burjiyya Another important *mamluk* regiment. The creation of the Burjiyya is usually ascribed to the Mamluk sultan Qalawun (r. 1279–90). Their name derives from the fact that they were originally quartered in a tower (Arabic: *burj*) of the Citadel in Cairo.

Buyids Also known as the Buwayhids. Members of the Persian Shi'ite Buyid dynasty took control of Baghdad and the 'Abbasid caliphs in 945. Rather than ending the Sunni 'Abbasid line of caliphs, they had themselves appointed as their 'deputies', wielding effective power but maintaining the caliphs as figureheads. Buyid rule in Baghdad was continuous until 1055, when they were displaced by the Seljuks.

Caliph Anglicization of the Arabic term *khalifa*. After the death of the Prophet Muhammad (c. 570–632), his followers elected a new leader for their community. The title given to this leader was *khalifa* (deputy, successor), a term that indicated leadership without suggesting that he was another prophet. The subsequent early caliphs were chosen by (approximate) consensus, but the caliph Mu'awiya ibn Abi Sufyan (r. 661–80) established a dynastic succession (the Umayyad caliphate), and the dynastic principal continued to be followed by other families who claimed the caliphate.

Da'ish (*Daesh*) See *Islamic State*. *Da'ish* is the Arabic acronym for *al-Dawlah al-Islamiyya fi'l-'Iraq wa-l-Sham* (The Islamic State in Iraq and Syria/*al-Sham*). Critics of Islamic State highlight the resemblance of the acronym to the Arabic words *da'is* (one who crushes or tramples underfoot) and *dahis* (one who sows discord).

Dar al-'Adl Arabic: 'the house of justice'. A building where the ruler or his deputy would appear regularly to hear and address the grievances of his subjects. Probably the best known example is that of Nur al-Din (r. 1146–74) established in Damascus after his takeover of the city in 1154.

Dar al-'Ahd See *Dar al-Sulh*.

Dar al-Harb Arabic: 'the abode of war'. In Islamic law, *dar al-harb* is non-Muslim territory, against the inhabitants of which Muslims were expected to fight.

Dar al-Islam Arabic: 'the abode of Islam'. Territory where Islam is the dominant religion and in particular the religion of the rulers.

Dar al-Sulh Arabic: 'the abode of peace'. Also known as *dar al-'ahd* (the abode of the treaty), *dar al-sulh* is non-Muslim territory, the inhabitants of which are allowed to retain their autonomy, provided that they pay tribute and recognize Muslim authority.

Fada'il Arabic: 'merits'. Texts praising the merits of their subjects. Muslim writers wrote *fada'il* works on a range of topics, including places (e.g. Damascus, Jerusalem) and activities (e.g. *jihad*).

Fatimids Isma'ili Shi'ite dynasty of caliphs. The Fatimids established themselves as rulers in Qayrawan (in modern Tunisia) in 910, with their leader, 'Abd Allah (or 'Ubayd Allah), being regarded by his supporters as the rightful *imam* and caliph (ruling with the title al-Mahdi [r. 910–34]). In 969, they took control of Egypt. They founded Cairo and made it the seat of their caliphate for the next two centuries, at times enjoying significant influence in Arabia, the Holy Land, and *Bilad al-Sham*. However, their power declined in the 11th century, passing into the hands of their viziers, the last of whom was Saladin, who abolished the caliphate in 1171.

Funduq The Arabic word for a trade hostelry where merchants could stay and store goods, derived from the Greek *pandokheion* (inn). *Funduq* is used in modern times to refer to a hotel.

Hadith Arabic: 'report'. Accounts of the sayings and actions of the Prophet Muhammad and his Companions. The *hadith* are used alongside the *Qur'an* to assist in understanding the holy book's teachings. From a very early stage, Muslim scholars began collecting and writing commentaries on the *hadith*, including establishing a number of practices for judging their authenticity.

Hajj Arabic: 'greater pilgrimage to Mecca'. A 'pillar of Islam', every Muslim is expected to undertake the *hajj* at least once during their lifetime, if they are able. Taking place in the Muslim month of Dhu'l-Hijja, it involves a number of ritual practices and ends with the 'Id al-Adha (feast of sacrifice), a commemoration of Abraham's near-sacrifice of his son Ishmael that is celebrated across the Muslim world.

Halqa Arabic: 'circle'. Term used to refer to (a) a circle of students gathered around a scholar, and (b) a regiment in the armies of the Mamluk Sultanate

made up of (mostly) free-born troops of various origins.

Hamas (*Harakat al-Muqawama al-Islamiyya* [Islamic Resistance Movement]). Created in 1987 by members of the Muslim Brotherhood, the original charter of Hamas dedicated the organization to the destruction of Israel, though it has recently moderated its position somewhat. Militant action is combined with the promotion of social welfare and Muslim piety, which has helped to improve the movement's popularity, and it won Palestinian Authority elections in 2006. The following year, after conflict with militants from the rival Fatah faction of government, Hamas became the ruling power in the Gaza Strip.

Hanafis Followers of the Sunni legal school named after Abu Hanifa (d. 767). Well-known Hanafis from the crusading period include Sibt ibn al-Jawzi (d. 1257) and the Zangid sultan Nur al-Din (r. 1146–74).

Hanbalis Followers of the Sunni legal school of Ahmad ibn Hanbal (d. 855). Probably the most famous Hanbali scholar of the crusading period is Ibn Taymiyya (d. 1328).

Ifranj Arabic: 'Franks'. The term used by the Muslim sources to refer to the Europeans. The term was originally used by Muslim writers to refer to the inhabitants of the Frankish empire of Charlemagne (r. 768–814), whence its derivation, but with the onset of the crusades, it became a term used for Europeans in general, including both those who came to the Levant and their descendents who were born in the Latin states.

Imam At the basic level, the Arabic term for a prayer-leader. It is also the term used to refer to the spiritual leader of the Muslim community, especially in Shi'ite Islam, where the identities and precise attributes of the *imams* are often defining features of each different strand of Shi'ism.

Iqta' Arabic: 'assignment'. An *iqta'* was a grant to an emir of the right to collect taxes from a particular area of land, given in return for a promise of military service, in a way similar to a classic European feudal fief. An *iqta'* was usually temporary, which did not encourage the holder to see it as anything other than a source of revenue to be taxed as much as possible before it was re-assigned.

ISIL Islamic State of Iraq and the Levant. See *Islamic State*.

ISIS Islamic State of Iraq and Syria, or Islamic State of Iraq and *al-Sham*. See *Islamic State*.

Islamic State In Arabic, *Al-Dawla al-Islamiyya*, also known as ISIS, ISIL, or *Da'ish*. A terrorist organization that split off from al-Qa'ida in 2014. Between 2015 and 2019, it controlled significant territory in Syria and Iraq. Following recent defeats by international coalition forces, it is currently in

the process of becoming an underground insurgency movement in those countries, with affiliates elsewhere.

Isma'ili Shi'ism In the wake of the death of the *imam* Ja'far al-Sadiq (d. 765), a split occurred within Shi'ite Islam, provoked by the fact that the next *imam*-designate, Ja'far's son Isma'il, had predeceased his father. While the Shi'ites who would become the Twelvers turned to another son of Ja'far, others maintained that Isma'il's son Muhammad was the rightful *imam*, even though he also had apparently died before Ja'far. They maintained that Muhammad had not in fact died but had instead become hidden and would eventually return as the *mahdi*. The Isma'ilis became a hierarchical, secretive movement that nevertheless actively sought to proselytize, attracting many followers.

Ithna 'Ashari Shi'ism See *Twelver Shi'ism*.

Jami' Arabic: 'collector'. A mosque, usually translated specifically as a 'Friday mosque'. A major congregational mosque, where the *khutba* is given on Fridays at the noon prayer service.

Al-Jazira Arabic: 'the Peninsula'. The region roughly covering modern south-eastern Turkey, north-eastern Syria, and north-western Iraq. It is mostly bracketed by the Tigris and Euphrates rivers.

Jihad Arabic: 'striving'. A struggle undertaken on the behalf of the religion. This can include *al-jihad al-akbar* (the greater *jihad*), which involves both an internal struggle against one's own inner sinfulness and an external struggle in writing or speaking to defend one's faith, and *al-jihad al-asghar* (the lesser *jihad*), military action on behalf of Islam, undertaken within strict regulations including prohibitions on killing non-combatants, destroying property, or deliberately killing oneself on the battlefield.

Jizya The poll tax paid by non-Muslims living in Muslim territory, for which they receive rights of protection by their Muslim rulers. Non-Muslims were also expected to abide by certain restrictions, including wearing distinctive dress, not building places of worship or seeking to convert Muslims, and not riding horses or bearing arms. The extent to which these restrictions were actually enforced was highly variable.

Ka'ba The shrine of the Black Stone at Mecca. The Ka'ba is believed to have been built by Abraham and Ishmael and is the holiest site of Islam.

Khalifa See *Caliph*.

Koran See *Qur'an*.

Kuffar Arabic: 'blasphemers' or 'infidels'. A term applied by the Muslim sources to the Franks, whose claims that Jesus was the son of God were seen by the Muslims as blasphemous. The term is used frequently in the *Qur'an*

to refer to pagans who refuse to accept the message of Islam, thus enabling Muslim writers to equate the Franks with them.

Madrasa *Madrasas* were colleges where various subjects were taught, but especially Islamic religion, theology, and law. Under the Seljuks, Sunni *madrasas* proliferated and became the standard institutions where prospective state officials and religious scholars received their education. *Madrasas* continued to be founded by the Zangids, Ayyubids, and Mamluks throughout the crusading period.

Mahdi In both Sunni and Shi'ite Islam, a messianic figure who will return to restore truth and justice. Belief in the *mahdi* is particularly prominent in Twelver Shi'ism, where he is identified as the Twelfth *imam* Muhammad al-Muntazar, who is regarded as currently being in 'greater concealment'.

Malikis Followers of the legal school of Malik ibn Anas (d. 795). While there were a significant number of Maliki scholars in the Levant in the crusading period, the school was much more prominent in Spain and North Africa.

Mamluk Arabic: 'owned'. A slave. The term is used in particular for slave-soldiers. Such slaves were normally bought while young on the fringes of the Muslim world, educated in both Islam and the arts of war, and then released upon attaining adulthood. They then formed contingents of troops serving their former masters and constituted the backbone of the Muslim armies of the crusading period. Most *mamluks* were Turks or Circassians, but they also included slaves of other ethnicities. When capitalized, the term Mamluk usually refers to the Mamluk Sultanate, the sequence of rulers who controlled Egypt and *Bilad al-Sham* from 1250–1517, who were mostly of *mamluk* origin.

Masjid :Arabic: 'place of prostration'. A mosque.

Mihrab A prayer niche in a mosque, orientated towards Mecca and hence indicating the direction of prayer.

Minbar A pulpit in a mosque, from which speeches and prayers are given, including the *khutba* (sermon) at the Friday noon prayer.

Mirrors for Princes A genre of literature that takes the form of books of guidance for rulers on good conduct and wise and just governance.

Mujahid One who strives in the *jihad*. The term is used in particular for fighters in the military *jihad*. A number of rulers included it among their titles as a way of asserting (genuinely or not) their devotion to the *jihad* against the Franks.

Al-Murabitun Arabic: 'those who are stationed at a fortress to fight for the faith'. A Berber religious movement insisting on rigorous religious and legal discipline that ruled in North Africa and Iberia in the 11th and 12th

centuries. Usually Anglicized as 'Almoravids'.

Muluk al-tawa'if Arabic: 'kings of parts' or 'party kings'. Rulers of petty states in Muslim Iberia in the 11th century.

Mushrikun Arabic: 'polytheists'. A term used by the Muslim sources of the Franks as a way of denigrating them. The Franks, as Christians, could be accused of being polytheistic in that they could be presented as worshipping three gods (the Holy Trinity), in contrast to the Islamic insistence on God's oneness. Since the term is also used in the *Qur'an* of the pagans who opposed the Prophet Muhammad, Muslim writers were thus able to associate the Franks with earlier enemies of Islam.

Al-Muwahhidun Arabic: 'those who profess the oneness of God'. A Berber religious movement emphasizing the single nature of God, which supplanted the Almoravids in Iberia and North Africa in the 12th century, then ruled until the late 13th century. Usually Anglicized as 'Almohads'.

Nizaris The Nizari Isma'ili Shi'ites split from the Fatimids in 1094 when the Fatimid vizier al-Afdal Shahanshah (d. 1121) set aside the heir apparent, Nizar (d. 1097), in favour of the latter's younger brother. Nizar was killed soon after, but some of his supporters maintained that his son had been brought to Alamut in Persia, and the line of *imams* continued there. The followers of this line, the Nizaris, engaged in a programme of political assassination over the next two centuries before being neutralized and driven underground by the Mongols and Mamluks. It is as a result of this programme that they are also sometimes referred to as the Assassins, and various lurid stories were recorded by the sources about their activities and practices, including tales of them using hashish (from which the word 'assassin' ultimately derives) as part of their activities. The Nizaris reappeared in central Persia in the 15th century and now form the largest Isma'ili community in the world, acknowledging the leadership of a living *imam*, the Aga Khan IV (b. 1936).

Pillars of Islam Five major ritual practices that characterize the religious observances of a Muslim: (1) *shahada* (profession of faith), (2) *salat* (ritual prayer), (3) *zakat* (almsgiving), (4) *sawm* (fasting), and (5) *hajj* (greater pilgrimage). The precise manner in which these are observed varies depending on local customs and the particular form of Islam followed by the Muslim in question.

Qadi A judge or magistrate, versed in Islamic law. *Qadis* were primarily expected to apply the existing body of legal rulings to cases that needed to be considered rather than to develop new rulings through delivering legal opinions. The latter was the function of legal experts known as *muftis*.

Al-Qa'ida (al-Qaeda) Arabic: 'the base'. A multinational terrorist network

that conducts operations against targets across the world. Al-Qa'ida was founded by Usama ibn Ladin (Osama bin Laden, d. 2011) in about 1988 with the purpose of supporting Afghan resistance to the Soviet occupation of Afghanistan. It has since grown to become a worldwide network with various allies and affiliates that has the primary aim of ridding the Muslim world of western influence and establishing its own vision of a unified Muslim state. However, in recent years, it has also become highly decentralized, which prevents it from acting as a unified body and limits its capabilities.

Qur'an *(Koran)* The Muslim holy book, believed to record the actual words of God revealed to Muhammad starting in 610 and ending shortly before the Prophet's death in 632. According to Muslim tradition, the Prophet was illiterate, so the revelations were preserved by his Companions and then compiled during the following decades. Muslims believe that the *Qur'an* clarifies the earlier revelations made to the Jews, Christians, and others, correcting their errors and misunderstandings, and it is indeed striking that in many parts it reads like a commentary on the Bible and requires a familiarity with the earlier scripture to understand it.

Ramadan The ninth month of the Muslim year and the month during which the revelation of the *Qur'an* to Muhammad began. Muslims observe the *sawm* (fast) during Ramadan in commemoration of this.

Rum The Arabic word for the Byzantines. The word derives from the Greek *Rhomaioi* (Romans), the term that the Byzantines, seeing themselves as the inheritors of the Roman Empire, used to refer to themselves. The Arabic word was also used to refer to eastern Christians, especially followers of Greek Orthodox Christianity, and to Asia Minor, where many of the conflicts between the Muslims and the Byzantines took place.

Salat Ritual prayer. A 'pillar of Islam'. Most Muslims perform the *salat* five times a day, at dawn, noon, mid-afternoon, dusk, and in the evening. Before praying, Muslims conduct ritual ablutions to purify themselves. The prayer consists of changes in bodily posture, from standing, to kneeling, to self-prostration, accompanied by ritual recitations and invocations, including passages from the *Qur'an. Salat* should be conducted facing Mecca, if possible.

Sawm Fasting, especially fasting during Ramadan, which is a 'pillar of Islam'. Muslims, except for those for whom dispensations are made due to age or illness, fast from dawn until sunset during the Muslim month of Ramadan. This commemorates the first revelation of the *Qur'an* and ends with the 'Id al-Fitr (feast of the breaking of the fast).

Saljuqs See *Seljuks.*

Seljuks A clan of Central Asian Turks who entered the Muslim world in the late 10th century as part of the wider immigration of Turks into the region. They converted to Islam and led their forces in a campaign of conquest that included the taking of Baghdad and the installation of one of their number as the caliph's deputy in 1055; this deputy became known as the sultan (the Great Seljuk Sultan) and wielded effective power in the state. Seljuk expansion continued west, and in the wake of the Battle of Manzikert in 1171, a second Seljuk state was established in Asia Minor. This was later referred to as the Seljuk Sultanate of *Rum*, though it was likely only during the reign of the sultan Mas'ud (r. 1116–56) that its rulers felt secure enough in their positions to use the title of 'sultan'. The Great Seljuk Sultanate fragmented at the end of the 11th century, and by the time that the crusaders arrived in the Levant, many of the rulers there paid only nominal allegiance to the Great Seljuk Sultan. The Seljuk sultans of *Rum*, in the meantime, lost effective power in 1243, when their state was conquered by the Mongols.

Shafi'is Followers of the legal school of Muhammad ibn Idris al-Shafi'i (d. 820). The most famous Shafi'i of the crusading period is Saladin (r. 1169–93).

Shahada Profession of faith. A 'pillar of Islam'. The two-part declaration of faith, 'There is no god except God, and Muhammad is the Messenger of God', is spoken regularly by Muslims as part of their ritual observances.

Al-Sham See *Bilad al-Sham*.

Shaykh A term used to refer to (1) a highly regarded scholar or teacher and (2) the master of a Sufi order.

Shi'ites Followers of a variety of forms of Islam who trace their spiritual origins to early Muslims who advocated that a member of the family of the Prophet's cousin and son-in-law 'Ali ibn Abi Talib (r. 656–61) should lead the Muslim community. The term derives from the Arabic *shi'at 'Ali* (the party of 'Ali). The various strands of Shi'ism have since developed their own distinctive theologies and practices. Shi'ites constitute about 10–15% of the Muslim population of the world.

Sufi A Muslim mystic. Sufis seek to gain a direct, higher-state experience of God through a variety of means, including asceticism and group rituals involving prayer, chanting, music, or dance. The name derives from the garments of *suf* (wool) that they traditionally wore. During the crusading period, many Sufis, sometimes with the encouragement of rulers, formed *tariqas* (orders) gathered in convents and at Muslim saints' tombs.

Sultan Arabic: 'power'. Originally used by the Seljuk 'deputies' of the 'Abbasid caliph, the term 'sultan' came to be used as an honorific mark of political power by a number of Muslim rulers, with or without caliphal

approval.

Sunnis Followers of the majority form of Islam, currently constituting about 85–90% of the total Muslim population of the world. The name derives from the Sunna, a word used to refer to the sayings and actions of the Prophet and his Companions, which act as a guide to Muslim conduct and are preserved in the *hadith*.

Turkmen Free nomadic Turks who served in the armies of the Seljuks and later dynasties. They generally travelled with their families and flocks, at least initially, though many then settled in the new lands taken by the Seljuks. They were esteemed for their abilities as highly mobile horse-archers, though they were also often seen as undisciplined.

Turcomans See *Turkmen*.

Twelver Shi'ism When the *imam* Ja'far al-Sadiq (d. 765) died, the Shi'ite community faced a crisis, as the next *imam*-designate, Ja'far's son Isma'il, had died before his father. Many Shi'ites eventually accepted that the next *imam* was another son of Ja'far, Musa al-Kazim (d. 799), while others developed contrasting views that led to the birth of Isma'ili Shi'ism. Meanwhile, the followers of Musa continued to trace a line of *imams* through his descendents until the 10th century when, according to their beliefs, the twelfth *imam*, Muhammad al-Muntazar, went into 'greater concealment,' from which he will return as the *mahdi* at the end of time. The Twelvers, as they became known, form the majority of Shi'ites in the world today.

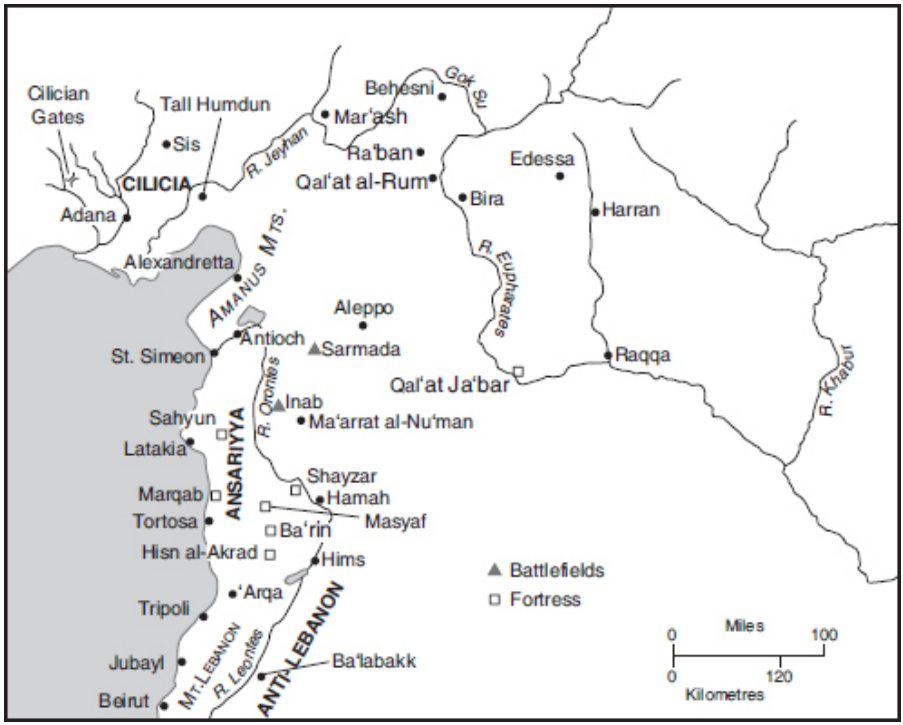
'Ulama' (Ulema) The class of Muslim scholars educated in religion, theology, and law. Muslim rulers would often patronize the *'ulama'* as a means to prove their devotion to Islam.

Umayyads The first dynasty of caliphs to establish a hereditary succession. The first caliph of the Umayyad dynasty, Mu'awiya ibn Abi Sufyan (r. 661–80), took control of the Muslim state after fighting a civil war against the caliph 'Ali ibn Abi Talib (r. 656–61). Later he designated his son Yazid (r. 680–83) to succeed him. Members of the Umayyad family continued to rule, making their capital at Damascus, until 750, when they were ousted by the 'Abbasids.

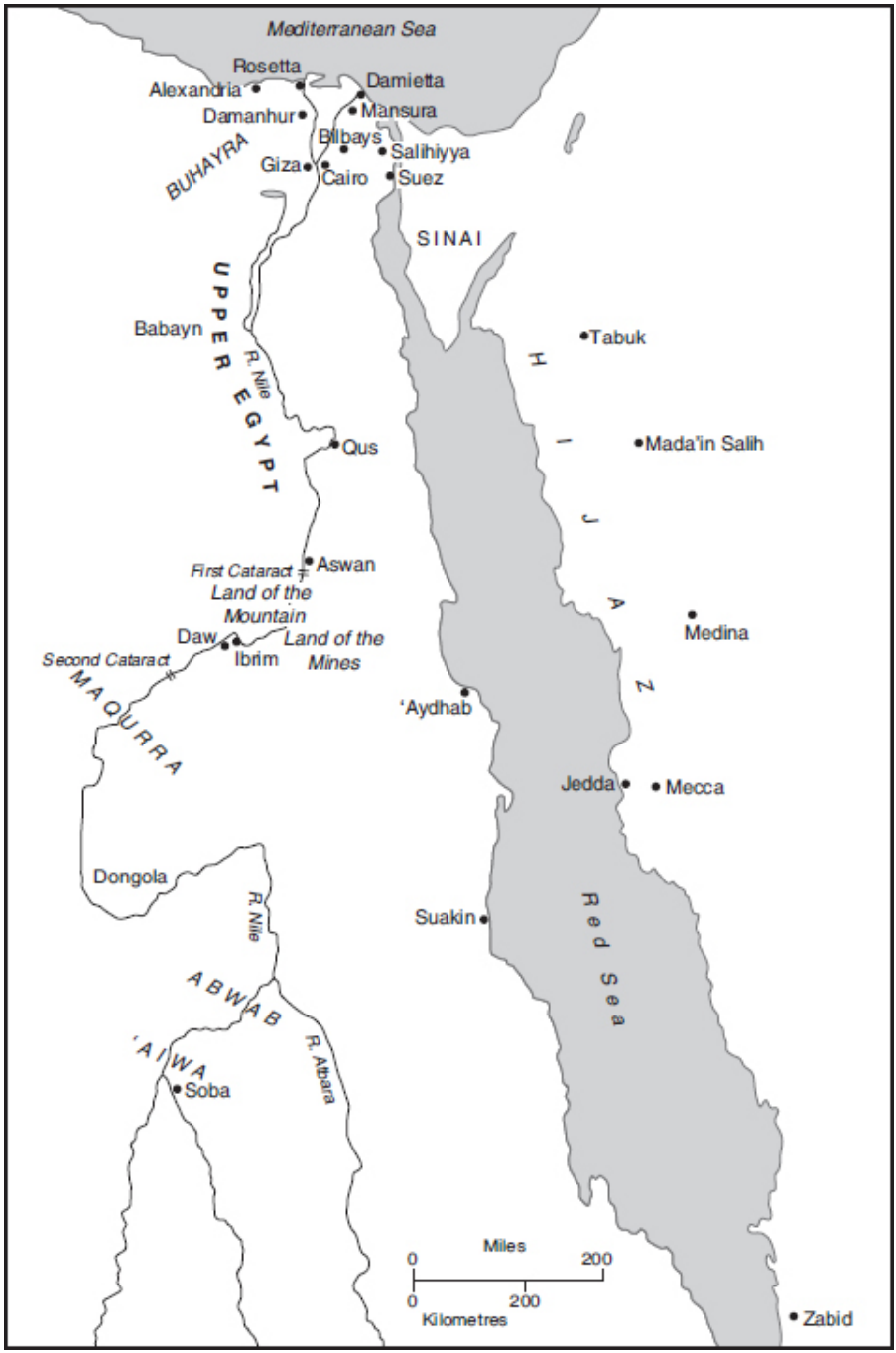
Vizier The deputy of a ruler and often a powerful figure in the state. The word derives from the Arabic *wazir*, which is used in the modern day to refer to a government minister.

Zakat Almsgiving. A 'pillar of Islam'. Muslims are required to donate a portion of their wealth to suitable charitable causes each year. The money is used, for example, to support the poor and travellers and to ransom prisoners.

Zangids The family of ʿImad al-Din Zangi (r. 1127–46). After Zangi's death, his lands passed to various members of his family, including most prominently his sons Nur al-Din (r. 1146–74) at Aleppo and Sayf al-Din (r. 1146–49) at Mosul. Nur al-Din also secured the handover of Damascus in 1154. While Damascus and Aleppo were lost to Saladin in 1174 and 1183, respectively, Zangi's descendants continued to rule territories in Iraq and the Jazira until the mid-13th century.


Cilician Gates
Tall Humdun
Behesni
Gok Su
Mar'ash
Sis
R. Jeyhan
Ra'ban
Edessa
CILICIA
Qal'at al-Rum
Bira
Harran
Adana
Alexandretta
AMANUS MTS.
R. Euphrates
Aleppo
Antioch
Sarmada
St. Simeon
Raqqa
Qal'at Ja'bar
R. Khabur
R. Orontes
Inab
Ma'arrat al-Nu'man
Sahyun
Latakia
ANSARIYYA
Shayzar
Hamah
Marqab
Tortosa
Masyaf
Ba'rin
Hisn al-Akrad
Hims
Battlefields
Fortress
'Arqa
Tripoli
Miles
0
100
0
120
Kilometres
Jubayl
Mt. LEBANON
R. Leontes
Ba'labakk
ANTI-LEBANON
Beirut

Tripoli
Jubayl
Beirut
Mediterranean Sea
Sidon
Belfort
Tyre
Acre
Haifa
'Athlith
Caesarea
Arsuf
Jaffa
Ramla
Lydda
Mont Gisard
Jerusalem
Ascalon
Bethlehem
Gaza
Harbiyya
Hebron
Nablus
'Ayn Jalut
Safad
Hattin
Galilee
Nazareth
Esdraelon
Lake Tiberias
Jericho
Dead Sea
Karak
Shawbak
Ma'an
Wadi 'l 'Araba
Aqaba
Mt. Lebanon
R. Leontes
Anti-Lebanon
R. Barada
Damascus
Ba'labakk
Jawlan
Hawran
Busra
R. Jordan
Battlefields
Fortress
Miles
0
100
0
120
Kilometres


Mediterranean Sea
Rosetta
Alexandria
Damietta
Damanhur
Mansura
Bilbays
Salihiyya
Giza
Cairo
Suez
BUHAYRA
SINAI
UPPER EGYPT
Babayn
R. Nile
Tabuk
HIJAZ
Qus
Mada'in Salih
First Cataract
Aswan
Land of the Mountain
Daw
Ibrim
Land of the Mines
Second Cataract
MAQURRA
Medina
'Aydhab
Jedda
Mecca
Dongola
R. Nile
Suakin
Red Sea
ABWAB
'AIWA
R. Atbara
Soba
Miles
0
200
0
200
Kilometres
Zabid

Maps

Map 1 *Bilad al-Sham* (northern half)

Map 2 *Bilad al-Sham* (southern half)

Map 3 The Nile Valley and the Red Sea

Map 4 Asia Minor and the Northern *Bilad al-Sham* and Jazira

Dynastic tables and genealogies

The ʿAbbasid Caliphs (usually listed by given name and caliphal title)

1075–1094	ʿAbd Allah al-Muqtadi
1094–1118	Ahmad al-Mustazhir
1118–1135	Al-Fadl al-Mustarshid
1135–1136	Al-Mansur al-Rashid
1136–1160	Muhammad al-Muqtafi
1160–1170	Yusuf al-Mustanjid
1170–1180	Al-Hasan al-Mustadi’
1180–1225	Ahmad al-Nasir
1225–1226	Muhammad al-Zahir
1226–1242	Al-Mansur al-Mustansir
1242–1258	ʿAbd Allah al-Mustaʿsim
1258	Mongol conquest of Baghdad
1261	Ahmad al-Hakim I proclaimed caliph at Aleppo
1261	Ahmad al-Mustansir proclaimed caliph at Cairo
1262–1302	Ahmad al-Hakim I (now at Cairo)
1302–1340	Sulayman al-Mustakfi I
1340–1341	Ibrahim al-Wathiq I
1341–1352	Ahmad al-Hakim II
1352–1362	Abu Bakr al-Muʿtadid I
1362–1377	Muhammad al-Mutawakkil I (first reign)
1377	Zakariyya’ al-Muʿtasim I (first reign)
1377–1383	Muhammad al-Mutawakkil I (second reign)

1383–1386	ʿUmar al-Wathiq II
1386–1389	Zakariyya' al-Muʿtasim I (second reign)
1389–1406	Muhammad al-Mutawakkil I (third reign)

The Fatimid Caliphs (usually listed by given name and caliphal title)

1036–1094	Maʿadd al-Mustansir
1094–1101	Ahmad al-Mustaʿli
1101–1130	Al-Mansur al-Amir
1130–1131	Interregnum
1131–1149	ʿAbd al-Majid al-Hafiz
1149–1154	Ismaʿil al-Zafir
1154–1160	ʿIsa al-Fa'iz
1160–1171	ʿAbd Allah al-ʿAdid

The Nizari Ismaʿili Chief Missionaries and Imams in Persia

1090–1124	Hasan-i Sabbah
1124–1138	Kiya Buzurg Ummid
1138–1162	Muhammad I
1162–1166	Hasan II (he and successors also claim the position of *imam*)
1166–1210	Muhammad II
1210–1221	Hasan III
1221–1255	Muhammad III
1255–1256	Khwurshah

The Nizari Ismaʿili Chief Missionaries in al-Sham

c. 1100–1103	Al-Hakim al-Munajjim
1103–1113	Abu Tahir al-Sa'igh
c. 1113–1128	Bahram
1128–1130	Ismaʿil al-ʿAjami
1131–?	Abu'l-Fath
?–?	Abu Muhammad
?–?	Khwaja ʿAli ibn Masʿud

1162–1192/93	Rashid al-Din Sinan
1193/94–1223	Abu Mansur al-ʿAjami
1223–1258	Joint leadership by Kamal al-Din al-Hasan ibn Masʿud, Majd al-Din, Siraj al-Din Muzaffar ibn al-Husayn, Taj al-Din Abu'l-Futuh ibn Muhammad, and Radi al-Din Abu'l-Maʿali
1262–1271	Najm al-Din Ismaʿil ibn al-Shaʿrani, assisted by Shams al-Din ibn Najm al-Din, and Sarim al-Din Mubarak ibn Radi al-Din
1271–1273	Shams al-Din ibn Najm al-Din

The Great Seljuk Sultans

1073–1092	Malik-Shah I ibn Alp Arslan
1092–1094	Mahmud I ibn Malik-Shah
1094–1105	Berkyaruq ibn Malik-Shah
1105	Malik-Shah II ibn Berkyaruq
1105–1118	Muhammad I Tapar ibn Malik-Shah
1118–1157	Ahmad Sanjar ibn Malik-Shah

The Seljuk Sultans of Iraq

1118–1131	Mahmud II ibn Muhammad I
1131–1132	Dawud ibn Mahmud II
1132–1134	Tughril II ibn Muhammad I
1134–1152	Masʿud ibn Muhammad I
1152–1153	Malik-Shah III ibn Mahmud II
1153–1159	Muhammad II ibn Mahmud II
1160–1161	Sulayman-Shah ibn Muhammad I
1161–1176	Arslan-Shah ibn Tughril II
1176–1194	Tughril III ibn Arslan-Shah

The Seljuks of Rum

1081–1086	Sulayman ibn Qutulmish
1086–1092	Alp-Arslan ibn Sulayman
1092–1107	Kilij-Arslan I ibn Sulayman
1109–1116	Malik-Shah (or Shahanshah) ibn Kilij-

	Arslan I
1116–1156	Masʿud I ibn Kilij-Arslan I
1156–1192	Kilij-Arslan II ibn Masʿud I
1192–1197	Kay-Khusraw I ibn Kilij-Arslan II (first reign)
1197–1204	Sulayman II ibn Kilij-Arslan II
1204–1205	Kilij-Arslan III ibn Sulayman II
1205–1211	Kay-Khusraw I ibn Kilij-Arslan II (second reign)
1211–1220	Kay-Kawus I ibn Kay-Khusraw I
1220–1237	Kay-Qubadh I ibn Kay-Khusraw I
1237–1246	Kay-Khusraw II ibn Kay-Qubadh I
1246–1248	Kay-Kawus II ibn Kay-Khusraw II
1248–1249	Joint rule by Kay-Kawus II ibn Kay-Khusraw II and Kilij-Arslan IV ibn Kay-Khusraw II
1249–1257	Joint rule by Kay-Kawus II ibn Kay-Khusraw II, Kilij-Arslan IV ibn Kay-Khusraw II, and Kay-Qubadh II ibn Kay-Khusraw II
1257–1259	Joint rule by Kay-Khusraw II ibn Kay-Qubadh I and Kilij-Arslan IV ibn Kay-Khusraw II
1259–1265	Kilij-Arslan IV ibn Kay-Khusraw II
1265–1282	Kay-Khusraw III ibn Kilij-Arslan IV
1282–1284	Masʿud II ibn Kay-Kawus II (first reign)
1284	Kay-Qubadh III ibn Faramurz ibn Kay-Kawus II (first reign)
1284–1293	Masʿud II ibn Kay-Kawus II (second reign)
1293–1294	Kay-Qubadh III ibn Faramurz ibn Kay-Kawus II (second reign)
1294–1301	Masʿud II ibn Kay-Kawus II (third reign)
1301–1303	Kay-Qubadh III ibn Faramurz ibn Kay-Kawus II (third reign)
1303–1307	Masʿud II ibn Kay-Kawus II (fourth reign)
1307	Masʿud III ibn Kay-Qubadh III

The Seljuk Atabegs of Mosul

1094–1101	Kerbogha
1101–1106	Gümüshtigin
1106–1108	Jawali Saqawa
1108–1113	Mawdud ibn Altuntash
1114–1115	Aqsunqur al-Bursuqi
1115–1121	Juyush Beg
1121–1126	Aqsunqur al-Bursuqi
1126–1127	Masʿud ibn Aqsunqur al-Bursuqi

The Seljuks of Aleppo

1094–1095	Tutush I ibn Alp-Arslan
1095–1113	Ridwan ibn Tutush I
1113–1114	Alp-Arslan al-Akhras ibn Ridwan
1114–1123	Sultan-Shah ibn Ridwan (effective power held by Ilghazi of Mardin from 1117/18)

The Seljuks of Damascus

1087–1095	Tutush I ibn Alp-Arslan
1095–1104	Duqaq ibn Tutush I
1104–1105	Tutush II ibn Duqaq

The Burids of Damascus

1105–1128	Zahir al-Din Tughtigin
1128–1132	Buri ibn Tughtigin
1132–1135	Ismaʿil ibn Buri
1135–1139	Mahmud ibn Buri
1139–1140	Muhammad ibn Buri
1140–1154	Abaq ibn Muhammad

The Artuqids of Hisn Kayfa and Amid

1102–1104	Suqman I ibn Artuq
1104–1109	Ibrahim ibn Suqman I
1109–1144	Dawud ibn Suqman I

1144–1167	Qara Arslan ibn Dawud
1167–1185	Muhammad ibn Qara Arslan
1185–1201	Suqman II ibn Muhammad
1201–1222	Mahmud ibn Muhammad
1222–1223	Mawdud ibn Mahmud

The Artuqids of Mardin and Mayyafariqin

c. 1101–1104	Yaquti ibn Alp Yaruq ibn Artuq
1104	ʿAli ibn Alp Yaruq
1104–1114/15	Suqman I ibn Artuq
1114/15–1122	Ilghazi I ibn Artuq
1122–1154	Timurtash ibn Ilghazi I
1154–1176	Alpi I ibn Timurtash
1176–1184	Ilghazi II ibn Alpi I
1184–1203	Yuluk Arslan ibn Ilghazi II
1203–1239	Artuq Arslan ibn Ilghazi II
1239–1260	Ghazi I ibn Yuluk Arslan
1260–1292	Qara Arslan ibn Ghazi I
1292–1294	Dawud I ibn Qara Arslan
1294–1312	Ghazi II ibn Qara Arslan
1312	ʿAli Alpi ibn Ghazi II
1312–1364	Mahmud ibn Ghazi II
1364–1368	Ahmad ibn Mahmud
1368–1376	Dawud II ibn Mahmud
1376–1407	ʿIsa ibn Dawud II
1407–1409	Ahmad ibn ʿIsa

The Zangids of Mosul

1127–1146	ʿImad al-Din Zangi I ibn Aksungur
1146–1149	Sayf al-Din Ghazi I ibn Zangi I
1149–1170	Qutb al-Din Mawdud ibn Zangi I
1170–1180	Sayf al-Din Ghazi II ibn Mawdud
1180–1193	ʿIzz al-Din Masʿud I ibn Mawdud
1193–1211	Nur al-Din Arslan-Shah I ibn Masʿud I
1211–1218	ʿIzz al-Din Masʿud II ibn Arslan-Shah I
1218–1219	Nur al-Din Arslan-Shah II ibn Masʿud II
1219–1234	Nasir al-Din Mahmud ibn Masʿud II

The Zangids of Aleppo and Damascus

1128–1146	ʻImad al-Din Zangi I ibn Aksungur (at Aleppo)
1146–1174	Nur al-Din Mahmud ibn Zangi I (also at Damascus from 1154)
1174–1181	Al-Malik al-Salih Ismaʻil ibn Nur al-Din (Damascus lost to Saladin in 1174)
1181–1183	ʻImad al-Din Zangi II ibn Mawdud

The Rulers of the Kingdom of Jerusalem

1099–1100	Godfrey of Bouillon
1100–1118	Baldwin I (of Boulogne)
1118–1131	Baldwin II (of Bourcq)
1131–1143	Fulk of Anjou
1131–1152	Melisende
1143–1163	Baldwin III
1163–1174	Amalric
1174–1185	Baldwin IV
1185–1186	Baldwin V
1186–1190	Sibyl
1186–1192	Guy of Lusignan
1190–1205	Isabella I
1192	Conrad I of Montferrat
1192–1197	Henry I of Champagne
1197–1205	Aimery of Lusignan
1205–1212	Maria la Marquise of Montferrat
1210–1212	John of Brienne
1212–1228	Isabella II
1225–1228	Frederick (Holy Roman Emperor Frederick II)
1228–1254	Conrad II (Conrad IV of Germany)
1254–1268	Conrad III (Conradin)
1268–1284	Hugh I (Hugh III of Cyprus)
1284–1285	John II (John I of Cyprus)
1285–1324	Henry II (also of Cyprus)

The Counts of Edessa

1097–1100	Baldwin I (of Boulogne)

1100–1118	Baldwin II (of Bourcq)
1119–1131	Joscelin I of Courtenay
1131–1150	Joscelin II of Courtenay

The Princes of Antioch

1098–1111	Bohemund I
1112–1119	Roger of Salerno
1126–1130	Bohemund II
1136–1149	Raymond of Poitiers
1153–1161	Reynald of Châtillon
1163/64–1201	Bohemund III
1201–1219	Raymond-Rupen
1201–1233	Bohemund IV
1233–1251	Bohemund V
1251–1275	Bohemund VI (in name only from 1268)

The Counts of Tripoli

1102–1105	Raymond I (of Saint-Gilles)
1109–1112	Bertrand
1112–1137	Pons
1137–1152	Raymond II
1152–1187	Raymond III
1187–1233	Bohemund IV of Antioch
1233–1252	Bohemund V
1252–1275	Bohemund VI
1275–1287	Bohemund VII
1287–1289	Lucy

For more details on these Muslim dynasties, see Clifford Edmund Bosworth, *The New Islamic Dynasties* (1996) and Taef El-Azhari, *Zengi and the Muslim Response to the Crusades* (2016), from which these lists are adapted. The lists of Frankish rulers are adapted from Alan V. Murray (ed.), *The Crusades: An Encyclopedia* (2006).

Table 1 The Ayyubids of Egypt, Damascus, and AleppoThe Ayyubids of Egypt, Damascus, and Aleppo

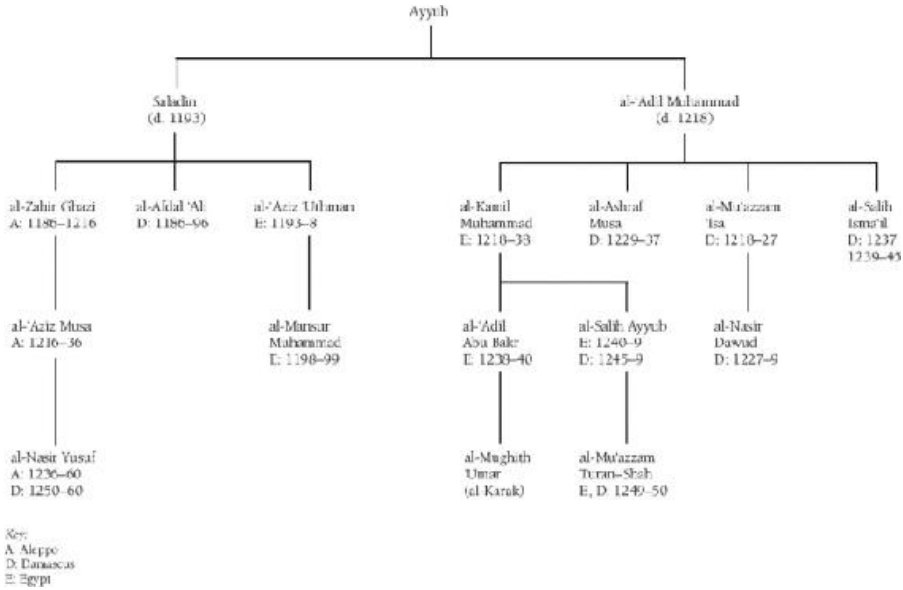


Table 2 Al-Salih Ayyub and the Early Mamluk Sultans

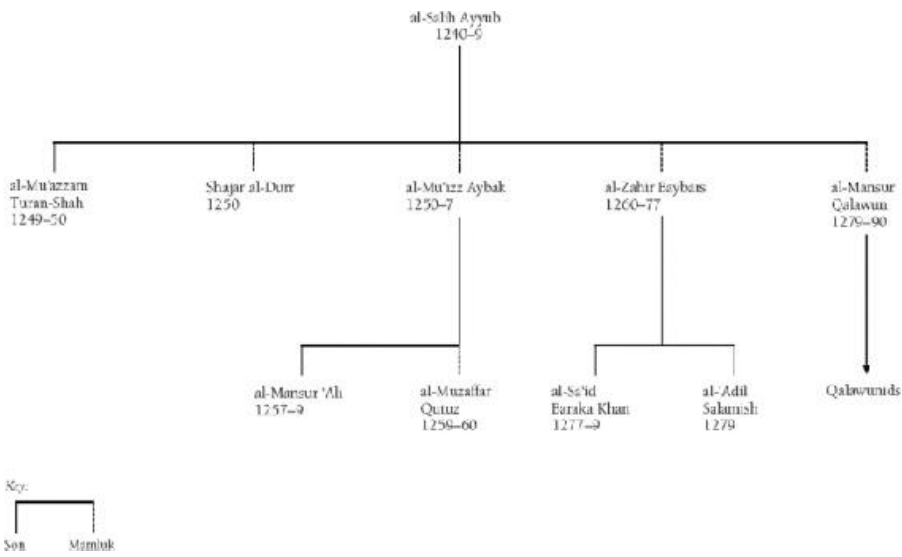
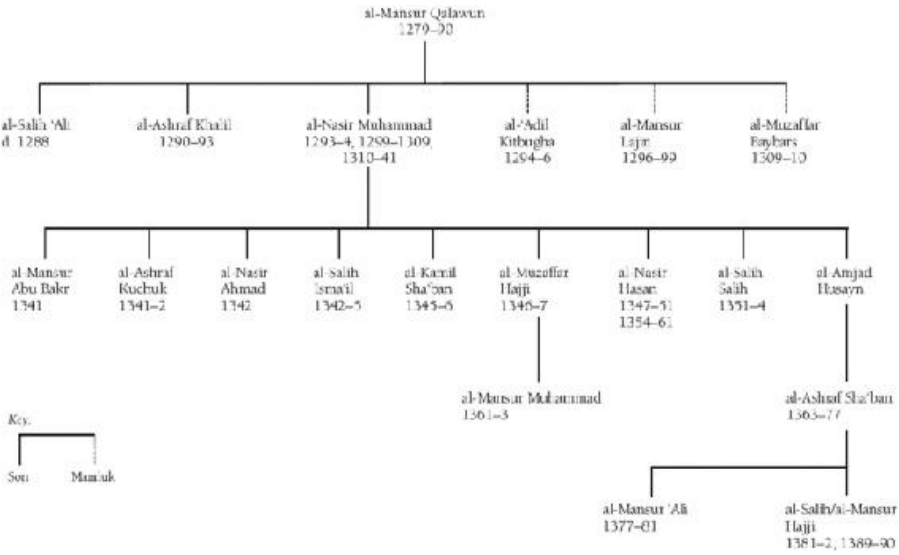


Table 3 The House of Qalawun


al-Mansur Qalawun
1279–90
al-Salih 'Ali
d. 1288
al-Ashraf Khalil
1290–93
al-Nasir Muhammad
1293–4, 1299–1309
1310–41
al-'Adil
Kitbugha
1294–6
al-Mansur
Lajin
1296–99
al-Muzaffar
Baybars
1309–10
al-Mansur
Abu Bakr
1341
al-Ashraf
Kuchuk
1341–2
al-Nasir
Ahmad
1342
al-Salih
Isma'il
1342–5
al-Kamil
Sha'ban
1345–6
al-Muzaffar
Hajji
1346–7
al-Nasir
Hasan
1347–51
1354–61
al-Salih
Salih
1351–4
al-Amjad
Hasayn
al-Mansur Muhammad
1361–3
al-Ashraf Sha'ban
1363–77
Key:
Son
Mamluk
al-Mansur 'Ali
1377–81
al-Salih/al-Mansur
Hajji
1381–2, 1389–90

1 Introduction

> In this year [1096] there came a sequence of reports [telling] of the appearance of Frankish troops from the sea of Constantinople, the number of which was too great to be counted. News of that continued to arrive, and the people were disturbed to hear it and became alarmed as it spread.
>
> (Ibn al-Qalanisi, 1983: 218)

Few historians would deny that the crusades to the Middle East were of immense importance in the development of medieval Europe. From the thousands who marched east to the many more who were left behind to deal with the consequences of their departure, most people of medieval Europe felt the impact of crusading activities on some level. However, we should not forget that the crusades also had a great impact on the peoples against whom they were waged. This book seeks to present the crusades from the viewpoint of the Muslim peoples of the Levant, providing the reader with an understanding of the most significant issues that coloured their responses to both the crusaders from Europe and the descendants of Europeans who were born and lived in the Latin Christian states that were created in the region. Through both a survey of the major topics that emerge from study of the period and the presentation of a wide range of sources that allow the people of the time to speak to us in their own voices, this book aims to act as a supplemental and counterbalancing work to the numerous books that tell the story of the crusading period from the European Christian point of view, enabling readers to achieve a broader perspective on the period than they might do otherwise.

Previous works on Muslim views of the crusades

Study of Muslim perspectives on the crusades is a relatively young scholarly field, and few major works have been published that deal with the subject as a

whole, particularly when compared with the very large number of works that tell the European side of the story. In 1957, Francesco Gabrieli sought to open up Muslim perspectives on the crusades to European readers with his *Storici Arabi delle Crociate*, a volume of translations of selected Arabic sources into Italian; this was subsequently translated into English in 1969 by E.J. Costello, with the title *Arab Historians of the Crusades*, and has been reprinted repeatedly since (Gabrieli, 1984). Meanwhile, in 1968, Emmanuel Sivan published a pioneering work in the subject, *L'Islam et la Croisade*. Sivan's book examines the development of the Muslim holy war against the crusaders, thus presenting an important study of the topic, albeit one that only focuses on one aspect. A broader vision, *The Crusades through Arab Eyes*, was presented in 1984 by Amin Maalouf. This is an evocative, engaging treatment of the theme, though it self-consciously privileges storytelling over academic rigour. Two years later came P.M. Holt's *The Age of the Crusades*, an excellent scholarly treatment of the history of the Levantine region at the time that concentrates primarily on the complex political developments that took place within the Muslim states of the region. This was followed in 1991 by Michael Köhler's *Allianzen und Verträge zwischen Fränkischen und Islamischen Herrschern im Vorderen Orient*, a study that was effective in demonstrating the importance of diplomacy and alliances in relations between the Franks (defined subsequently) and the Muslims during the crusading period.

Then, in 1999, Carole Hillenbrand published her magisterial study, *The Crusades: Islamic Perspectives*. This weighty tome (704 pages) presents a detailed survey of the major themes and questions with which those seeking to study the crusading period from the Muslim point of view must grapple, providing a vivid illustration of the breadth of sources and wide range of lines of enquiry that require further exploration by modern scholars. Since then, a number of important works on the topic have been published. An English translation of Köhler's study was published in 2013, with the title *Alliances and Treaties between Frankish and Muslim Rulers in the Middle East*. Then several important works appeared in 2014, coincidentally the same year that the first edition of *Muslims and Crusaders* was published: Paul M. Cobb's *The Race for Paradise: An Islamic History of the Crusades* provides an excellent discussion of the Muslim response to the crusades in the Levant, Spain, and Sicily, in the process questioning conventional assumptions about chronological, geographical, and cultural aspects of the Christian-Muslim encounter during the crusading period. In similar vein, Brian A. Catlos' *Infidel Kings and Unholy Warriors* uses a series of episodes that took place in the 11th and 12th centuries in a number of states across the Mediterranean to demonstrate the complexity of the interactions between Muslims, Christians, and Jews in the time of the early crusades. Alex Mallett's *Popular Muslim*

Reactions to the Franks in the Levant, 1097–1291 examines the responses of 'non-elite' inhabitants of the Levantine region to the activities of the crusaders and in doing so encourages readers to consider distinctions between '***jihad***' and 'counter-crusade'. In the same year, Mallett also published an edited volume, *Medieval Muslim Historians and the Franks in the Levant, 1097–1291*, which provides detailed overviews of a number of important Muslim writers from the crusading period and their works. Then, in 2018, Osman Latiff published a valuable and detailed study of Muslim poetry written in response to the crusades, focused mainly on the 12th century, entitled *The Cutting Edge of the Poet's Sword: Muslim Poetic Responses to the Crusades*. Currently in press is Kenneth A. Goudie's *Reinventing Jihad: Jihad Ideology from the Conquest of Jerusalem to the End of the Ayyubids (c. 492/1099–647/1249)*, which will expand our understanding of Muslim *jihad* ideology.

Jihad Arabic: 'striving'. A struggle undertaken on the behalf of the religion. This struggle is intended to be undertaken against one's own inner sinfulness and to defend the faith with speech, writing, or (if absolutely necessary) military action.

Muslims and Crusaders, meanwhile, aims to provide students, scholars, and interested laypersons with an accessible entry into the topic of Muslim reactions to the crusades, combining chronological narrative, discussion of important areas of scholarly enquiry, and evidence from primary sources to give a well-rounded initial survey of the period from which further study may proceed. Readers who want to know more about the subject after reading this work are encouraged to consult the texts mentioned previously, as well as those highlighted in the *Further Reading* sections at the end of each chapter in this book. Readers who would like to compare what is contained herein with works on European Christian views of the crusades are encouraged to consult the extensive literature on the latter topic; excellent introductions to the current state of scholarship on the subject are *Contesting the Crusades* by Norman Housley (2006); *The Crusades, 1095–1204* (2014), by Jonathan Phillips; *The Crusader World* (2016), edited by Adrian J. Boas; *The Crusades: An Epitome* by Susanna Throop (2018); and the forthcoming fourth edition of *The Crusades: A History* by Jonathan Riley-Smith and Susanna Throop.

The limitations of this work

This is a short book, and, as such, it can only offer a brief introduction to the major topics that the student of Muslim views of the crusades might wish to consider. As hinted previously, modern scholars have increasingly perceived the Levant as only one of many theatres where crusading took place; indeed, it

must be acknowledged that crusades were waged in many places against a range of target peoples, both Muslim and non-Muslim. However, page limits will not allow us to address all of these in detail here, and so we will remain largely focused on Muslim responses to the crusading activities that took place in the Levant during the 11th–13th centuries while providing some contextualization of these within the wider Muslim world. In addition, again given the limits of space, we will, regrettably, not be able to consider the perspectives of the sizeable and important native Christian and Jewish communities that existed in the Middle East at the time that the crusades were taking place; good starting points for research on these are Christopher MacEvitt's *The Crusades and the Christian World of the East: Rough Tolerance* (2008); and Joshua Prawer's *The History of the Jews in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem* (1988).

The Muslim sources

The Muslim sources, most of which are in Arabic, occupy a broad range of different genres, many of which had a long and distinguished history by the time that the crusades themselves began, and we have sought to present a representative sample of these in English translation in the *Documents* section of this work. Chief among the Muslim sources are annalistic chronicles, intended to recount events on a year-by-year basis. Such chronicles take a number of forms, including universal chronicles that seek to present a history of the world from its origin to the author's own time, and city- or country-based chronicles, telling of events taking place in a particular location. Other works adopt a biographical basis: we have biographical and autobiographical works focused on one individual; dynastic histories, telling of the lives of members of a particular family; and also (sometimes very large) biographical dictionaries that seek to record the lives of individuals, collected on the basis of a shared theme, often a shared geographical origin, profession, or importance to the Muslim community. We also have descriptive geographies and travel literature, including descriptions of the known world and accounts of journeys from one end of the Muslim lands to the other. There are also Muslim religious and legal texts, which take a variety of forms, including, of course, the ***Qur'an*** , the Muslim holy book; the ***hadith*** , accounts of the sayings and actions of the Prophet Muhammad and his Companions, used to assist in understanding Islamic teachings; *fada'il* (merits) works praising the virtues of a place or activity, including in particular books devoted to the *jihad* in all its legal and religious aspects; and texts of *fatwas* (legal judgements). It is worth noting that these enjoyed particular longevity of influence, and thus we find authors of the crusading period drawing heavily on works of these types from previous

centuries. In recent decades, scholars of the period have also been making increasing use of official court and chancery documents, including letters and records of decrees, treaties, and legal and religious endowments. Such documents can be found in original manuscripts in library archives, though as many of these libraries are in politically unstable Middle Eastern countries, these can be difficult to access; however, increasing numbers of such documents are being edited and published, either on their own or preserved within chancery and scribal manuals by later authors as models for subsequent generations of officials to follow. Finally, we have other texts that were explicitly intended to entertain or instruct their listeners, including works of poetry, folktales, and epic sagas.

Qur'an (Koran) The Muslim holy book, believed to record the actual words of God revealed to Muhammad starting in 610 and ending shortly before the Prophet's death in 632.

Hadith Accounts of the sayings and actions of the Prophet Muhammad and his Companions. The *hadith* are used alongside the *Qur'an* to assist in understanding the holy book's teachings.

It should be noted that this is not an exhaustive list of the types of sources available for the crusading period, nor should the genres detailed previously be seen as neatly divided from each other. In many cases, sources combine genres; for instance, a legal text might have some of its ideas illustrated by quotations from the *Qur'an* and *hadith* but also make use of poetry and historical anecdotes to prove its points. In theory at least, a cultivated Muslim nobleman of the time was expected to have, in addition to expertise in fighting and riding, a deep knowledge of the most important works of literature so that he could, where warranted, drop a Qur'anic or poetic quotation into a speech or conversation. The ability to compose literature, and especially poetry, was also highly respected; the Muslim nobleman Usama ibn Munqidh (d. 1188), although better known to modern historians for his anecdotes about the quirky characteristics of the crusaders, was indeed most famous in his own time for his talents as a poet.

The Muslims referred to the crusaders and their Levantine descendants as the ***ifranj*** (Franks). Before the crusades, this term was used in a vague fashion, but it often referred to the inhabitants of the area of the world that corresponded roughly to the Frankish empire of Charlemagne (r. 768–814), thus occupying modern-day France and also parts of Spain, Germany, and Italy. However, with the onset of the crusades, the term came to be used by the Muslim sources in a more widespread fashion, referring to western Europeans in general, a practice that persists in the sources even after the Muslim writers

begin to show knowledge of the various different geographical origins of those about whom they write. In the sources, the Franks are seen as being distinct from the ***rum*** (the Byzantines, though the term was also sometimes used to refer to eastern Christians), though they are usually recognized as sharing the same religion. That said, the Muslim sources do not dwell on the differences between the Christianity of the Franks, who were Catholic, and the Byzantines, who were Greek Orthodox.

Ifranj Arabic: 'Franks'. The term used by the Muslim sources to refer to the Europeans.

Rum The Arabic word for the Byzantines. The term was also used to refer both to eastern Christians and to Asia Minor.

Few of the Muslim sources take events of the wars with the crusaders as their primary subject matter. It is far more common to see Muslim interactions with the Franks forming part of a wider narrative. The Damascene chronicler Ibn al-Qalanisi (d. 1160), for example, has left us a history of the city in which he tells of the arrival of the crusaders and their subsequent activities in the Levant, but at the same time, his perspective is limited, for his accounts of these are only a small part of a wider narrative in which he recounts various events that took place in and around the city. Sources such as these remind us of two things. First, for the inhabitants of the Muslim world as a whole, the impact of the crusades was actually quite limited. We cannot deny that for those who lived in areas where such conflicts between Muslims and Europeans were taking place, primarily the Levant and Iberia, events could be at times politically, economically, and personally devastating. However, at the same time, the Muslim world stretched from the Iberian Peninsula and the Maghrib in the west to Central Asia and north-west India in the east; a Muslim merchant in Samarkand, for example, was likely unaware of or unconcerned by events in the Levant, assuming that they had no impact on his suppliers in the region. Even these events' impact on a city much closer to the Levant, such as the caliphal capital of Baghdad, was minimal, despite the feelings of some of its residents, as we will see. Second, given that they show that Muslim interaction with the Franks was a continuous process, rather than something that happened in distinct phases, the Muslim sources for the period are a salutary reminder that the neat division of the crusades into numbered expeditions, like so many terms employed by historians, is a modern invention, a labelling used to impose a structure on the period in order to assist in discussions. No Muslim or crusader at the time numbered the expeditions that had been made from Europe to the Middle East, and for them terms such as 'Second Crusade' would have been meaningless. This in turn reminds us of the

importance of seeking, as far as we can, to cast aside our own preconceptions and prejudices when we read the historical sources from the period, so that our understanding of them will be as unimpaired as possible. This will allow the writers of the past to speak to us on their own terms, permitting us to see their world as they would have us see it rather than as we might wish to from our modern perspective.

2 The Muslim world before the crusades

By the time that the crusaders arrived in the Levant, Islamic society was almost 500 years old. The Muslim faith had become a highly diverse tradition, practised in a number of different ways; Muslim culture and science had become highly sophisticated; and the Muslim world itself (here understood as the region in which the rulers were mostly Muslim) had spread to cover the Iberian Peninsula, North Africa, the Middle East, and parts of Central Asia and north-west India. Here we will provide a brief discussion of the history, theology, and practices of Islam before considering the state of the Levant before the crusades.

A brief history

Muslim tradition states that in 610, in a cave on the outskirts of the Arabian city of Mecca, an orphaned merchant named Muhammad began receiving divine revelations. He was instructed to preach to the people of Mecca, who were mostly pagans, encouraging them to abandon idolatry and worship only the one true God ('Allah' in Arabic), the same God worshipped by the Jews and Christians. The new faith was to be known as 'Islam', a word meaning submission of one's will to God, while the revelations themselves would eventually be gathered into the *Qur'an* (recitation), the Muslim holy book. Muhammad's message was not well received by the inhabitants of Mecca, which was an important trade centre that profited from pilgrims visiting the Ka'ba, the shrine of the Black Stone, at the time a popular pagan religious site. In 622, in response to increasing pressure, Muhammad emigrated to Medina, about 200 miles to the north, where his message was more favourably received. Muhammad and his followers then fought an eight-year war with Mecca, culminating in his conquest of the city in 630. The Ka'ba was confirmed as the holiest site of Islam, being seen as a shrine built by Abraham and Ishmael (Abraham's oldest son, believed to be the ancestor of the Arabs) that had been

taken over for pagan use, and most of the inhabitants of Mecca converted to Islam. By the time that Muhammad died in 632, his message and leadership had spread across the Arabian Peninsula, and most of the pagans of the region had converted to Islam.

An important teaching in Islam is that Muhammad was the last prophet, with the *Qur'an* being the final and most accurate version of the divine revelation. Thus, no other Muslim could now take over as a new prophet, so leadership of the Muslim community passed instead into the hands of a succession of figures known as *khalifas* (**caliphs**, 'successors'). The first three of these were chosen by approximate consensus of the Muslim community, but after the third caliph, 'Uthman (r. 644–56), was murdered by Muslim troops, there was a civil war in the Muslim community. The fourth caliph, the Prophet's cousin and son-in-law 'Ali ibn Abi Talib (r. 656–61), had been raised to the position by, among others, 'Uthman's killers, and as a result, he faced opposition throughout his reign. After he was himself murdered, power passed under the control of a dynastic succession of caliphs from 'Uthman's family, the **Umayyads** (r. 661–750), who ruled from Damascus. They were in turn ousted by the 'Abbasid family, who founded the next caliphal dynasty and soon established their seat of power at Baghdad. In the meantime, the Islamic polity had continued to spread, through a mixture of armed conquest, acquiescence of local populations, and voluntary conversion. By the time of the 'Abbasid takeover in 750, the Muslims had dismantled the Persian Empire, taking over territories as far east as Transoxania and north-west India; had conquered much of the Levant, North Africa, and Iberia; and had even conducted raids into what is now France. At the same time, many of the administrative structures of the state had been set up, including the establishment of Arabic as the major language of the administration and the standardization of the coinage into a distinctive form bearing Arabic inscriptions and no iconography.

Caliph Anglicization of the Arabic term *khalifa* (deputy, successor). The caliph was, in theory if not always in fact, the spiritual and political ruler of the Muslim world.

Umayyads The first dynasty of caliphs to establish a hereditary succession. They reigned at Damascus from 661 until 750, and at Cordoba in Spain from 756 (taking the title of caliphs from 929) until 1031.

The early 'Abbasid caliphs enjoyed a heyday of power, and the first century of their rule saw the Muslim world prosper economically and intellectually. Lucrative trade networks were established across the Muslim world and to places beyond. Literature, both prose and poetic, flourished, and advances were

made in science, law, philosophy, and theology. Scholars took works from the Greek, Roman, Persian, and Sanskrit traditions and translated them into Arabic; many of both these texts and books by the scholars who worked on them subsequently passed into Europe, mainly through the Iberian Peninsula. However, this age of prosperity did not last, for the **ʿAbbasids** at least. Economic problems, rebellions, and the increasing domination of the caliphs by their troops starting in the later 9th century resulted in many of the provinces becoming independent from Baghdad's control. The final insult, from the ʿAbbasid point of view, came in the mid-10th century when Baghdad itself was taken over by the armies of the **Buyids**, a **Shiʿite** clan from Persia. Forced to accept the Buyid conquerors as their 'deputies', the Sunni caliphs became for the most part figureheads, maintained in power only to give legitimacy to the decrees of their theoretical subordinates (for the distinctions between Sunnis and Shiʿites, see subsequently).

ʿAbbasids Dynasty of Sunni caliphs reigning at Baghdad at the time of the Crusades. After the Mongol destruction of Baghdad in 1258, the caliphate was re-established at Cairo in 1261 and reigned there until the Ottoman conquest of 1516–17.

Buyids Dynasty of Persian Shiʿites who ruled as caliphal 'deputies' (wielding effective power) at Baghdad from 945 to 1055.

Shiʿites Followers of a variety of forms of Islam who trace their spiritual origins to early Muslims who advocated that a member of the family of the Prophet's cousin and son-in-law, ʿAli ibn Abi Talib (r. 656–61), should be the caliph.

The late 10th century saw the beginning of the immigration into the Muslim world of large numbers of ethnic Turks from Central Asia. Many of these began to adopt Sunni Islam, and one Turkic clan, the **Seljuks** (Saljuqs), led their armies in a series of campaigns that enabled them to take control of much of the Middle East. In 1055, Seljuk troops took control of Baghdad, and the Buyid caliphal deputy was now replaced by a Seljuk one, known as the sultan (Arabic: 'power'). Although the caliph now had a Sunni deputy, this did not mean that the caliph regained significant power, and periodic conflicts between the caliphs and the sultans would take place in the 12th century.

Seljuks Clan of Sunni Muslim Turks who entered the Muslim world in the late 10th century. In 1055, they ousted the Buyids from Baghdad and took control of the ʿAbbasid caliphate, subsequently establishing two sultanates based in Persia and Asia Minor.

The Seljuk armies were largely composed of two major groups: ***mamluks***

(slave-soldiers) and Turkmen (Turcomans, free nomadic Turks). The *mamluks* were normally used as the backbone of the Seljuk armies, while the rather less disciplined Turkmen, who brought their families and flocks with them, were used in a supporting role or allowed to engage in their own raids, which could prove to be a convenient way to distract enemies from major Seljuk campaigns. During the reign of the Seljuk sultan Alp-Arslan (r. 1063–73), Turkmen tribesmen conducted raids against Byzantine territory in Asia Minor and northern Syria. Tensions between Alp-Arslan and the Byzantine emperor Romanus Diogenes (r. 1068–71) mounted, and in 1071 they met in battle at Manzikert (Malasjird), near Lake Van. The Byzantine army was defeated, and the emperor was captured. Alp-Arslan made a peace agreement with his opponent, but in the wake of the battle, the Byzantine Empire descended into a civil war over the emperor's throne, Byzantine authority in Asia Minor collapsed, and the frontier crumbled (Peacock, 2015: 55–56). The Turkmen raids into the region now became a flood of immigrant settlers, and a relative of Alp-Arslan set up a new state, based at Nicaea (Iznik); this later became known as the Seljuk Sultanate of *Rum*, to distinguish it from the so-called Great Seljuk Sultanate that we saw established previously. In the meantime, the Byzantine emperors sent appeals for aid to western Europe, contributing to the build-up of support for the crusade that would eventually manifest itself in military action at the end of the 11th century.

Mamluk **Arabic: 'owned'. A slave. The term is used in particular for slave-soldiers. The capitalized term is also used to refer to the Mamluk Sultanate, the sequence of rulers who controlled Egypt and** *Bilad al-Sham* **from 1250 to 1517.**

Core beliefs and practices

The core beliefs and rituals of Islam have remained strikingly consistent throughout the faith's history, even though it has become incredibly diverse in its practice. The Muslim faith is based above all on the belief that there is only one God, omnipotent, omniscient, and with no associates, partners, or offspring. This is the same God as that of the Christians and Jews, who are presented in the *Qur'an* as having received the divine revelation previously but also as having misunderstood or distorted it. Thus the scripture that was revealed to Muhammad is seen as a corrective and clarification. Muhammad himself is understood to be the last and 'Seal' of a long line of prophets, including Adam, Abraham, Moses, David, and Jesus (who is regarded as having been born of a virgin by divine will and is explicitly noted as being a great prophet but not the son of God).

Muslims believe that at a time known only to God, all who have lived will be resurrected and a Last Judgement will take place. All will be judged individually according to their good and bad deeds. Those who are judged worthy will then achieve the lush gardens of Paradise, while those who are not will be condemned to the burning fires of Hell. Thus Muslims should seek as far as possible to be righteous in their beliefs and actions. The first source of wisdom for Muslims is the *Qur'an*, understood to be the words of God, dictated to the Prophet. It contains material addressing a wide range of topics, including accounts and explanations of the stories of the prophets, vivid depictions of Paradise and Hell, stern injunctions to right belief and good conduct, and practical teachings on social and personal interactions. Muslims expand their understanding of the *Qur'an* through examination of the *hadith*, accounts of the sayings and actions of the Prophet and his Companions, who are seen as the foremost interpreters of the *Qur'an's* teachings.

Over the centuries following the death of the Prophet, a number of groups of scholars of Islamic law came into being, each of which developed its own understanding of Islamic teaching depending on its own interpretation of the *Qur'an* and *hadith*. The four most prominent of these schools of Islamic law are the Sunni schools known as the Hanafis, the Malikis, the Shafi'is, and the Hanbalis. Muslim religious scholars also developed other methods for interpreting Islamic teaching when even the *hadith* did not yield a clear answer, including the use of analogy and the establishment of consensus (of the Muslim community or of particular groups within it).

Probably the most distinctive Muslim ritual practices are the five so-called '**Pillars of Islam**':

Pillars of Islam Five major ritual practices that characterize the religious observances of a Muslim: (1) *shahada* (profession of faith), (2) *salat* (ritual prayer), (3) *zakat* (almsgiving), (4) *sawm* (fasting), and (5) *hajj* (greater pilgrimage).

1. *Shahada* (profession of faith): Muslims use a two-part declaration of faith, 'There is no god except God, and Muhammad is the Messenger of God', in various ritual practices. For example, the *shahada* is recited when converting to Islam.
2. ***Salat*** (ritual prayer): Most Muslims perform ritual prayers five times per day, at dawn, noon, mid-afternoon, dusk, and later in the evening. Prayer is preceded by ritual ablutions and involves changes in bodily posture, from standing, to kneeling, to prostration, accompanied by ritual recitations and invocations. A mosque (***masjid***, in Arabic) is a place specially designated for prayer, but the *salat* can be performed

anywhere, though it should be conducted facing Mecca if possible; in mosques, a niche called a *mihrab* indicates to worshippers the direction in which they should face. Travellers may perform an abbreviated prayer, even doing so while in their seats if necessary. Muslims are encouraged to go to the mosque on Friday for the noon prayer, when the communal practice of prayer is supplemented with a *khutba* (sermon).

Salat Ritual prayer. A 'pillar of Islam'. Most Muslims perform the *salat* five times a day, at dawn, noon, mid-afternoon, dusk, and later in the evening.

Masjid Arabic: 'place of prostration'. A mosque.

3 *Zakat* (almsgiving): Muslims are required to donate a portion of their wealth to good causes each year. Good causes include supporting the poor and travellers or ransoming prisoners.

4 *Sawm* (fasting): Muslims fast from dawn until sunset during the Muslim month of Ramadan; this includes abstinence from food, drink, smoking, and sexual activity. The fast is observed by all except children, the old, and others who are excused for health reasons (including pregnant women and the sick). Travellers may postpone their fast. The Ramadan fast commemorates the first revelation of the *Qur'an* and ends with the 'Id al-Fitr (feast of the breaking of the fast) on the first day of the Muslim month of Shawwal.

5 ***Hajj*** (greater pilgrimage): At least once during their life, if possible, every Muslim should perform the *hajj*, the greater pilgrimage to Mecca. This takes place in the Muslim month of Dhu'l-Hijja and involves a number of ritual activities, including circumambulating the Ka'ba and throwing stones at pillars representing Satan. The *hajj* ends with the 'Id al-Adha (feast of sacrifice), which is celebrated across the Muslim world and commemorates Abraham's near-sacrifice of his son Ishmael (as opposed to Isaac in the Judaeo-Christian version). An important part of the celebrations is the slaughter of animals, with the meat being eaten and distributed to the poor.

Hajj Arabic: 'greater pilgrimage to Mecca'. A 'pillar of Islam', every Muslim is expected to undertake the *hajj* at least once during their lifetime, if they are able.

As the Muslim world expanded, it came to encompass large populations who followed religions that were different from Islam. These included followers of a variety of Christian sects, including Greek Orthodox, Catholics, Nestorians,

and a range of Monophysite traditions; Rabbinic and Karaite Jews; followers of Persian Zoroastrian traditions; and eventually Hindus and Buddhists. From the earliest days of Islam, it was recognized that the Muslims could not realistically expect all these people to convert to their faith, and the validity of some other religions is actually explicitly noted in the *Qur'an*. However, it was also recognized that there would be conflict with members of these other faiths; indeed, Muhammad himself had to deal with opposition from three of the Jewish tribes inhabiting Medina. The *Qur'an* again provided some guidance; for example, *Qur'an* 9: 29 states, 'Fight those who believe not in Allah nor in the Last Day, nor hold that forbidden which hath been forbidden by Allah and his Messenger, nor acknowledge the Religion of Truth, from among the People of the Book, until they pay the ***jizya*** with willing submission, and feel themselves subdued' [*Doc. 1.i.g*]. On the basis of passages like this, the Muslim leadership gradually developed a policy stating that Christians and Jews could remain in the Muslim community and enjoy rights of protection by the Muslim rulers, in exchange for acknowledging Muslim authority, paying a poll tax, and accepting certain social restrictions such as wearing distinctive dress, not bearing arms or riding horses, and not building new places of worship. Despite the restrictions involved, for some, this actually made Muslim rule a more attractive prospect than that of current, more oppressive overlords and thus likely led them not to resist the Muslim takeover of their homelands; perhaps the most prominent examples are the various denominations of Monophysite Christians in the Levant, who suffered periodic persecutions under their Greek Orthodox Byzantine rulers. As the Muslim conquests proceeded, this policy of tolerance was also extended to followers of other faiths who could not practically be expected to convert *en masse* to Islam. Non-Muslims under Muslim rule became known as *ahl al-dhimma* (the People of the Pact) or *dhimmis*. The enforcement of these social restrictions on *dhimmis* was uneven, and treatment of them was highly variable; at times, non-Muslims rose to high ranks within Muslim courts or were even involved in the defence of cities against other Muslims or non-Muslims; at other times, they suffered persecution or came under intense pressure to convert or emigrate.

Jizya Poll tax paid by non-Muslims living in Muslim territory.

Jihad

An often-misunderstood concept in Islam is *jihad*, striving on behalf of the faith. The term is frequently translated as 'holy war', a translation that only conveys one aspect of the teaching. We will discuss the full development of the

concept of *jihad* in Chapter 6, but suffice it to say that by the time of the crusades, it had become accepted among Muslims that while the term *jihad*, as described in the *Qur'an* and *hadith*, could in many cases be understood as referring to an armed struggle (what might properly be termed 'military *jihad*', as noted subsequently), such a struggle should only be undertaken within firm restrictions (see, for example, the *Qur'an's* statements in *Doc. 1.i*). Meanwhile, during the first decades of the crusading period, **Sufis** (Muslim mystics) were formalizing the doctrine that military action was inferior in spiritual value to other forms of *jihad*, including speaking or writing in defence of the faith and, most prominently, the struggle waged against one's own inner sinfulness.

Sufi A Muslim mystic. Sufis seek to gain a direct, higher-state experience of God through a variety of means, including asceticism and group rituals involving prayer, chanting, music, or dance.

As we will see, when the crusaders arrived in the Levant, many people took up arms against them. Most of these were Muslims, but this does not mean that they all fought against the Frankish invaders out of a desire to wage the military *jihad* against them. While many undoubtedly saw their struggle against the crusaders in religious terms, many also fought simply to preserve their lives and homes. In the meantime, others fought for more explicit material gain, because they were paid to do so or saw an opportunity to gain plunder in battle. In *Popular Muslim Reactions to the Franks in the Levant*, Alex Mallett has explored the multifarious motivations that the people of the Levant, especially 'non-elites' with limited influence in the running of their communities, had for resisting the crusader advance. In the process, he has also highlighted a need for modern scholars to be more careful in their use of the terms '*jihad*' and 'counter-crusade', terms that have up until now been used interchangeably in a number of works. Mallett defines '*jihad*' (or rather, 'jihad against the Franks') as the fight against the crusaders undertaken for pious, non-materialistic reasons, even though it might bring the material rewards assigned by Islamic law to the *mujahid* (fighter in the *jihad*), while 'counter-crusade' is defined as any act of resistance to the crusaders, regardless of motivation. As such, *jihad* activity can be considered counter-crusade, but not all counter-crusading activity is *jihad* (Mallett, 2014: 60, 144–45). Here we have sought to follow Mallett's definitions, with one qualification: military activity undertaken on behalf of the faith has been referred to specifically as 'military *jihad*', while the term '*jihad*' without the modifier has been used to refer to the wider struggle for the faith, as it would have been understood by the people of the time (see what follows, especially Chapter 6).

Sunnis and Shiʿites

Although most Muslims accepted the authority of the Umayyad caliphs after the death of ʿAli ibn Abi Talib in 661, many of his supporters continued to advocate for the right of the family of the Prophet, as represented by the line of ʿAli, to hold the caliphate, and they and their successors proved to be an ongoing source of opposition to the caliphs in the following centuries. They became known as *shiʿat ʿAli* (the party of ʿAli), or Shiʿites. Over time, the majority of Muslims became known as Sunnis, a word deriving from the Sunna, a term used to refer to the sayings and actions of the Prophet and his Companions (as depicted in the *hadith*) that act as a guide to Muslim conduct. As the centuries passed, various different Shiʿite movements developed, each with its own distinctive theology and practices. Three were particularly prominent in the Levant on the eve of the First Crusade:

1 The *ithna ʿasharis* (Twelvers, Imamis): The **Twelver Shiʿites** are so called because they acknowledge a dynasty of 12 *imams* (divinely inspired leaders; the word is also used among Muslims in general to mean a prayer-leader), of whom ʿAli was the first. Even though these *imams* did not hold political leadership in the Muslim world, they were still seen by their supporters as being the rightful leaders of the Muslim community. According to Twelver belief, in the 10th century, the last of these *imams* went into 'greater concealment', from which he will return as the *mahdi* ('the rightly guided', a Messianic figure) at the end of time to restore peace and justice. On the eve of the crusades, Twelver Shiʿism was popular among both the Bedouin of the Levant and important members of the community in Aleppo.

Twelver Shiʿism Forming the majority of the Shiʿites in the world today, Twelver Shiʿites maintain that history has witnessed a line of Twelve *imams*, the last of whom has entered 'greater concealment' and will return as the *mahdi* at the end of time.

2 The **Fatimids**: In the 8th century, a major split occurred within Shiʿism as a result of the death of the *imam* Jaʿfar al-Sadiq (d. 765). Jaʿfar's son Ismaʿil, whom Jaʿfar had designated as his successor, had predeceased him, so the Shiʿites were unsure who their next *imam* should be. The group who would become the Twelvers claimed that the rightful *imam* after Jaʿfar was Ismaʿil's brother Musa al-Kazim (d. 799), but not all agreed. Some maintained that Ismaʿil's son, Muhammad, was the rightful *imam* after Jaʿfar; even though Muhammad ibn Ismaʿil had also appeared to die, he had in fact been hidden by God and would eventually return as the *mahdi*. For these Shiʿites, who became known as Ismaʿilis, Muhammad ibn Ismaʿil was

the seventh *imam*, and so they were also referred to pejoratively by their opponents as 'Seveners'. The Ismaʿilis gradually transformed into a hierarchical and highly secretive movement, with teachings that emphasized inner, hidden truths found in Islamic texts that were only taught to those who had attained an appropriate rank. They were very active as missionaries and attracted many converts.

Fatimids Ismaʿili Shiʿite dynasty of caliphs. The Fatimids first established themselves in North Africa in 910, then in Egypt in 969, from the second of which they reigned until the abolition of their caliphate by Saladin in 1171.

In 910, an Ismaʿili leader called 'Abd Allah took control of Qayrawan, in modern-day Tunisia. ('Abd Allah means 'servant of God' in Arabic; his detractors referred to him pejoratively as "Ubayd Allah', 'little servant of God', and this rendering of his name still appears in modern works on the period [Brett, 2017: 38].) 'Abd Allah was regarded by his supporters as the rightful, living Ismaʿili *imam* and became established as the first caliph of a new, rival caliphate, reigning with the significant title of al-Mahdi (r. 910–34). The dynasty that he founded, who continued to simultaneously claim the titles of *imam* and caliph, became known as the Fatimids, after Fatima, the daughter of the Prophet and wife of 'Ali ibn Abi Talib. The Fatimids quickly established a strong presence in North Africa, then, in 969, they took control of Egypt. They built a new city, Cairo, which became the seat of the Fatimid caliphs in 973, and then concentrated their efforts on expanding their influence in the Levant and Arabia. In the meantime, they allowed North Africa to slip from their control into the hands of the family who had formerly governed it on their behalf.

Possibly the best known of the Fatimid caliphs was al-Hakim bi-Amr Allah (r. 996–1021), who is depicted by non-Fatimid sources as a dangerous eccentric. Al-Hakim ordered the destruction of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre in 1009, an act that may have been provoked by rumours that were spreading at the time that a Christian messiah would appear at Jerusalem in 1010 (Brett, 2017: 138); however, although the destruction caused resentment among some western Europeans, this did not transform into a military response at the time [*Doc. 2*].

3 The **Nizaris**: In 1090, an Ismaʿili missionary of Persian origin named Hasan-i Sabbah took control of the fortress of Alamut, to the south of the Caspian Sea. From there, he and his supporters began a campaign of political assassination, aimed in the first instance at the Seljuks. Hasan and his followers became known by their critics as the *hashishiyya* ('hashish-users', or 'low-life'). Starting in the crusading period, this term, in its meaning of 'hashish-users', led to the circulation in both the Muslim world

and Europe of exotic tales of their use of this substance in training or operations, as well as forming the origin of the term 'Assassins' used by modern historians to refer to the movement and in more general parlance to refer to killers (Daftary, 1994: 89–94). Soon after, at the time of the death of the Fatimid caliph al-Mustansir (r. 1036–94), the heir apparent to al-Mustansir's throne was the caliph's son Nizar. However, the caliph's vizier (deputy of the ruler), al-Afdal Shahanshah, instead installed Nizar's younger and easier-to-manipulate brother, al-Musta'li (r. 1094–101). Nizar was killed in the conflict that followed, but Hasan-i Sabbah and his followers maintained that Nizar's son had been brought to Alamut. Thus, they now claimed to have the rightful caliph and *imam* in their midst. Hasan and his successors ruled as the deputies of the *imam*, who was never seen. In the meantime, they extended their territory in Persia and sought to establish centres in the Levant. The Nizari Assassins would prove to be a force with which the various other political factions in the latter region would have to come to terms as the period of the crusades progressed.

Nizaris Isma'ili Shi'ite movement that split from the Fatimids in 1094. In the 12th and 13th centuries, the Nizaris engaged in a programme of political assassination, as a result of which they are also sometimes referred to as the Assassins.

The Levantine economy and society

The huge majority of the population of the Muslim world, as throughout so much of the world at the time, were rural peasants, settled for the most part in villages and growing crops with which to support themselves and pay their taxes. In addition to potential concerns about unjust overlords, such villagers also had mixed relations with the nomadic and semi-nomadic peoples of the region (primarily Bedouin Arabs), with whom they traded but also sometimes fought over resources and goods. During the instability that prevailed in much of the Muslim world in the 11th century, with its accompanying breakdown of the ability of rulers to provide security, conflict between villagers and nomads could at times have serious repercussions, with villagers abandoning lands that had become untenable. In terms of religion, some villages had mixed populations, while others consisted largely of followers of one faith; in the latter case, the villagers were often allowed to use their own religious law, so that Christian villagers, for example, would use law codes and practices based on the Christian Bible and church teachings to run their own affairs (Egger, 2004: 246–48).

Agricultural goods were traded to cities, of which the Muslim world had far

more than Europe at the time. Muslim cities took many forms, reflecting local climates, topography, access to resources and building materials, and historical developments. However, we can make some general comments about common features. Cities often contained many mosques, ranging from small, local mosques to large congregational mosques; the Arabic word used for the latter was (and still is) ***jami'*** , often translated as 'Friday mosque', since it was at these mosques that Muslims would gather on Friday to pray together and hear a *khutba*. Such mosques also acted as centres of teaching and, if necessary, of communal discussions and decision-making. In addition to mosques, cities were also home to many markets, especially as various trades tended to be located in their own quarters. Thus, there might be a butchers' quarter, a bakers' quarter, a goldsmiths' quarter, and so on; in particular, especially noisy or potentially unhygienic trades (such as blacksmiths or butchers) were likely to have quarters on the edge of town, away from the majority of the population. The Muslims also adopted the Roman habit of using bath-houses, and since the *salat* requires ritual washing beforehand, these were often located near major mosques; to preserve appropriate modesty and relations between the sexes, men and women used these bath-houses on different days, with a sign outside indicating which day it was (Abu-Lughod, 1987: 168). In cities, one would also find hospitals, *madrasas* (religious colleges), fountains, residences for Sufis (they tended in particular to live by the tombs of important spiritual leaders on the edges of town), trade hostelries, and of course private houses. The streets were frequently a labyrinthine warren that discouraged visitors from straying off the main thoroughfares and thus helped to preserve the privacy of the local residents.

Jami' Arabic: 'collector'. A mosque, specifically understood to refer to a major (Friday) mosque.

In addition to the trade-based quarters referred to previously, cities also frequently had quarters based on tribal affiliations, ethnicity, or religion. These were sometimes walled and gated. In each, the local inhabitants, usually headed by a leading local family, were responsible for general maintenance, sanitation, and local justice and security. City-wide security was usually provided by the ruler's troops or a city militia; however, by the 11th century, in some cases when rulers were ineffective, local organizations of youths, known as *futuwwa* orders, were forming and taking on the task of ensuring the security of their particular quarters' residents. This practice would spread more widely in the 12th century. The effectiveness of these orders varied. Some were linked to Sufi groups and maintained high standards of conduct and morality; others were basically undisciplined gangs (Egger, 2004: 241–46).

The composition of Levantine Muslim society, like that of the Muslim world

as a whole, was very diverse. Rulers were served by military officers referred to as emirs, normally Muslim, who provided military support in the form of personal service and troops in return for tax incomes from lands (the ***iqta'*** system; see subsequently); unlike European knights, emirs were unlikely to live on the lands from which their incomes came. Rulers who controlled large territories might also appoint governors to oversee portions of their holdings. The political leaders were also served by viziers, who controlled the civil administration of territories. A vizier would be at the head of a complex bureaucracy staffed by trained officials, who might be Muslim, Christian, or Jewish, who worked to ensure that the civil administration of the state ran smoothly. Then there were the *'ulama'* (ulema), Muslim religious scholars who provided guidance for the faithful in their religious lives, including disseminating the teachings of the faith, making legal rulings and ensuring that they were carried out, and advising the ruler on appropriate conduct. The religious activities of the Muslims of the Levant were also enhanced by the activities of Sufis, who conducted group rituals, sometimes of an ecstatic nature, intended to foster a more emotional, personal experience of God, and who were generally welcoming to laypersons who wished to take part in such rituals on an occasional basis. In addition, Levantine cities were also home to manufacturers and were visited by merchants and pilgrims; the religious affiliations of these individuals were variable, though most were monotheistic.

Iqta' Arabic: 'assignment'. A grant to an emir of the right to collect taxes from a particular area of land, given in return for a promise of military service.

As we review Levantine society, we should also highlight groups that were to some extent marginalized. By far the most numerous of these were women; in urban environments, women were generally expected to keep to the domestic sphere, focusing their attention on raising children and maintaining the household. As part of this, Muslim women in particular were expected to fulfil their prayer obligations at home rather than joining the men in the mosque; one result of this was that they became active in non-traditional worship practices, especially participating in the less 'formal' rituals of Sufism. In rural environments, where women were involved in raising animals and crops, and thus more essential to the economic health of the household, they had more influence, though society still remained largely patriarchal. Of course, the relative degrees of freedom and influence enjoyed by women in both the urban and rural environments varied according to wealth, social status, and religious affiliation, and it would be inaccurate to say that women never rose to prominence in Levantine society in the Middle Ages (see, for example, Shajar al-Durr in Chapter 9); however, such figures tended to be the exception rather than the rule.

Sufficiently wealthy Muslims also kept slaves, primarily as domestic servants, though as we have seen, rulers also used large contingents of slave-soldiers in their armies. Islamic law accords a number of rights and protections to slaves, including prohibitions on mistreatment and the imposition of excessive work, and the rule that those who are convicted of crimes suffer only half the penalties imposed on free persons and thus are, with some exceptions, protected from the death penalty (since it is impossible to 'half-kill' someone); while of course any practice of slavery is inhumane from a modern point of view, by the standards of the time, Muslim treatment of slaves was actually unusually humane. Slaves were always non-Muslims when they were first bought, usually as prisoners of war or imports from outside the Muslim world, as enslaving Muslims is forbidden by Islamic law. Slaves might convert to Islam, though this did not automatically guarantee freedom. That said, emancipating slaves was recommended as an act of piety, and a number of owners of former slaves then adopted the slaves in question or at least retained their services as free servants in their former masters' households. Female concubines, especially those who bore a son for their masters, were sometimes freed by and then married to their former masters.

In addition to the previous, many people in Muslim society were *dhimmis*, whom we have described earlier. Indeed, this reminds us that in our survey of the Muslim Levant, it is also important to remember that the region was one in which populations were ruled by people who were in the minority, and often ethnically or religiously different from them. In Egypt, the Fatimids, who were **Ismaʿili Shiʿites**, ruled over a population that was mostly Sunni Muslim, Coptic Monophysite or Greek Orthodox Christian, or Jewish. The Fatimid armies, in the meantime, consisted of a mix of Nubians, Berbers, Turks, and Armenians, all of whom had been imported at one point or another and thus were foreigners in the eyes of the Egyptian population. The Sunni Muslim, Turkic Seljuks, meanwhile, based their power above all on Turkic *mamluk* and Turkmen troops, using them to maintain power over a population that in the Levant consisted largely of Sunni and Shiʿite Muslims; Maronite, Nestorian, and Monophysite Syrian Orthodox (Jacobite) Christians; and Jews, with a population consisting of a wide range of ethnicities including Turks, Kurds, and Arabs. In taxing their territory, the Seljuks made use of a system inherited from the Buyids, in which a Muslim emir would be assigned an *iqtaʿ*, the right to collect taxes from a particular area of land in return for military service from himself and his retinue. The result of this was that the populations of areas assigned as *iqtaʿs* would have mixed feelings towards their overlords, who would on the one hand tax them heavily but on the other provide them with security. Given the fact that in both Seljuk and Fatimid territory, the populations often had religious or ethnic affiliations that differed from those of

their rulers, concerns about security and levels of taxation probably had the most impact on the loyalties that the common people would feel towards them. This meant that the amount of support that any given ruler could expect from the majority population of the territory that he controlled was limited.

Isma'ili Shi'ism Isma'ili Shi'ites support Muhammad ibn Isma'il's claim to be the rightful *imam* of the Muslim world. At the time of the crusades, the Isma'ilis were a hierarchical, secretive movement.

Given the atmosphere of instability in the Levant on the eve of the crusades, coming just as the Muslim calendar was approaching the year 500 (1106–7), it is not surprising that we see some hints of apocalyptic sentiment among the Muslims of the time. Some saw in astral phenomena indications of impending misfortune; some felt that the Day of Judgement was approaching; and others awaited the appearance of a figure who would renew the faith (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 36–37). It was into this unstable social, religious, and political environment that the crusaders would make a startling intrusion.

The Franks through Muslim eyes before 1096

A survey of the Muslim sources for the period before the crusades suggests that the Muslims of the Levant knew very little about the Franks. Mentions of them in the Muslim sources are sporadic, and the most helpful passages tend to come from the Muslim tradition of geographical writing. As indicated previously, before the crusades, the Muslim writers use the term *ifranj* to refer principally to the inhabitants of the region roughly corresponding to the Frankish empire of Charlemagne, and the Frankish capital is variously identified as Rome or Paris. The Franks themselves are depicted as warlike and violent and are sometimes described as a particularly unified people, while at other times, they are represented as being divided and feuding with one another. At the same time, the Franks have a somewhat blurry relationship with the Byzantines, who are sometimes identified as their neighbours and at other times seen as their overlords, with Frankish lands being part of the Byzantine Empire. Most sources agree that both the Franks and the Byzantines have a shared religion, Christianity (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 267–74; Christie, 1999: 10–27).

This image of ignorance is open to question, however. It is apparent from the Muslim sources that Frankish merchants and pilgrims visited Muslim lands, and we also know that Franks served in the Byzantine armies as mercenaries. We also have evidence of embassies exchanged between Frankish and Muslim rulers. Perhaps most telling are the two different accounts of the Franks given by the traveller and geographer al-Mas'udi (d. 956). In one of his works, *Muruj*

al-Dhahab wa-Ma'adin al-Jawhar (Meadows of Gold and Mines of Gemstone), of which we have a version that he completed in 947, the author gives us an account of the Franks that is unusually well informed, even to the point of providing a list of the Frankish kings [*Doc. 3.i*]. However, in another of his works, *Kitab al-Tanbih wa-l-Ishraf* (The Book of Admonition and Overseeing), of which the final version dates from 956, he presents an account that gives a radically different depiction of the Franks, presenting a rather fanciful image of them as sluggish, blue-skinned brutes [*Doc. 3.ii*]. Given that the *Kitab al-Tanbih* was written after the *Muruj*, it would be nonsensical to suggest that al-Mas'udi's knowledge of the Franks got worse. Instead, it would seem that al-Mas'udi wished to convey a sense of Muslim superiority over the uncivilized, non-Muslim barbarians, and to do this, he exploited stereotypes of bestial nature and religious inferiority through his presentation of the Franks (Christie, 2016: 312–14). Al-Mas'udi's position is in some ways a salutary reminder for us of the wider tendency of medieval sources to privilege moral messages over factual accuracy, as well as the fact that most of the Muslim writers were first and foremost religiously trained scholars, which naturally affected the emphasis of their literary output. Thus, before the crusades, the Franks often only appear in Muslim sources when including them serves the agendas of the writers, and such appearances are sparse enough to suggest a level of ignorance that may actually be overestimated.

The Levant in the 11th century

In the wake of the aforementioned Seljuk takeover of Baghdad, as the Seljuks and their allies spread their influence further west, the area known to Muslim writers as ***Bilad al-Sham*** (or simply *al-Sham*, roughly corresponding to modern Syria, Lebanon, Jordan, Israel, the Palestinian autonomous areas, and the south-east edge of Turkey) became contested between the Seljuks and the Fatimids. It is important to note that this conflict had religious as well as political dimensions. The Seljuks, as Sunnis, sought to present themselves as the defenders and promoters of the true faith against dangerous heretics who had taken control of a disturbingly large amount of territory and posed a real threat to the 'Abbasid caliphate; indeed, a pro-Fatimid general had briefly taken control of Baghdad, imprisoning the 'Abbasid caliph, in 1057–58. The Fatimids, in the meantime, saw *themselves* as the representatives of the true line of caliphs and saw the Seljuks as supporting a heretical pretender whose ancestors had usurped power in the 8th century. Thus the Levant was the site of a struggle between two powers, each of which regarded the other as legitimate targets of holy war fought on the behalf of Islam.

Bilad al-Sham Arabic: 'the country of Syria'. Approximately, modern Syria, Lebanon, Jordan, Israel, the Palestinian autonomous areas, and the south-east edge of Turkey. Also simply referred to as *al-Sham*.

It is worth pausing to consider conflicts, this time between Muslims and Christians, that were taking place elsewhere in the 11th century, since they provided a context for the First Crusade, at least in the eyes of some of the Muslims who wrote about it. The most prominent of these were the wars that were being waged in the Iberian Peninsula and in Sicily. As we have seen, the Muslims took control of most of Iberia in the 8th century. This region was subsequently ruled by a governor as a province of the wider caliphate, but in the wake of the ʿAbbasid ouster of the Umayyads in 750, a member of the Umayyad family who had escaped the ʿAbbasids was able to take control of the region and establish an effectively independent state there. In 929, one of his successors declared himself caliph, becoming a rival to both the Fatimid and the ʿAbbasid caliphs. However, internal conflicts led to civil war at the start of the 11th century, which caused the final collapse of the caliphate in 1031. Muslim Iberia fragmented into a number of states with rulers known as ***muluk al-tawa'if*** ('kings of parts', sometimes referred to by modern historians using the slightly misleading 'party kings'), who spent their time intriguing against and fighting with each other, with some of them also paying tribute to the Christian rulers to the north. Despite these payments, Christian attacks intensified significantly in the 11th century, and a signal moment came in 1085, when Toledo, the old Visigothic capital, fell to the forces of Alfonso VI of León-Castile (r. 1065–1109). The rulers of Muslim Iberia appealed for help to Yusuf ibn Tashfin (r. 1061–1106), the leader of a Berber Muslim religious movement known as ***al-murabitun*** (the Almoravids, 'those who are stationed at a fortress to fight for the faith'), which insisted on rigorous legal and religious discipline. Ibn Tashfin saw the rulers of Iberia as decadent and not sufficiently pious but also recognized the need to defend Muslim territory. In 1086, he crossed the Straits of Gibraltar, defeated the Christians in battle, and then decided to add Muslim Iberia to the Almoravid state. By his death in 1106, he had conquered most of the party kingdoms, and his son completed the conquest in 1110 (Bennison, 2016: 24–56; Cobb, 2014: 60–70; Egger, 2004: 166–69; Kennedy, 1996: 130–74).

Muluk al-tawa'if Arabic: 'kings of parts' or 'party kings'. Rulers of petty states in Muslim Iberia in the 11th century.

Al-Murabitun Arabic: 'those who are stationed at a fortress to fight for the faith', 'Almoravids'. A Berber religious movement insisting on rigorous religious and legal discipline.

Meanwhile, further east, the 11th century also saw the Muslims lose Sicily. The island had been gradually conquered from the Byzantines by Muslim forces in the 9th and 10th centuries. In the meantime, it had passed under the control of the Fatimids, then a dynasty appointed by them as governors; however, by the 11th century, any semblance of Fatimid authority had collapsed, and the island was in the hands of a number of local governors, who feuded with one another in a way similar to the *muluk al-tawa'if*. This disunity proved to be helpful to Norman forces led by the adventurer Robert Guiscard (d. 1085) when in 1061, acting with the support of Pope Nicholas II (p. 1059–61), they launched their conquest of Sicily. The Muslims of Sicily were no pushover, however, and also received help from the governors of the region corresponding to modern-day Tunisia, and so it took the Normans almost 30 years to complete their takeover of the island. Many of the Muslims taken prisoner during the Norman campaign were deported to Calabria, which had been taken by the Normans in the two decades preceding the first attack on Sicily, though sizeable populations of both Muslims and Jews still continued to live on the island. In the year 1090, the Normans also took Malta (Cobb, 2014: 36–60; Metcalfe, 2009: 88–111). Thus, Muslim authors in the 12th century could look back and see Christian conquests in Iberia and the Mediterranean as precursors to the expeditions that attacked the Levant at the end of the 11th century.

Our Muslim writers could also see the regional instability in the Middle East resulting from the Seljuk-Fatimid conflict becoming exacerbated when a number of strong leaders died at the end of the 11th century. In 1092, the famous Seljuk vizier Nizam al-Mulk was killed by the Nizari Assassins as their first high-profile 'hit'. His death was followed about a month later by that of Malik-Shah (r. 1073–92), the son and successor of the Great Seljuk sultan Alp-Arslan; Malik-Shah's death marked the end of Seljuk unity, and as the various Seljuk claimants to the sultan's throne fought with each other, the Great Seljuk state fragmented. In the process, the major cities of *Bilad al-Sham* passed into the hands of either the governors who had been appointed to them, who set up their own dynasties there, or young Seljuk princes whose affairs were overseen by military regents, known as *atabegs*, some of whom subsequently usurped the thrones of their charges. At the time, the Seljuk state of *Rum* was also not an entirely secure realm. Still in its early stages of establishment, its leaders actually claimed to be the rightful Great Seljuk Sultans, thus placing them at odds with the latter; indeed, it was likely only during the reign of Masʿud (r. 1116–56) that the state of *Rum*'s rulers felt secure enough in their power and independence to use the title of 'sultan'. The Seljuks of *Rum* shared Asia Minor with a number of other Turkic dynasties, of which the most prominent were the Danishmendids, who had established themselves in the region in the wake

of Manzikert and with whom the Seljuks of *Rum* had mixed, and at times difficult, relations (Mecit, 2014: 28–46).

The power vacuum also extended to Egypt. In the mid-11th century, factional fighting within the Fatimid army had caused devastation in Cairo and the countryside. Some degree of order was restored in 1074, when the Fatimid caliph al-Mustansir called in the governor of Palestine, Badr al-Jamali, to be his new vizier, but in the process of taking firm control, Badr al-Jamali reduced the caliph to an effective figurehead like his ʻAbbasid rival. Both Badr al-Jamali and al-Mustansir died in 1094, and one of the first actions of Badr al-Jamali's son and successor, al-Afdal Shahanshah, was to set aside the heir apparent, Nizar, in favour of the latter's younger brother al-Mustaʻli, as described previously. This schism within the Fatimid caliphate only further damaged the power of the state. The instability in Egypt was also exacerbated by repeated outbreaks of plague in the country at the turn of the 12th century (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 37–38).

Before moving on, we should draw attention to one modern academic work that has recently added a new aspect to discussions of the instability in the Levant at this time. In *The Collapse of the Eastern Mediterranean*, Ronnie Ellenblum has argued that the political, economic, and cultural crises that afflicted the region in the 11th century had as their root cause a series of climatic changes, including droughts in Egypt and cold periods in Central Asia, Persia, the Jazira, and Armenia; these then caused what he calls 'domino effects', including economic decline, the collapse of political authority in some regions, and inter-religious tensions (Ellenblum, 2012: passim). Ellenblum's thesis has proven to be provocative and has generated a significant amount of both supportive and opposing scholarly responses (see, for example, Humphries, 2016; Squatriti, 2013). However, in the process, he has effectively drawn attention to a factor in historical developments that is often neglected in analyses of the period and is now likely to have a greater influence on future scholarly discussions.

Further reading

Not surprisingly, given that we have covered a historical period of almost 500 years, the scholarly literature for the topics that we have addressed in this chapter is plentiful and wide ranging. A clear and accessible overview of the Muslim faith in both its historical and modern forms is Andrew Rippin's *Muslims: Their Religious Beliefs and Practices* (2011). On Shiʻism, the classic overview is Heinz Halm's *Shiism* (1992), but see also Moojan Momen's *An Introduction to Shiʻi Islam: The History and Doctrines of Twelver Shiʻism* (1985) and two works by Farhad Daftary: *The Assassin Legends: Myths of the*

Isma'ilis (1994) and *The Isma'ilis: Their History and Doctrines* (2007). On the Fatimids in particular, see Michael Brett, *The Fatimid Empire* (2017); this book includes a succinct discussion of the reign of and controversy surrounding al-Hakim (see pp. 125–56). For a general history of Muslim religion, society, and culture, readers may wish to consult Vernon O. Egger's *A History of the Muslim World to 1405* (2004). For a more detailed politically focused account, see Hugh Kennedy's *The Prophet and the Age of the Caliphates: The Islamic Near East from the Sixth to the Eleventh Century* (2004). For more on the Middle East immediately before the crusades, see, in addition to Carole Hillenbrand's *The Crusades: Islamic Perspectives*, Paul M. Cobb's *The Race for Paradise*. On the *Bilad al-Sham* in particular, see Taef Kamal al-Azhari, *The Saljuqs of Syria during the Crusades, 463–549 A.H./1070–1154 A.D.* (1997). On the Seljuks of *Rum*, see Sara Nur Yildiz, *The Seljuk Empire of Anatolia* (2019), and Songül Mecit, *The Rum Seljuqs* (2014). On the Great Seljuk Sultanate, see A.C.S. Peacock, *The Great Seljuk Empire* (2015), and David Morgan, *Medieval Persia, 1040–1797* (1988). On Muslim knowledge about the Franks before the crusades, see Nizar F. Hermes, *The [European] Other in Medieval Arabic Literature and Culture* (2012); Cobb, *The Race for Paradise*; Daniel König, *Arabic-Islamic Views of the Latin West: Tracing the Emergence of Medieval Europe* (2015); and Niall Christie, 'An Illusion of Ignorance? The Muslims of the Middle East and the Franks before the Crusades' (2016). Readers of French may also be interested in Jean-Charles Ducène, *L'Europe et les Géographes Arabes du Moyen Âge* (2018).

3 The First Crusade and the Muslim response, 1095–1146

In this chapter, we will examine Muslim reactions to the arrival of the First Crusade and the subsequent establishment of the four Latin states in the Levant. In the process, we will consider the tension between Muslim religious ideology and *realpolitik* that hindered the swift development of a widespread Muslim counter-crusade. We will then discuss the role that ʻImad al-Din Zangi (r. 1127–46), regarded by both contemporaries and some later scholars as the first great leader in the military *jihad* against the Franks, played in opposing their encroachment on Muslim territory; in the process, we will assess to what extent these writers' laudatory portrayals of him may be seen as being accurate.

Chronological overview

According to the Aleppine chronicler al-ʻAzimi (d. after 1161), the first inkling

that the Muslims of the Levant had of the arrival of the First Crusade was when the Byzantine emperor Alexios Komnenos (r. 1081–1118) wrote to the Muslims in 1096 to inform them of the impending arrival of the Franks (al-ʿAzimi, 1984: 358). Whatever the truth of this, the first major encounters that took place between Muslims and crusaders occurred when the Seljuk state of *Rum* was repeatedly raided by the forces of the first wave of the crusade (sometimes called the People's Crusade or Peasants' Crusade) in the autumn of 1096. The Seljuks of *Rum* dispatched them easily and without mercy, wiping out most of them in less than a month.

The Seljuk ruler of *Rum*, Kilij-Arslan I (r. 1092–1107), may have considered this first wave of crusaders simply a continuation of previous Byzantine raids into his territory. Franks had, after all, served in the Byzantine armies before. Thus, he may have underestimated the magnitude of the threat when the major armies of the First Crusade began to gather at Constantinople in late 1096 and early 1097. In any case, he was unable to defeat this second wave of crusaders in battle when they advanced on his capital of Nicaea, and the city fell to them in June 1097; as a result, subsequently the Seljuk rulers of *Rum* would make their capital at Konya. Meanwhile, two more Seljuk defeats followed, at Dorylaeum (Eskişehir) and Heraclea (Ereğli); then the crusaders fought their way to Antioch, besieging it from October 1097. The city fell to the crusaders in June 1098, and they subsequently beat off an army led by Kerbogha, the *atabeg* of Mosul (r. 1095–1102). In the meantime, a contingent of crusaders under Baldwin of Boulogne had already taken control of the Armenian city of Edessa (Urfa, March 1098), inaugurating the first Latin Christian state in the Levant. Antioch, now the second of the Latin states, came under the control of Bohemond of Taranto (r. 1098–1111). In December 1098, the crusaders took Maʿarrat al-Nuʿman, and the Muslim sources emphasize the fact that the Franks slaughtered many of its people. Some European sources claim that hunger led the crusaders to engage in cannibalism at Maʿarrat al-Nuʿman. It is striking that reports of this do not appear in the Muslim sources (see, for example, Ibn al-Athir, 2006: 17–18), which one might have expected, since it would be an effective way to demonize the Franks; this may suggest that either these accounts were fabricated by their authors to emphasize the desperate situation of the crusaders, or the Muslim sources were simply not aware of such incidents. Whatever the truth of this, the psychological effect of the conquest of Maʿarrat al-Nuʿman was very great nonetheless; it is notable that subsequently a number of Muslim rulers came to terms with the crusaders as they continued their march south towards Jerusalem, to the point of even providing them with supplies and guides to take them through their territory (Cobb, 2014: 97–99).

By the time the crusaders reached it in June 1099, Jerusalem was in Fatimid

hands, having been taken by them from its Seljuk-appointed Turkmen ruler the previous year. Fatimid tenure of the city was brief; it fell on July 15, after a crusader siege lasting little more than a month. Both the European and the Muslim sources emphasize the magnitude of the massacre of Muslims and Jews alike that took place in the holy city after the crusaders broke through the walls (for two Muslim accounts, see *Doc. 4*); how far we should take their accounts at face value continues to be a matter of debate among modern scholars. In any case, the Fatimids sent an army to rescue the city, but it was defeated at Ascalon in August 1099. Jerusalem soon became the capital of a Frankish kingdom, and over the years that followed, the crusaders continued to expand their holdings in the Levant, including setting up their fourth state, the County of Tripoli, in 1109.

Many Muslims reacted to the Frankish invasion with shock and outrage, and poets and preachers issued emotional calls to both the local rulers in the Levant and the Great Seljuk Sultan for aid against the European interlopers. The Fatimids continued to mount opposition to the crusader expansion, launching periodic expeditions against the Franks during the first half of the 12th century. However, the calls to action went mostly unheeded by the other Muslim rulers of the region, many of whom quickly realized that they could form alliances with the Frankish rulers against their Muslim or Frankish rivals. Meanwhile, the situation farther east was also not conducive to a strong response. As noted previously, in the wake of the death of Malik-Shah, his territories began to break up. Thus, the sons of Malik-Shah – especially Berkyaruq (r. 1094–105) and Muhammad Tapar (r. 1105–18) – had more immediate concerns occupying their attention when the crusaders arrived, as they fought over their father's legacy. While this conflict was taking place, another brother, Sanjar (r. as Great Seljuk Sultan 1118–57), ruled Khurasan as Muhammad's theoretical subordinate. After Berkyaruq died, Muhammad was able to assert his authority as Great Seljuk Sultan.

Yet despite his concerns in the east, after the Frankish conquest of Tripoli, Muhammad Tapar was moved to act – to an extent. Between 1110 and 1115, a number of expeditions were launched at his direction against the Franks. These were not received favourably by the Muslim rulers in the Levant, who likely feared a reassertion of Great Seljuk power in the region, and after the last expedition was opposed by a coalition of Frankish and Muslim rulers and defeated by a Frankish army from Antioch at Danith in September 1115, Muhammad refocused his attention east, abandoning the Levant to its fate. For him, a much greater threat were the Nizaris of Persia, and he directed a series of attacks on Nizari holdings in the east; indeed, Alamut itself was almost taken, with only the sultan's death preventing the final conquest. In the wake of Muhammad's death in 1118, the split crystallized, with the eastern part of

the Seljuk domains, at the time still ruled by Sanjar, becoming known as the Great Seljuk Sultanate and the western part becoming known as the Sultanate of Iraq, with the ruler in the east being the theoretical superior. (Peacock, 2015: 72–88).

Returning our attention to the Levant: the year 1119 witnessed the first major Muslim victory against the Franks when the Turkmen ruler of Mardin, Ilghazi (r. 1108 or 1109–22) defeated and killed Roger of Salerno, the regent of Antioch (r. 1113–19), at the Battle of Balat. This was a Frankish loss that was so complete and bloody that it became known to the Latin chroniclers as the Battle of *Ager Sanguinis* (the Field of Blood); as Nicholas Morton has pointed out, the victory was also a major element in the overall failure of the Franks to take control of Aleppo in the early 12th century, and as such was a major setback for their wider ambitions in the east (Morton, 2018: 7–8). Ilghazi did not capitalize on his success, however, and he died in 1122. It was left to others, the best known of whom is the ruler of Mosul, 'Imad al-Din Zangi (r. 1127–46), to pursue the war against the Franks. Zangi spent much of his time pursuing his own political ambitions in the Levant and Iraq, including repeatedly attempting to take control of Damascus, but he also directed periodic campaigns against the Franks. Most famously, towards the end of 1144, he took advantage of the fact that Joscelin II of Edessa had been called away from his capital, conquering the city on 24 December and thus bringing the first of the capitals of the crusader states under Muslim control. Zangi himself died two years later, assassinated in September 1146; some sources allege that he was killed by a Frankish slave while he lay incapacitated by overindulgence in alcohol. His territories were divided between his sons; his elder son Sayf al-Din Ghazi (r. 1146–49) received Mosul and his father's lands in the east, while his second son Nur al-Din Mahmud (r. 1146–74) received Aleppo and his father's holdings in *Bilad al-Sham*.

We have noted that Muhammad Tapar devoted serious attention to fighting against the Nizaris of Persia. The Nizaris were also active in *Bilad al-Sham* during this period. Their initial centre of operations was Aleppo, where they enjoyed the favour of the ruler, Ridwan (r. 1095–113), assassinating his enemies for him and fighting in his forces. However, after Ridwan's death, they were attacked and driven out by his son and successor, Alp-Arslan al-Akhras (r. 1113–14), possibly at the instigation of Muhammad Tapar. They attempted to establish a new base at Shayzar but were repelled by the ruling Banu Munqidh, the family of Usama, whom we have mentioned previously. The Nizaris continued to be active in northern Syria, but by 1126 they had moved south to Damascus, where they enjoyed the favour of the *atabeg* of Damascus, Zahir al-Din Tughtigin (r. 1105–28). Again, the death of their patron signalled the reversal of their fortunes; soon after Tughtigin's death, in 1129, his son and

successor Taj al-Muluk Buri (r. 1128–32) authorized a pogrom against them, and they were attacked and expelled by the city militia and the mob. Yet over the next two decades the Nizaris were finally able to establish a network of strongholds in Syria, including the important fortress of Masyaf, captured in 1141, with a local population probably in the tens of thousands, and their local leader under the ultimate authority of the head of the sect at Alamut. Meanwhile, they continued their campaign of political assassinations, including killing the Fatimid caliph al-Amir (r. 1101–30) and fatally wounding Buri of Damascus in 1131 (he died of his wounds a year later). In 1152, they killed their first Frankish target, Count Raymond II of Tripoli (r. 1137–52); the motivation for this attack is unknown, but it provoked a violent reaction from the local Christians, and Templar forces raided Nizari territory. It is probably from this point that the Nizaris were forced to pay an annual tribute to the Templars (Daftary, 2007: 332–35, 347–52). Thus, in this period, we see the Nizaris asserting themselves as a force in the religious and political affairs of the Levant with which both Muslim and Frankish rulers would have to come to terms.

While these events were going on in the east, the Norman rulers of Sicily were building a state that had at its foundations a general tolerance for the various religious and ethnic groups on the island; while it is tempting to romanticize this as a sign of unusually enlightened rulers, it was a tolerance that had its basis very much in pragmatism and a desire to avert potential rebellions rather than a desire to promote multiculturalism. The population included Catholic Normans and Italians, Greek Orthodox Greeks, Jews, and Middle Eastern and North African Muslims, and all contributed to a cultural mix that reached its apogee under Roger II (r. as grand count 1105–30 and king 1130–54). This blend is perhaps best expressed in Roger's palace chapel in Palermo, the Cappella Palatina, which was completed in 1143 and incorporates a mix of Romanesque, Byzantine, Fatimid, and ʿAbbasid elements (see Fig. 1; Metcalfe, 2009: 141–59, 237–50).

Figure 3.1 The Cappella Palatina, Palermo

Source: The Cappella Palatina, Palermo, was commissioned by Roger II of Sicily and completed in 1143. It incorporates a fusion of Romanesque, Byzantine, Fatimid, and ʿAbbasid structural elements and decorative styles that testifies to the culturally and religiously mixed society on the island at the time. jozef sedmak/Alamy Stock Photo.

Meanwhile, in Iberia, Almoravid rule was not popular. They discriminated against Christians and Jews, who had previously enjoyed significant amounts of freedom and influence under the Umayyads and the party kings. The Almoravids also looked down upon the other Muslims of Iberia, insisting on rigorous adherence to their narrow interpretation of the Maliki legal code and

reserving the highest positions in the military and government for themselves. They also taxed all their subjects – Muslim, Christian, and Jewish – heavily, and Almoravid troops periodically plundered local populations, with their masters making no efforts to rein them in. Starting in the 1140s, resentment against Almoravid rule began to turn into open rebellion in a number of cities. At the same time, a new Berber religious movement was becoming active in North Africa. Led by Ibn Tumart (r. 1121–30), it emphasized above all the oneness and transcendence of God; from this position, the movement gained the name ***al-muwahhidun*** ('those who profess the oneness of God', Latinized to Almohads). After Ibn Tumart died, he was succeeded by a close associate, 'Abd al-Mu'min (r. 1130–66), who declared himself caliph and embarked on the conquest of western North Africa from the Almoravids. In 1147, he completed this with the conquest of Marrakesh, the Almoravid capital. In the same year, Christian forces conquered the city of Lisbon, and responding to calls for aid from the Muslim rulers of Iberia, 'Abd al-Mu'min began an invasion of the peninsula. By 1148, he had taken most of south-western Iberia, and by the 1170s, he and his successors would have expanded their territories further both in Iberia and along the North African coast (Bennison, 2016: 54–99; Egger, 2004: 183–88; Kennedy, 1996: 174–231). Thus the Muslims of the Levant who paid attention to events outside their immediate surroundings could look west and see their fellow Muslims beset, but fighting back, at the opposite end of the Mediterranean.

Al-Muwahhidun Arabic: 'those who profess the oneness of God', 'Almohads'. A Berber religious movement emphasizing the single nature of God, which supplanted the Almoravids in Iberia and North Africa.

The problem of the sources

Gaining insight into Muslim reactions to the First Crusade is difficult, primarily due to the distribution of the sources and the agendas that affect their works. The earliest major chronicles, by Ibn al-Qalanisi and al-'Azimi, were written decades after the First Crusade and also well after Zangi's conquest of Edessa, when enthusiasm for the counter-crusade was much more widespread in the Levantine region than it had been at the time. The few sources that date from the period between the First Crusade and the conquest of Edessa consist of some works by professional poets (see *Doc. 5* for examples) and, most importantly, a treatise on *jihad* by a Damascene religious scholar of the Shafi'i legal school named 'Ali ibn Tahir al-Sulami (d. 1106) [*Doc. 6*]. The poets' works include laments for the fall of Jerusalem, emotional calls for the counter-crusade, and above all panegyrics of their patrons, intended to flatter

them and ensure continued patronage; this last point, of course, along with the tendency of the poetry of the time to privilege dramatic effect over fact, makes it difficult to use such works to gauge much more than the opinions and ambitions of the poets themselves and, perhaps, of the patrons whose support they sought. Al-Sulami's work, entitled *Kitab al-Jihad* (the Book of the *Jihad*), also has an agenda, albeit a much clearer one; it is intended first and foremost as a call to the rulers of *Bilad al-Sham* in general, and Damascus in particular, to unite and engage in the *jihad* against the crusaders. Al-Sulami draws on the *Qur'an* and *hadith* to provide precedents that encourage his audience (al-Sulami's work was composed in public and subsequently read aloud at public gatherings) to wage the military *jihad* against the Franks. He lays out practical and spiritual regulations regarding how the *jihad* should be conducted, and he severely criticizes rulers who neglect to engage in the holy war. Thus, the earliest sources for the period give us some understanding of how some poets and religious scholars perceived, or would like us to think they perceived, the Frankish attacks, but these works are far less useful in helping us understand the reactions of the politico-military elites, who were most able to mount opposition to the crusaders. Instead we are forced to rely on the testimonies of later writers, which poses significant problems when we seek to trace the origins of the Muslim counter-crusade, since these later writers were strongly aware of their audiences and the impact that their works might have upon them. This had a number of effects on their writings, the most important of which, as we have indicated previously, is that later writers, many of whom were religious scholars, used their texts as a means by which to teach moral lessons. Such agendas are as present in works that a modern reader might expect to be objective (such as chronicles) as they are in ones that adopt a more explicitly pietistic stance. Thus, for example, later chroniclers have a tendency to attribute motives of *jihad* to any figure who went out to fight against the crusaders (see, for example, *Doc. 4.i*), regardless of whether this was actually the reason for the given individual's actions; in doing so, they seek to teach their audiences the value of the *jihad* and encourage them to take part in it. Being forced to read these texts through their pietistic lenses, the modern historian finds it difficult to tell to what extent the facts have been skewed to fit the writer's agenda and hence must treat the sources with great scepticism.

Muslim views of the crusaders' motives

Why did the crusaders come? The Muslim sources express what seems to be a considerable amount of confusion regarding the motives of the Franks. Our earliest dateable source, the *Kitab al-Jihad* of al-Sulami, which was composed in 1105, provides us with what seems to be the most perceptive assessment of

the Franks' intentions, noting that they were fighting a *jihad*, sought to take control of Muslim territory, and had the ultimate objective of Jerusalem [*Doc. 6*]. Al-Sulami also sees their campaign as part of a wider western Christian offensive against Muslim lands that had already manifested itself in the form of the *reconquista* in Spain and the Norman conquest of Sicily, a claim that Paul E. Chevedden has recently argued we should take seriously, although the question remains debated (Chevedden, 2008: passim). Al-Sulami presents the Franks as having been surprised by the extent of their success but also encouraged to pursue even greater destruction and material and territorial gains in the region as a result of the reluctance of Muslim leaders to engage them in battle. At the same time, in a manner that parallels that of many contemporaries in Europe, al-Sulami also sees the Frankish conquest in teleological terms, in that he presents it as a punishment for Muslim misbehaviour and a test from God, intended to reveal which of the Muslims will return to righteousness and become steadfast defenders of their faith and which will not. Divine support and both earthly and spiritual rewards, including the spoils of war, divine approval, and a place in the heaven reserved for martyrs, are offered to those who return to right conduct and undertake the *jihad*, while those who do not are criticized for their neglect and threatened with the fires of hell [Christie, 2007b: *passim*; for some elements of this discussion, see *Doc. 6*]. Elsewhere in his work, al-Sulami also suggests that the Franks have been sent to fulfil a prophecy whereby a group of Muslims will reconquer Jerusalem, then go on to take Constantinople and Rome (al-Sulami, 2015: 18–19; Christie, 2007a: *passim*). Thus the Franks are ultimately tools of the divine, intended to bring the Muslims back to good conduct and provide opportunities for them to demonstrate their piety and reap the benefits offered.

Al-Sulami's ideas on the Franks' motives are recalled in the views of other Muslim sources. His view that the crusader conquests in the Levant formed part of a wider offensive is echoed in the works of a number of other writers (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 51–54). His comments on the destructive tendencies of the Franks and his critique of the laggardness of Muslim rulers are paralleled in the work of the Syrian poet Ibn al-Khayyat (d. 1120s) [*Doc. 5.i.b*]. Meanwhile, his views on the ongoing territorial and material ambitions of the enemy resonate with comments made by Usama ibn Munqidh, who suggests that continued crusader activity was motivated by the lure of Baghdad [*Doc. 5.iii*]. We should not assume that these later writers were drawing directly on the work of al-Sulami; it is far more likely that all of the authors, including al-Sulami, drew on a common pool of ideas that were circulating at the time. By the same token, al-Sulami's views do not represent the sum total of suggestions that were made regarding the crusaders' motives. Al-'Azimi suggests that the Frankish attack was in fact undertaken in revenge for the killing of Frankish

and Byzantine pilgrims who sought to visit Jerusalem [*Doc. 5.ii*]. Meanwhile, an anonymous poet quoted by the later historian Ibn Taghri Birdi (c. 1410–70) depicts the Frankish offensive as an attempt to propagate an impure, debased form of Christianity by force [*Doc. 5.i.c*]. Thus Muslim writers ascribed a wide range of motives to the crusaders, ranging from desire for plunder and an urge to spread Christianity to a simple love of violence.

It is striking that of all these sources, only al-Sulami uses the term *jihad* to describe the crusaders' activities, thus stating that they are conducting a form of religious warfare analogous to the military *jihad* of the Muslims. How can this be explained? Was al-Sulami the only Muslim writer of the early 12th century who knew that the crusaders believed themselves to be fighting a holy war? It is clear that as the 12th century progressed, the Muslims became increasingly aware of a religious motivation behind the Franks' activities (Kedar, 1996: 347–50), but it is only in the latter half of the century that we see other Muslim writers also using the same word to describe the crusaders' activities; one particularly striking example is found in the universal chronicle of the Mosuli historian Ibn al-Athir (1160–1233) [*Doc. 5.iv*]. We might be tempted to see al-Sulami as being unusually perceptive for his time, since it took a long time before another Muslim author had the same insight, but Ibn al-Athir's depiction of the Frankish *jihad* suggests a different interpretation. In his account, the crusaders are depicted as placing greater value on glory, material gain, and political concerns than on pious recovery of the holy city; thus, the Frankish *jihad* is a debased one that would definitely not meet with the approval of his Muslim readers. In this way, Ibn al-Athir is careful to devalue the crusade even as he uses the word *jihad* to refer to it. This suggests that Muslim writers who became aware of crusader ideas of holy war wrestled with the problem of describing it on the one hand but also denying it any legitimacy on the other. It is thus possible that the absence of the term *jihad* in earlier Muslim sources stems from a desire to avoid using a word that might suggest that the crusaders' operations were in some way legitimate; referring to the crusaders' activities as a Christian equivalent of the Muslim *jihad* would make it harder to represent them as unequivocally malicious and hence valid targets for the Muslim counter-crusade (Christie, 2006: 66–70).

Ibn al-Athir actually provides two possible reasons for the arrival of the crusaders in the Levant, of which the debased *jihad* referred to previously is the first. He also suggests that the Franks attacked the region because they were invited to by the Fatimids [*Doc. 5.iv*]. Ibn al-Athir, as a Sunni Muslim, saw the Fatimids as heretics and their claims to the caliphate as invalid, so he calls them merely 'the 'Alid rulers of Egypt.' He suggests that the Fatimids, intimidated by the Seljuks, invited the Franks to take control of Syria, thus driving a wedge between them and their Sunni enemies. It might be tempting

to write off Ibn al-Athir's account as a slur cast against the Egyptians, but as Carole Hillenbrand has argued, it is possible that the Fatimids did indeed seek to make an alliance with the Byzantines and crusaders against their Seljuk rivals. The Fatimid conquest of Jerusalem in 1098, while their enemies were distracted by the crusaders to the north, makes particular sense if one were to assume that they expected the Franks to leave it in their hands; al-'Azimi's account of the letter sent in 1096 by the Byzantine emperor to the (unspecified) Muslims could be seen, then, as a record of communication between the Fatimids and the Byzantines. However, if the Fatimids had any such hopes, they were dashed when it became apparent that the crusade's ultimate target was the holy city, and thus we see them quickly coming into conflict with the crusaders afterwards (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 44–47).

The first signs of counter-crusade

As Alex Mallett has pointed out, counter-crusading activity began as soon as the Franks started attacking Muslim territory in the Levant, and undoubtedly those involved included many who were motivated by *jihad* sentiment (Mallett, 2014: 13, 144–45). However, ongoing possibilities of collaboration with the Franks hindered the prompt development of widespread counter-crusading sentiment among the Muslim rulers of the Levant. Many of these rulers were more interested in pursuing their political and territorial ambitions against each other, and it soon became apparent that many Frankish leaders were only too willing to take part in such alliances. Thus, the crusaders swiftly became enmeshed in a political environment in which the rhetoric of military *jihad* was actively employed, yet *realpolitik* often trumped religious or other scruples about dealing with an enemy. It is clear that the failure of the counter-crusading expeditions in 1110–15 authorized by the Great Seljuk Sultan Muhammad Tapar was ultimately due to political concerns; the Muslim rulers of *Bilad al-Sham* preferred independence and alliances with non-Muslims to having to accept the re-imposition of Seljuk authority that would come with the sultan's aid.

Sultan Muhammad's expeditions had been prompted by public unrest in Baghdad in the form of impassioned calls to the military *jihad* against the Franks. If the later sources are to be believed, such appeals began in 1098, *before* the fall of Jerusalem to the crusaders, and they reached their height in 1111, when a group of religious scholars, Sufis, and merchants from Aleppo, led by a descendant of the Prophet, disrupted Friday prayers in both the Seljuk sultan's mosque and the caliphal mosque, thus challenging both the secular and the spiritual leaders of the Sunni Muslim community to fulfil their duty as defenders of the faith (Ibn al-Jawzi, 1992: Vol. 17: 43; Ibn al-Qalanisi, 1983:

276–77; Hillenbrand, 1999a: 79). As we saw previously, the sultan had already begun to authorize campaigns against the Franks by this time, but the protests of 1111 proved a particular spur to these, even though the opposition of the rulers of *Bilad al-Sham* to interference from the sultan ultimately led to their failure.

In the meantime, calls to the *jihad* against the Franks were also being made within the Levant itself. As indicated previously, al-Sulami made one such call in 1105, seeking to provoke, and if necessary shame, the local rulers of the region into taking up arms against the crusaders. While al-Sulami's call was directed first and foremost at the politico-military elite who could undertake a military response to the Franks, he also saw the defensive *jihad* as an obligation that was incumbent on all Muslims who were free, adult, male, and sane. In line with earlier tradition, he presented the *jihad* as both a *fard 'ayn* (individual obligation) and *fard kifaya* (obligation of sufficiency). In other words, the duty was imposed on all eligible Muslims until enough undertook it to ensure its success. At the same time, the political leaders of the day were required to provide leadership in the endeavour, making them all the more worthy of criticism for their neglect (al-Sulami, 2015: 12–15; Christie, 2007b: 4–6). Al-Sulami urged his listeners to prioritize the greater *jihad* against the self over the lesser *jihad* against the enemy, seeing the former as a prerequisite for the latter [*Doc. 6*]. In this way, he reflected contemporary developments in *jihad* teachings; indeed, he may well have met and been influenced by the great Muslim theologian Abu Hamid Muhammad ibn Muhammad al-Ghazali (d. 1111), one of the principal thinkers involved in the development of the doctrine of greater and lesser *jihad*, who visited Damascus in 1095–96 (Christie, 2007b: 5–6, 10–11; see Chapter 6).

As we have previously noted, al-Sulami presented a number of motivations to his listeners; thus, at times we find him describing the delights of Paradise to his listeners in glowing terms, while at other times he provides lengthy, workmanlike discussions of how plunder should be distributed. This is in some ways symptomatic of the wider multifaceted nature of the text, which is simultaneously an anthology of sections from the *Qur'an* and *hadith*, a sermon, a legal text on *jihad*, a *fada'il* work on Jerusalem and Damascus, a grammatical treatise, and a collection of relevant poetic quotations. As indicated in our Introduction, knowledge of a wide range of literature and the ability to deploy it appropriately were marks of a cultivated Muslim.

It is not clear how much of an impact al-Sulami made on his listeners or his wider society. The part of al-Sulami's work that deals most explicitly with the Franks was composed in public in May–June 1105. It is striking that in October–November of the same year, Tughtigin fought the Franks and took strongholds that they were building near Damascus; then in 1106, he took

Busra al-Sham, some 70 miles south of Damascus, from political rivals who had previously formed an alliance with the Franks against him. However, we should be wary of assuming that Tughtigin's activities were a response to calls from al-Sulami and others like him; it is far more likely that Tughtigin undertook these operations to further his own political ambitions, although if they helped to assuage public opinion in Damascus, that would also have been of benefit to him. Thus it is more likely that, as Hillenbrand asserts, al-Sulami's ideas circulated among the religious scholars of the region but did not provoke an immediate reaction from its political leaders (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 108).

In the meantime, the first half of the 12th century saw the Fatimids launch a number of campaigns north into *Bilad al-Sham*. These were intended both to defend against the Franks and to extend Fatimid influence in the region. The vizier al-Afdal Shahanshah was especially keen to be seen as the champion of Islam in the military *jihad* against the infidel, and in the process also managed, in 1105, to enlist Tughtigin's aid in the form of a contingent that supplemented the Fatimid forces. As Michael Brett has noted, even though the Muslim armies were subsequently defeated, this is significant as it indicates that former enemies could become allies in the face of Frankish aggression. The Fatimids continued to be the foremost actors in taking up the sword against the crusaders for the next half-century (Brett, 2017: 233–37).

Hillenbrand sees the Battle of Balat in 1119 as a marker for growth in Muslim enthusiasm for the *jihad* against the Franks. According to the Aleppine historian Kamal al-Din ibn al-'Adim (1192–1262), present at the battle was the influential Twelver Shi'ite *qadi* (judge) of Aleppo, Ibn al-Khashshab (d. 1133 or 1134). Before the fighting began, he preached to Ilghazi's troops from his saddle, holding a spear and urging them to fight (Ibn al-'Adim, 1951–68: Vol. 2: 188–89). Engagement by religious scholars in the military *jihad* had a long pedigree by this time. Some of the earliest writers on *jihad*, such as 'Abd Allah ibn al-Mubarak (d. 797) and Ibrahim ibn Muhammad al-Fazari (d. 802 or later) were enthusiastic fighters on the Muslim-Byzantine frontier (Bonner, 1996: 109–25). The presence of a religious scholar seems to have generated some initial reservations among Ilghazi's troops at Balat, but his eloquence apparently moved his listeners to tears. Admittedly, this reaction to preaching is a frequent topos in such accounts, but we might suggest, assuming that we can at least partially trust Ibn al-'Adim's account, that the completeness of the Muslim victory at least resulted to a certain extent from the enthusiasm that Ibn al-Khashshab generated with his preaching. Ilghazi did not follow up his victory at Balat with the conquest of Antioch. The sources accuse him of having instead chosen to spend the following week celebrating with an extended drinking binge; this may be an exaggeration, or it may be that Ilghazi was indeed following a Turkic steppe custom whereby a ruler demonstrated

his authority by organizing occasions for himself and his court to drink together. Alternatively, if the story is indeed merely an exaggeration, then Ilghazi may have realized that while his mostly Turkmen nomad troops were an effective raiding force, they were not suitable for besieging and occupying a major city. It certainly seems that he directed his efforts more usefully to the conquest of strategic territory between Aleppo and Antioch. Returning to the topic of the *jihad*, the following decades saw other religious scholars issuing equally passionate calls to the holy war, though they were not greeted with significant responses at this point (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 109–10; Cobb, 2014: 122–23; Morton, 2018: 94, 112–13).

Another potential source of information in tracing the beginnings of the Muslim *jihad* against the Franks is epigraphic evidence found on tombs, mosques, religious colleges, and other buildings. Such inscriptions have an advantage over historical chronicles in that they often include dates indicating when they were made and were frequently created during or shortly after the lifetime of the person about whom they record information. On the other hand, they are subject to the desires of those who commissioned them, such that, for example, someone might be described in an inscription as a great or pious hero, when in fact that is only how those who paid for the inscription wanted the person in question to be remembered. In any case, Hillenbrand notes that from 1099 to 1146, the only monumental inscriptions found throughout the Muslim world that include mention of the *jihad* are those found in Syria. Thus, the inscriptions found on the tomb of Balak, the nephew of Ilghazi, who died in 1124 and was interred at Aleppo, described him in clear terms as a martyr and fighter in the *jihad*. She argues that the appearance of such language in inscriptions, specifically in the region neighbouring the Frankish states and at the time that the Muslims began to inflict defeats on the Franks in battle, testify to a rise in *jihad* spirit in the region, or at least increased propaganda using such ideas, as well as the beginnings of an informal alliance between the political and religious classes, the second of which probably composed the texts of the inscriptions in question (Hillenbrand, 1994: 63–69, 1999a: 100–11). Hillenbrand's argument is disputed by Yaacov Lev, who maintains that in the political language of the region in the 12th century, the term *jihad* was used for any military encounter with the Franks but was not intended to be understood as implying any deeper commitment to a holy war; thus, the inscriptions under discussion merely indicate that conflict with the Franks was a common occurrence in the area rather than conveying a particular religious or political ideology (Lev, 2008: 229–30).

Zangi: the first great *mujahid?*

'Imad al-Din Zangi is often regarded as having been the first great Muslim *mujahid*, a reputation that is based on his conquest of Edessa in 1144. However, it is difficult to establish how far he himself took an interest in the *jihad* against the Franks; indeed, it seems far more likely that territorial and political ambitions were the primary motives behind his actions. Zangi himself had been brought up in a violent and ruthless political environment. His father Aksungur, a Turkic *mamluk*, had served both Alp-Arslan and Malik-Shah, including serving as the governor of Aleppo from 1086–94, but in the conflict over the Great Seljuk sultanate that followed Malik-Shah's death, he had been killed in 1094, when Zangi was about ten years old. Thereafter Zangi was brought up by another of Malik-Shah's *mamluks* in Mosul and began his career there. After holding a number of governorships in Iraq, he was appointed governor of Mosul, as well as *atabeg* for two Seljuk princes, in 1127. He quickly extended his territory in northern Iraq; then in 1128, he negotiated the handover of Aleppo (El-Azhari, 2016: 10–20). He then divided his attention between east and west, expanding his territory in northern *Bilad al-Sham* at the expense of either the Franks or other Muslims, including several attempts to take control of Damascus, and intervening in the politics of Iraq and increasing his holdings there. The taking of Edessa was arguably an act of opportunism, with Zangi acting only because he could take advantage of the fact that its ruler and much of its army were absent.

Zangi was certainly seen as a great *mujahid* by those around him. Poets and historians, both during his lifetime and afterwards, praised his zeal in fighting against the Franks; the caliph rewarded him for his conquest of Edessa with numerous honorific titles; and monumental inscriptions proclaimed his devotion to the holy war. However, Zangi himself spent more time increasing his territory and fighting fellow Muslims in both Iraq and the Levant than he spent pursuing campaigns against the Latin states; as Taef El-Azhari has pointed out, he fought against numerous Muslim rulers, including five Seljuk sultans of Iraq and Persia and three 'Abbasid caliphs. Thus, it is not clear that he was seriously concerned with the *jihad*, except in so far as it helped him further his political ambitions. He certainly did not leave any religious buildings to attest to unusual piety, unlike rulers who came after him (El-Azhari, 2016: 3, 37, 61–90, 137–43). In addition, numerous sources attest to the brutal and uncompromising manner in which he dealt with his subjects and opponents. His troops, whom he ruled with an iron fist, were terrified of him. According to the sources, his cruel acts included killing, enslaving, mutilating, and torturing prisoners, Muslim as well as Frankish; breaking promises of safe conduct; and once, when drunk, divorcing his wife and ordering that she be

raped by stable-hands. At the same time, some depict him as seeking to preserve military discipline and public morality through his uncompromising approach (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 112–16, 2001: 115–27). Yet whatever they thought of him beforehand, in the eyes of the Muslim writers, Zangi's conquest of Edessa was his salvation, gaining him forgiveness for all his misdeeds. Ibn al-Athir, in his admittedly partisan history of the **Zangids**, tells the story of a pious man who saw Zangi in a dream after the latter was killed; the man said, '[He was] in the best condition, and I said to him, "How has God treated you?" Zangi answered, "He has granted me pardon." I asked, "On account of what?" and he responded, "On account of the conquest of Edessa" ' (Ibn al-Athir, 1963: 70).

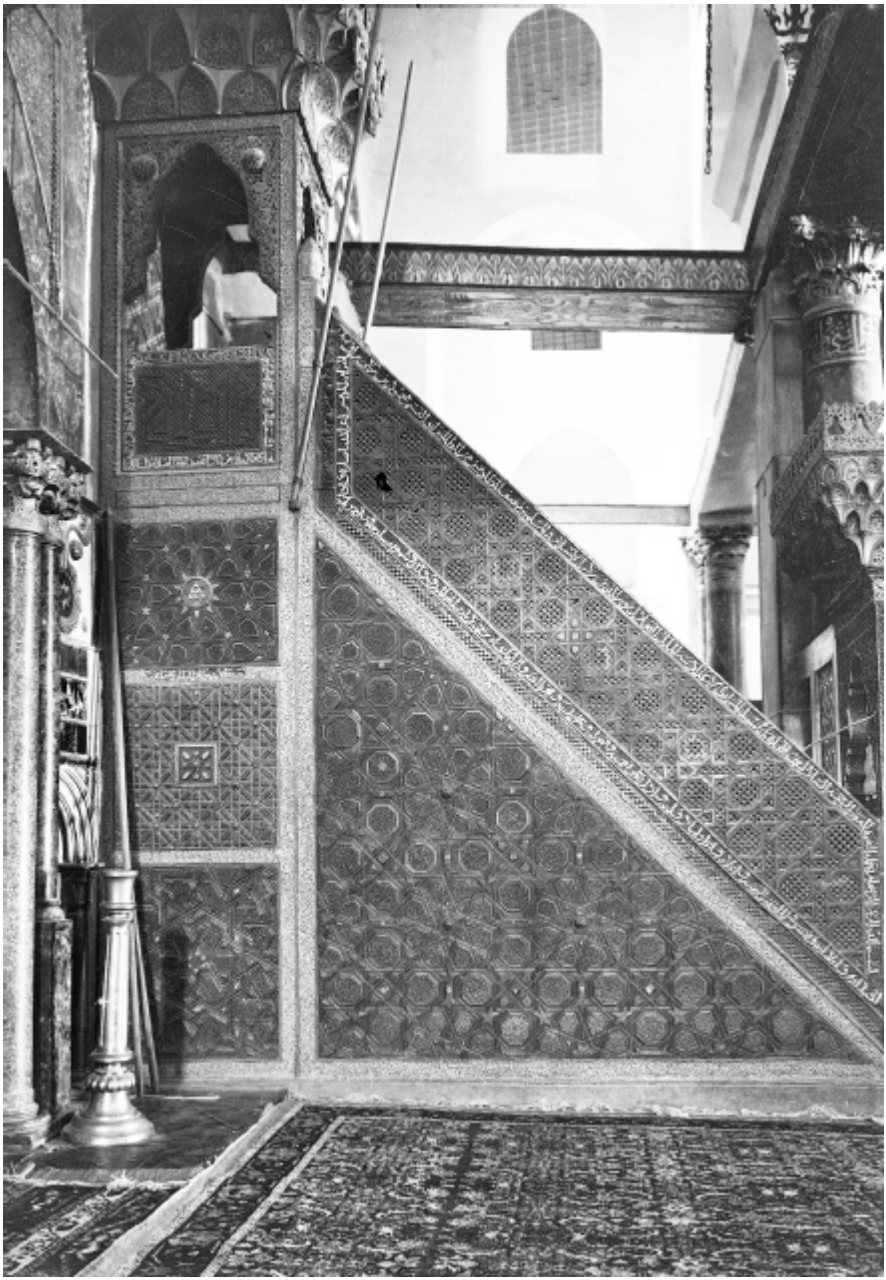
Zangids Family of 'Imad al-Din Zangi (r. 1127–46). Members of the Zangid dynasty ruled territories in *Bilad al-Sham* until the second half of the 12th century, and in Iraq and the Jazira until the mid-13th century.

Conclusion

As we have seen, Muslim reactions to the arrival of the First Crusade were ones of shock, hostility, and, if the varied comments of the sources are to be taken at face value, confusion regarding why the crusaders had come. These quickly transformed into emotional appeals for a Muslim counter-offensive that issued in the first instance from the lips of religious scholars and court poets. At what point these calls provoked a reaction from the politico-military leaders of *Bilad al-Sham* is unclear, but from the textual and epigraphic evidence, we might suggest, tentatively, that the early 12th century witnessed a gradual growth in the number of Muslim rulers who saw value in pursuing the military *jihad* against the Franks. Whether they did so from genuine piety or a recognition of the propaganda value of such ideas is of course impossible to tell and remains a matter of scholarly debate; indeed, the German scholar Michael Köhler has contended that the large number of alliances and treaties made between Muslim and Frankish rulers both at this time and later indicates that *jihad* propaganda was used by Muslim rulers purely to advance their own political, social, and economic ambitions. He reinforces his argument when he notes that such treaties were even made by later figures widely regarded as proponents of the Muslim military *jihad*, such as Nur al-Din and Saladin (r. 1169–93) (Köhler, 2013: passim, esp. 321–23). Nevertheless, in employing such *jihad* ideology, the Muslim rulers of the period under discussion in this chapter set in motion the gradual reconquest of the Muslim territory that had been taken by the crusaders, as well as setting the stage for much wider use of *jihad* propaganda by their successors.

Further reading

For a discussion of the events treated in this chapter, see Paul Cobb's *The Race for Paradise*. Carole Hillenbrand's *The Crusades: Islamic Perspectives* provides a detailed examination of the Muslims' reactions to the First Crusade, as well as the beginnings of the Muslim counter-crusade and *jihad*. Alex Mallett's *Popular Muslim Reactions to the Franks in the Levant* enlarges this with a focus on the experience of the 'non-elites' of medieval Muslim society. On Muslim-Frankish alliances, see especially Michael Köhler's *Alliances and Treaties between Frankish and Muslim Rulers in the Middle East*. On the activities of Muslim poets, see also Hadia Dajani Shakeel's article '*Jihad* in Twelfth-Century Arabic Poetry: A Moral and Religious Force to Counter the Crusades' (1976); Carole Hillenbrand, '*Jihad* Poetry in the Age of the Crusades' (2010); and especially Osman Latiff, *The Cutting Edge of the Poet's Sword* (2018). On al-Sulami, see the various articles by Niall Christie in the 'Select Bibliography' section of this book, as well as his introduction to *The Book of the* Jihad *of 'Ali ibn Tahir al-Sulami (d. 1106): Text, Translation and Commentary* (2015). For discussion of the evidence of inscriptions, see Carole Hillenbrand, '*Jihad* Propaganda in Syria from the Time of the First Crusade until the Death of Zengi: The Evidence of Monumental Inscriptions' (1994) and Yaacov Lev, 'The *Jihad* of Sultan Nur al-Din of Syria (1146–1174): History and Discourse' (2008). For an assessment of 'Imad al-Din Zangi, see Carole Hillenbrand, '"Abominable Acts": The Career of Zengi' (2001), and Taef Kamal El-Azhary's *Zengi and the Muslim Response to the Crusades* (2016). Finally, a useful overview of historical developments in the major Seljuk centres of *Bilad al-Sham* at the time may be found in Taef Kamal El-Azhari's *The Saljuqs of Syria during the Crusades*, while more information on Fatimid Egypt may be found in Michael Brett, *The Fatimid Empire*; Paul E. Walker, *Exploring an Islamic Empire: Fatimid History and Its Sources* (2002); Yaacov Lev, *State and Society in Fatimid Egypt* (1991); and (for readers of German) Heinz Halm, *Kalifen und Assassinen: Ägypten und der Vordere Orient zur Zeit der Ersten Kreuzzüge 1074–1171* (2018).



4 Nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad*, 1146–1174

Here we will examine developments in the Levant in the wake of the fall of Edessa, including an examination of Muslim perspectives on the crusader attack on Damascus in 1148 that is often referred to in western scholarship as the Second Crusade. Then we will look at the conversion of the Turks who formed the majority of the rulers of *Bilad al-Sham*, as well as the religious development known as the 'Sunni revival', as a preamble to considering the career of Zangi's son Nur al-Din. With regard to the latter, we will discuss in particular the *jihad* propaganda campaign that Nur al-Din sponsored as he expanded his influence over *al-Sham*. Our attention will then turn briefly to Nur al-Din's deputy in Egypt, Salah al-Din (a *laqab* that means 'Righteousness of the Faith' and is so often transliterated into English as 'Saladin' that we will do the same here). In doing so, we will look in particular at the breakdown of relations between Nur al-Din and Saladin that followed the latter's assumption

of power in Egypt; this almost resulted in a direct military confrontation between the two men that was only averted by Nur al-Din's death in 1174.

Chronological overview

As we have seen, in the wake of the death of Zangi, his domains were divided between his sons. Relations between the primary inheritors, Sayf al-Din and Nur al-Din, were for the most part cordial, with the result that Nur al-Din, based at Aleppo, was able to concentrate his attention on affairs in *Bilad al-Sham* without being distracted by events further east; however, he also suffered from the disadvantage of having only limited access to the resources of his father's eastern territories (Holt, 1986: 42).

Nur al-Din was immediately faced with the challenge of consolidating his hold on his inheritance. A Frankish attempt to retake and hold Edessa was foiled, with the native Christian population of the city bloodily suppressed. The fall of the Frankish capital had also not resulted in an immediate collapse of the whole county, so both Nur al-Din and the Seljuks of *Rum* subsequently fought with the local populations and each other as they sought to take over the region. There was also conflict over territory with Damascus, eventually resolved through a diplomatic agreement made in 1147. The next year witnessed the arrival of a new wave of crusaders in the Levant (the so-called 'Second Crusade'). The crusaders did not threaten Nur al-Din's holdings but instead decided to attack Damascus, hoping to prevent closer relations between its rulers and Nur al-Din (Phillips, 2014: 93). When the crusaders besieged the city, its military governor, Mu'in al-Din Unur (d. 1149), sent requests for aid to Sayf al-Din and Nur al-Din, who set out for the city from the north. Learning of the approach of the relief force, the crusaders withdrew.

The defeat of the crusaders at Damascus was soon followed by a significant combined action arranged by Nur al-Din and Mu'in al-Din; in June 1149, the two Muslim rulers assembled a joint force that defeated and killed Prince Raymond of Antioch at Inab, leaving the Principality of Antioch temporarily leaderless and vulnerable. Mu'in al-Din was not personally present, so the expedition was led by Nur al-Din, who then passed through the principality and bathed symbolically in the Mediterranean, while in the meantime sending Prince Raymond's head to the 'Abbasid caliph of Baghdad to attest to his victory in the military *jihad*. In the following years, Nur al-Din continued to consolidate his territories, primarily by expanding in the former County of Edessa, as we have seen. Meanwhile, he also sought as far as possible to win over the Muslims in general and the people of Damascus in particular through a propaganda campaign presenting himself as a ruler who was pious, dedicated to the *jihad*, and just to those under his command; it is worth noting that in

the case of Damascus, at least, Nur al-Din also conducted periodic military manoeuvres against the city that resulted in skirmishes and led its rulers to call on the Kingdom of Jerusalem for support.

While Nur al-Din was expanding his influence in *Bilad al-Sham*, Fatimid Egypt was in decline. The death of the Fatimid caliph al-Amir in 1130 had led to a crisis in the caliphal succession. A cousin of al-Amir, ʻAbd al-Majid, may have been designated by al-Amir as his heir, but his accession to the caliphal throne was temporarily stalled by a military coup led by a son of al-Afdal Shahanshah named Ahmad, better known by the nickname Kutayfat (ʻlittle shoulder-bladesʼ). Kutayfat imprisoned ʻAbd al-Majid, declared that the rightful *imam* was the Hidden *Imam* of the Twelver Shiʻites, and made diplomatic overtures to the Franks. Kutayfat's victory was short lived; at the end of 1131, he was assassinated by former bodyguards of the deceased al-Amir. ʻAbd al-Majid was now released and acclaimed as caliph, with the regnal title of al-Hafiz (r. 1131–49). However, many in the Fatimid province of Yemen, most notably its queen, Sayyida Hurra Arwa bint Ahmad (r. [effectively] 1074 or 1075–1138), maintained that the rightful *imam* was al-Amir's infant son al-Tayyib, who was now in hiding (of a mundane sort, rather than the supernatural concealment of, for example, the Hidden *Imam* of the Twelvers). The *imam* and his descendants were in the meantime represented by a spokesman known as the *daʻi mutlaq* (ʻmissionary plenipotentiaryʼ); later divisions among the Tayyibis grew out of disputes over who should succeed to this position, but the Tayyibi strand of Islam as a whole continues to have significant followers in Yemen and India. In the meantime, the Tayyibi schism led to the break-up and secession of the Fatimid province of Yemen, as some local rulers declared nominal allegiance to al-Hafiz while effectively establishing themselves as independent, while others followed the Tayyibi tradition promoted by the queen and rejected al-Hafiz's claim to be caliph (Brett, 2017: 262–67; Daftary, 2007: 238–39).

This was not the end of the Fatimid caliphate's troubles. When al-Hafiz died, he was succeeded by the 16-year old al-Zafir (r. 1149–54), the first of a succession of caliphs who were minors when they came to the throne. In the meantime, power passed into the hands of the military leaders, who spent much of their time fighting each other for the position of vizier, weakening the stability of the state and the government. As a result, the Fatimids were unable to prevent the Franks from conquering Ascalon in 1153.

While these events were taking place in Egypt, the Nizaris were establishing a more coherent state in *Bilad al-Sham* and Persia. As we saw, in the wake of the death of the Great Seljuk Sultan Muhammad in 1118, the sultanate split into two parts. The Great Seljuk Sultanate lasted until 1157, when the weakening of Sultan Sanjar's rule and internal rebellions led to its collapse.

The Sultanate of Iraq lasted until 1194, but was plagued by internal conflicts over the succession and control over the state, as part of which the ʿAbbasid caliphs of Baghdad, starting with al-Muqtafi (r. 1136–60), were able to reassert themselves as political powers in Iraq (Peacock, 2015: 89–121, 146–55). In this unstable environment, the Nizaris set up a state with territories primarily in *Bilad al-Sham* and Persia, which functioned largely independently but despite their geographical separation maintained a unified identity and co-operated effectively, something that Farhad Daftary ascribes to a common heritage and shared purpose, as well as established traditions of centralized rule. In a number of their fortresses, the Nizaris gathered extensive libraries of religious, literary, and scientific works, which were visited by both Ismaʿili and non-Ismaʿili scholars; the library of Alamut is probably the best-known example. The Nizaris were able to defend their holdings effectively, despite periodic attacks from the Seljuks, through a mixture of assassination and conventional warfare. (Daftary, 2007: 352–57).

Then, in 1162, there came to power at Alamut a new chief missionary named Hasan (known to historians as Hasan II, d. 1166). Two years later, in August of 1164, Hasan held a ceremony at Alamut in which he declared that the Day of Resurrection had come, but interpreted symbolically such that from now on the Nizaris would be living in a state of Paradise on earth, with unprecedented access to spiritual truth, while their enemies were seen as being in a spiritual Hell. He also seems to have gradually introduced the idea that he himself was the rightful *imam*, and this position was claimed by his successors. It is unclear exactly how Hasan's message was understood, but it was accepted and celebrated by the Nizaris in Persia, and subsequently, in a nuanced fashion, in *Bilad al-Sham* (Daftary, 2007: 357–67, 370–72).

Hasan was also responsible for sending to *al-Sham*, in 1162, one of the most famous leaders of the Levantine Nizaris: Rashid al-Din Sinan, known to the Franks as the 'Old Man of the Mountain' (d. 1192 or 1193). Sinan soon assumed control of the Nizaris of the Levant, reorganizing their ranks and consolidating their position in the region. He successfully established good relations with the Franks and in 1173 was able to secure an agreement with King Amalric of Jerusalem (r. 1163–74) cancelling the tribute that the Nizaris had to pay to the Templars; the implementation of the agreement was thwarted by the Templars when they murdered Sinan's ambassador as he was on his way back to his master (France, 2015: 35), but the fact that Sinan had been able to secure the agreement in the first place still speaks to his diplomatic skill in dealing with the king. Sinan's relations with Nur al-Din, on the other hand, were more strained, and the Zangid sultan may have been intending to attack the Nizaris when he died in 1174 (Daftary, 2007: 367–69).

Nur al-Din, in the meantime, had been extending his power in *Bilad al-*

Sham, and in 1154, he had managed to take control of Damascus. The last Burid ruler of the city was unpopular with his subjects, who had become increasingly inclined towards the pious promises of Nur al-Din, and when the latter besieged the city, agents within it, with whom he had been secretly communicating for some time, opened the gates to him. There was minimal resistance, and Nur al-Din subsequently continued to assert his Islamic credentials with the foundation of religious and public institutions in the city, most notably the *dar al-ʿadl* (House of Justice), a building where he or his representatives would appear twice a week to hear and address the grievances of the people (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 127).

The fall of Ascalon in 1153 had signalled a shift in focus for both the Franks and Nur al-Din. The sickly state of the Fatimid caliphate was becoming increasingly perceptible, and it was becoming equally apparent that control of Egypt could be the key to military superiority in the Levant. Over the course of the 1160s, both Amalric of Jerusalem and Nur al-Din sent forces to intervene in Egyptian affairs. In 1163, the Egyptian vizier Shawar was ousted by a rival, Dirgham, and fled to Nur al-Din. Amalric took advantage of the instability to launch an invasion of Egypt that was held off by the Egyptians, while Nur al-Din sought to remain aloof. However, he was eventually persuaded to become involved by a loyal Kurdish emir named Asad al-Din Shirkuh. Shirkuh was entrusted with an army and set out in 1164 with Shawar to reinstate the latter in the vizierate. They were accompanied by Shirkuh's nephew Saladin, who at the time was in his 20s. Dirgham was driven out and killed and Shawar restored to his position, but the latter then refused to hand over a third of the grain revenues of Egypt, the sum that had been agreed between Shawar and Nur al-Din (Lyons and Jackson, 1984: 7–8). When Shirkuh refused to withdraw, Shawar negotiated assistance from the Franks, and after some manoeuvres, an agreement was made whereby both the Franks and Shirkuh's forces left Egypt in return for payments.

Shirkuh, however, had not ceased to train his sights on Egypt, and in 1167, Nur al-Din allowed him to take another army there. Shawar again called in Frankish aid. Shirkuh negotiated the handover of Alexandria by its inhabitants but was unable to persuade Shawar to switch sides and join him in fighting against the Franks. In March 1167, a major battle was fought between a combined Frankish-Egyptian force and the army of Shirkuh at al-Babayn in Middle Egypt, in which Saladin acted as a commander. The Frankish-Egyptian coalition was soundly defeated, and Shirkuh marched north to Alexandria, where he installed Saladin as governor with a small garrison before setting out again to face the regrouped allies. Alexandria was now besieged by the allies, while Shirkuh menaced other cities, but eventually a peace agreement was made, and the Franks and Nur al-Din's forces evacuated Egypt in August.

Amalric attacked Egypt again the following year. While Shawar tried to negotiate with the Franks, the Fatimid caliph al-'Adid (r. 1160–71) appealed directly to Nur al-Din for help. Shirkuh set out for a third time in December 1168, and Amalric withdrew soon after, so that Shirkuh entered Egypt largely unopposed. In January 1169, Shirkuh had an audience with the Fatimid caliph, and shortly after, Saladin arrested Shawar, who was killed at the caliph's orders. The caliph appointed Shirkuh as his new vizier, a position that he did not hold for long; Shirkuh was well known for his gluttonous habits, and on 23 March 1169, he died when he took a hot bath after a huge meal. He was succeeded as vizier by Saladin, who seems to have been a compromise candidate from among the various emirs of Shirkuh's army (Lyons and Jackson, 1984: 20–29).

Saladin spent the next two years consolidating his position, including eliminating the old Fatimid army and replacing it with one loyal to himself. Then, in 1171, responding to mounting pressure from Nur al-Din, he officially abolished the Fatimid caliphate; almost immediately afterwards, the now-deposed caliph al-'Adid died, in circumstances that remain somewhat murky, and the remaining members of the Fatimid family were 'kept from women lest they breed' (Eddé, 2011: 49; Lyons and Jackson, 1984: 47). Meanwhile, the authority of the 'Abbasid caliph was acknowledged in the mosques and Egypt was thus restored to the fold of Sunni Islam. Nur al-Din immediately required Saladin to take part in joint operations with him against Frankish Transjordan. Saladin attacked Shawbak (Crac de Montréal) but soon retreated, claiming that he needed to deal with Fatimid conspiracies in Cairo. Tensions continued to mount, and in the early summer of 1174, the resentful Nur al-Din began to gather his troops to bring his recalcitrant vassal to heel. However, on 15 May of that year, after a brief illness contracted while playing polo, Nur al-Din died, and the expedition against Saladin was never launched.

While these events were taking place at the eastern end of the Mediterranean, relations between Muslims and Christians were in decline on Sicily. In the mid-12th century, the Normans of Sicily had managed to take control of a number of centres on the North African coast, most notably Djerba (taken in 1135, and again in 1153), Tripoli (in modern-day Libya, taken in 1146) and Mahdiyya (taken in 1148). However, rebellions in both Sicily and North Africa led to the loss of Norman territory in the latter to the Almohads by 1160. This, along with increasing hostility to non-Christians in Latin Christendom and increasing internal religious and political tensions at the Sicilian court, led to a growth of anti-Muslim sentiment that broke out, in the 1160s, into widespread anti-Muslim mob violence and massacres. Many Muslims fled to the western part of the island, where the Muslim population was more numerous (Metcalfe, 2009: 160–92). The famous Sicilian age of

tolerance was over, and for the Muslim population, worse was yet to come.

The crusader attack on Damascus through Muslim eyes

Numerous explanations were given by the western chroniclers for the failure of the crusader attack on Damascus, including bribery, disunity or religious impurity among the crusaders, and blame of either the Templars and Hospitallers or the Byzantines (Phillips, 2014: 93–94). The Muslim sources also suggest a number of reasons. Ibn al-Qalanisi, who was in the city at the time, ascribes the failure of the siege to the crusaders retreating when they heard of the approach of the Zangid relief force, though he is also careful to emphasize that the Damascenes had by then already turned the tide of battle and were inflicting great losses on the Franks. To emphasize the deserved nature of the Frankish defeat, Ibn al-Qalanisi suggests that before the attack, they had arrogantly already divided up the territory that they anticipated conquering between themselves [*Doc. 7.i*]. The Baghdadi historian and religious scholar ʿAbd al-Rahman ibn al-Jawzi (c. 1116–1201) also comments on the involvement of both the Damascene armies and the Zangid reinforcements in repelling the Frankish attack, though he ascribes the actual departure of the Franks to divine favour in the face of a show of penitence on the part of the people of the city, who gathered around a copy of the *Qur'an* from the time of the caliph ʿUthman ibn ʿAffan (r. 644–56, credited with having compiled the standard text), bared their heads, and prayed to God for help. He also emphasizes the fact that the Franks expected to take the city with the following story:

There was with them a tall priest with a white beard, riding a roan donkey, with a cross hanging from his throat, a cross hanging from the throat of his donkey, and carrying two crosses in his hand. He said to the Franks, 'The Messiah promised me that I would take Damascus and no-one would resist me.' So they gathered around him and approached, heading for Damascus. When the Muslims saw him they demonstrated their zeal for Islam and attacked him all together. They killed him and his donkey, took the crosses and burned them.

(Ibn al-Jawzi, 1992: Vol. 18: 63–64)

In this way, Ibn al-Jawzi contrasts the penitent piety of the Muslims with the arrogant sense of entitlement of the Christians, in the process demonstrating the superiority of Islam over Christianity.

Ibn al-Athir, while also commenting on Frankish overconfidence, provides a more nuanced understanding of the events in his historical works, suggesting that Muʿin al-Din of Damascus exploited the differences between the newly

arrived Franks and the ones who were resident in the Levant to bring about the failure of the siege. He informed the newly arrived crusaders that he had called in the aid of Sayf al-Din of Mosul and was prepared to hand the city over to him, which would not bode well for them. Meanwhile, he threatened the resident Franks, saying that if the newly arrived crusaders took Damascus, they would also seize the coastal lands from the resident Franks, and again threatening to hand the city over to Sayf al-Din. According to Ibn al-Athir, this enabled Muʿin al-Din to drive a wedge between the two Frankish factions, with the result that the resident Franks persuaded the German King Conrad III (r. 1138–52; Ibn al-Athir does not mention the French participants in the crusade) to call off the siege, in return for which Muʿin al-Din promised to reward them with the castle of Banyas (See *Doc. 7.ii*; in truth, Banyas was not actually handed over). Ibn al-ʿAdim provides a much briefer account, stating only that the German king withdrew from Damascus after Nur al-Din joined forces with Muʿin al-Din. However, he follows this immediately with an account of a dispute over Tripoli between Bertrand, the grandson of Raymond of Poitiers who had accompanied Conrad III, and Raymond II of Tripoli. As Ibn al-ʿAdim notes, since Bertrand's grandfather was Raymond of Poitiers, who had taken Tripoli in 1109, he also had a claim on the city. Bertrand took control of al-ʿUrayma (Arima) from its Frankish rulers, in response to which Raymond formed an alliance with Nur al-Din and encouraged him to take the castle from his rival (Ibn al-ʿAdim, 1951–68: Vol. 2: 291–92); in this way, Ibn al-ʿAdim, like Ibn al-Athir, draws attention to tensions between resident and newly arrived Franks. It is worth noting that the same incident is also described in more detail in the *Kamil* of Ibn al-Athir, although the Mosuli author does not indicate an awareness that Bertrand took al-ʿUrayma from Frankish rulers (Ibn al-Athir, 2007: 22–23). Nonetheless, both authors show a strikingly detailed awareness of Frankish internal politics.

What are we to make of these varied accounts? The common themes that emerge from the narratives are the arrogance of the Franks, as contrasted with the humble piety of the Muslims; the divisions between the Franks who had lived in the Latin states for some time and the newly arrived crusaders; and the alliance between Muʿin al-Din and the Zangids that rescued Damascus from the Frankish siege. Arrogance is a vice that is periodically ascribed to the Franks in the Muslim sources, and given that in the *Qur'an* this vice is condemned and associated with the stiff-necked refusal of pagans to turn to the true faith, while humility is lauded, such ascription is evidence of both the moralizing tendencies and the propagandistic intentions of the Muslim sources; the Christian Franks are deliberately associated with the unbelievers of old, while the humble Muslims are celebrated for their piety in the true faith. Meanwhile, the detailed descriptions of the divisions between the Franks

in the works of Ibn al-Athir and Ibn al-ʿAdim (who based their accounts on earlier works) tell us that by the mid-12th century at least, Muslims had begun to achieve a detailed understanding of the internal affairs of the Latin states. Finally, the alliance between the Zangids and Muʿin al-Din is one example of a recognition on the part of the Muslims that unity was the key to defeating the Franks. It was upon this idea of Muslim unity against the Franks that Nur al-Din was to base his propaganda campaign as he expanded his influence over the Muslim Levant.

The conversion of the Turks and the 'Sunni Revival'

Before proceeding to Nur al-Din's propaganda activities, it is worth pausing to consider two interlinked factors in the historical context in which they took place. As indicated earlier, when large numbers of Turks migrated into Muslim lands in the 11th century, they and their followers converted to Sunni Islam. The standard historical narrative has been that the Turks converted fairly quickly, adopting Islam and becoming staunch defenders of orthodox Sunni interpretations of the faith. As we have seen in Chapter 2, in 1055, the Sunni Seljuk Turks ousted the Shiʿite Buyids from power, thus replacing the Shiʿite caliphal 'deputy' with a Sunni one. Under the Buyids, Shiʿites had enjoyed considerably more freedom of worship than they had previously, receiving official recognition and support. In the 10th century, other Shiʿite dynasties had also established themselves as rulers in various parts of the Muslim world, including, as we have seen, the Fatimids in Egypt, and in the eastern Muslim world a struggle for supremacy was taking place between Sunni and Shiʿite rulers and scholars. As a result, when they advanced westwards the Seljuks found themselves drawn into this struggle, patronizing Sunni scholars and institutions in what is commonly termed the 'Sunni revival' of the 11th century. Of particular importance were *madrasas*, where Sunni Islam was studied and promoted and which became the standard institutions for the education of religious scholars and state officials. With the support of the new rulers, these and other Sunni religious institutions spread across the Great Seljuk Sultanate. However, the internecine conflict that followed the death of Malik-Shah distracted the political classes from their support of religious institutions, with the result that the revival slowed, though in some cities such as Damascus we continue to see the foundation of *madrasas* and other religious buildings (Tabbaa, 2001: 19–21).

However, this narrative has recently been challenged by scholars, principally on the basis of two questions: Was the conversion of the Turks really as rapid as has been previously assumed? And who was really responsible for the Sunni revival? With regard to the first question, as Carole Hillenbrand has pointed

out, the Sunni Arab and Persian Muslim authors who describe their Turkic overlords are certainly keen to make their readers believe that their masters had quickly become pious Muslims, probably in order to make the best of the less-than-ideal political situation of the day and encourage co-operation between the politico-military and religious classes. However, such agendas do not prevent the sources from occasionally remarking on Turkic practices that the authors found strange or distasteful. Accounts of such practices are even more prominent in the works of crusader sources, who had no reason to downplay them. Perhaps one of the most gruesome examples concerns the death of Gervase of Basoches, the Frankish ruler of Tiberias; according to one Muslim writer, after capturing him in 1108, Tughtigin opened up his prisoner's skull while the latter was still alive, scooped out its contents and drank wine from it. Gervase allegedly only died an hour later. Other Muslim authors are generally more evasive, and Frankish sources describe Tughtigin scalping his prisoner after having him executed rather than opening his skull while he was still alive (Hillenbrand, 2011: 459–63).

Naturally, such stories contain a fair amount of exaggeration; as Carole Hillenbrand has noted, some of the Muslim, principally Arab, writers had a tendency to portray the Turks as impious and barbaric (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 552–53; consider also the stories of Ilghazi's drinking binge and Zangi's drunken demise, mentioned previously). Yet recently, scholars have suggested that the Turks' adoption of Islam that started in the 11th century was indeed a more drawn-out process than had been previously thought, and there is certainly evidence to suggest that a number of their pre-Islamic practices persisted for some considerable time. We have records, for example, of burials with grave goods; use of astrology; drinking of alcohol; and, most pertinently here, unpleasant ways of executing foes and dealing with their corpses, including scalping and the use of their skulls as drinking vessels. This is not to say that some of these practices, such as astrology, cruel methods of execution, and the drinking of alcohol, were not already happening in the Muslim world when the Turks arrived, but the sources do remark on the persistence of these practices among the Turks after their immigration and nominal conversion. In any case, although the actual likelihood of Gervase of Basoches surviving his treatment at the hands of Tughtigin for an hour is highly questionable, the previous story may be a reflection of actual scalping practices undertaken by Turkic warriors at the time, and the same may be said of the subsequent use of his skull; this would indeed seem to attest to a more gradual or uneven conversion of the Turkic ruling class to Islam than has previously been assumed (Morton, 2015: passim; Hillenbrand, 2011: 463–68). It is, of course, also possible that the circulation of such stories was also actually encouraged by the Turkic rulers in the region, since it made rebellion against them an

intimidating prospect, thus reinforcing their positions.

Meanwhile, who was really responsible for the Sunni revival? Recently, scholars have increasingly come to see the responsibility as lying primarily with the religious scholars rather than the rulers. These scholars were, however, supported from both above and below. They certainly benefitted from the patronage of rulers, who were able to supply the funds necessary for the construction of religious buildings such as *madrasas* through which Sunni interpretations of Islam could be propagated, and the patronage of rulers also certainly helped to legitimize the scholars' claims to be spokesmen for orthodoxy. However, they also benefitted from the support of the common folk who accepted their teachings, and it is worth remembering that even in states where Shi'ites ruled, the great majority of the Muslims were Sunni. As Jonathan Berkey has pointed out, the Sunni revival was a process that served to homogenize interpretations of Islam rather than to resurrect abandoned beliefs and practices. Richard Bulliet has coined the term 'Sunni recentering' as a preferable descriptor of this process, which Berkey supports on the basis that it encompasses both Sunni-Shi'ite relations and developments *within* Sunni Islam (Berkey, 2003: 189–202). Given the rather loose adherence to orthodox Islam that we have seen earlier among some of the members of the Turkic elite, when the nature of the Sunni re-centring is taken into account, it is difficult to accept their presentation in the sources as zealous promoters of orthodox Sunni Islam and rather more believable that the impetus to orthodoxy came from elsewhere, even if individual rulers did then have a hand in helping to propagate it for their own reasons. At the same time, the point about the reduction of elite patronage of religious institutions as a result of the internal conflicts that plagued the state at the end of the 11th century still stands. However, as Berkey has pointed out, the crusades themselves were a challenge that had a quickening effect on the Sunni re-centring (Berkey, 2003: 198–202); as we will see subsequently, Nur al-Din was instrumental in the manifestation of this revitalized form of Sunni Islam.

Nur al-Din: 'La Plaque Tournante'?

Emmanuel Sivan refers to Nur al-Din as 'la plaque tournante' (the pivot), viewing his reign as a decisive period that saw the *jihad* become a major factor in the spiritual and political life of *Bilad al-Sham* and, to a lesser extent, the surrounding regions (Sivan, 1968: 59). Certainly Nur al-Din employed *jihad* propaganda in a widespread manner in his efforts to expand his power and territory in the region; indeed, devotion to the *jihad* was a major characteristic through which he sought to assert his position as a pious Muslim ruler who was deserving of popular support. Soon after taking power, Nur al-Din

embarked on a propaganda campaign that acted as a revival of the Sunni revival (or a revival of the Sunni re-centring), seeking to promote Sunni Islam in his domains and advocate for Muslim unity against the Franks. This campaign expressed its aims in a number of ways. Like his Seljuk predecessors, Nur al-Din sponsored the foundation of numerous religious institutions, including *madrasas* in particular. Lev has noted that during Nur al-Din's reign, 56 *madrasas* were founded in the territories that his domain eventually encompassed; before his reign, there were only 16 (Lev, 2008: 275). These were, naturally, not the only religious institutions that Nur al-Din sponsored. In addition to *madrasas*, there were also lodges and convents for Sufis, shrines, mosques, and in particular the celebrated *dar al-ʿadl* mentioned previously, which was built in Damascus in about 1163; Ibn al-Athir sees the foundation of this institution as so representative of the piously just activity of Nur al-Din that he devotes a section of his dynastic history of the Zangids to it (Ibn al-Athir, 1963: 168). In addition to building mosques, Nur al-Din also added to or restored a number of older mosques, in particular building several minarets between 1165 and 1170. This included adding minarets to a number of small mosques in Damascus that would not normally have had them. These minarets, towering over the urban landscape, acted as witnesses to the Islamic identity of the cities in which they were built and testified to Islam's dominance there, and in the case of Damascus, they also emphasized its role as Nur al-Din's centre of *jihad* propaganda (Tabbaa, 1986: 235–36).

Tabbaa has shown that the foundation of these various religious institutions was also accompanied by careful consideration of the ways that they should be decorated. In line with earlier precedents, vegetal and geometric ornament (arabesque) was used, through the naturalistic but also geometrically ordered shapes that it employed, to make allusions to the garden of Paradise and the divinely ordered universe. Meanwhile, *muqarnas* (stalactite or honeycomb) vaulting, reflecting Baghdadi models, reinforced Nur al-Din's ties with the ʿAbbasid caliphate while also invoking both the heavens and the idea of an atomistic universe under divine control. At the same time, new, more legible cursive forms of Arabic script were employed for inscriptions, thus making their texts easier to read and hence more effective as communicators of messages. In addition, the scripts were clearly different from Fatimid ones and reflected ʿAbbasid precedents, again reinforcing Nur al-Din's demonstrations of loyalty to the ʿAbbasid caliphs (Tabbaa, 2001: passim).

As Tabbaa has noted, the inscriptions that were made on monuments sponsored by Nur al-Din show important differences from those made for his father. In particular, Nur al-Din largely abandoned his father's use of Turkish titles and opted instead for purely Arabic ones, in order to emphasize his position as the ruler of an Arab state. The most prominent of his titles were

al-'adil (the just) and *al-mujahid* (the wager of *jihad*) (Tabbaa, 1986: 226). Thus Nur al-Din sought to emphasize both the just nature of his rule and his devotion to the *jihad*. Probably the best known of the monuments that Nur al-Din patronized was a *minbar* (pulpit), which he commissioned around 1168, probably with the intention of placing it in the Aqsa Mosque in Jerusalem once he had reconquered the holy city. Nur al-Din did not live long enough to see his wish fulfilled, but the *minbar* was subsequently placed in the mosque by Saladin, where it remained until it was destroyed by a Christian fanatic in 1969. Among its inscriptions is the following:

The slave needy of [God's] mercy, the one who is thankful for His favour, the *mujahid* for His cause, the one stationed to fight against the enemies of His faith, al-Malik al-'Adil [the Just King] Nur al-Din [Light of the Faith], the pillar of Islam and the Muslims, the establisher of the rights of the oppressed against oppressors, Abu'l-Qasim Mahmud ibn Zangi ibn Aksungur, the helper of the Commander of the Faithful [the caliph], commissioned the construction [of this *minbar*]. May God honour his victories and preserve his power. May He exalt his signs and spread his standards and banners to the east and west. May He strengthen the supporters of his state and abase those who are ungrateful for his favour. May He grant him conquest with His help and gladden his eyes with victory and closeness to Him. At Your mercy, O God of the Worlds! That took place in the months of the year 564 [1168–69].

(*Matériaux pour un Corpus Inscriptionum Arabicarum*, 1925: 394; Tabbaa, 1986: 233; Lev, 2008: 271)

If this inscription were to be taken at face value, it would seem that Nur al-Din was hoping to achieve great victories in the military *jihad* in his own lifetime, and if we accept that the *minbar* was made for the Aqsa Mosque, then it would also seem that, at least at the time of its construction, Nur al-Din's primary target was Jerusalem. It is also worth noting that the language used emphasizes Nur al-Din's desire to achieve closeness to God and to receive God's support (Tabbaa, 1986: 233). Thus we see Nur al-Din fusing his assertions of piety and obedience to God with his military *jihad* against the Franks, with a particular focus on Jerusalem.

The increasing importance of Jerusalem in the Muslim counter-crusading consciousness is also discernible in the literature and other written documents that we have from Nur al-Din's reign. Particularly tantalizing are letters written in 1162 and 1173 by Nur al-Din, in which the sultan himself expresses his desire to conquer the holy city (Sivan, 1968: 63; Hillenbrand, 1999a: 151). Also of particular relevance is the *fada'il* literature relating to Jerusalem. As indicated previously, *fada'il* works concentrated on the merits of a particular

place or practice. Such merits were normally articulated principally through the collection of quotations from the *Qur'an* and *hadith* that illustrated the merits of the place or practice about which the author was writing, with the author often adding commentary and explanations thereof. Even before the crusades, *fada'il* works on Jerusalem had been written by a number of authors; the earliest known work in this regard is *Fada'il al-Bayt al-Muqaddas* (The Merits of Jerusalem), written in 1019 by Muhammad ibn Ahmad al-Wasiti, a religious scholar from the Shafi'i school who preached in the Aqsa Mosque *[Doc. 8]*. During the latter half of the 12th century, the number of works of this type being written or disseminated grew rapidly and continued to do so in the following centuries (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 162–63). Al-Wasiti's work itself was used in both preaching and writing by a number of later scholars, including such distinguished figures as Ibn al-Jawzi, mentioned previously, and the Damascene Ibn 'Asakir (1105–76), who were important figures in the propagation of Nur al-Din's propaganda. In particular, Sivan credits Ibn 'Asakir with the revival of the genre (Dajani-Shakeel, 1986: 206; Sivan, 1968: 62–70).

Figure 4.1 Nur al-Din's *minbar* in the Aqsa Mosque, Jerusalem

Source: Nur al-Din's *minbar* (pulpit) in the Aqsa Mosque, Jerusalem. Nur al-Din commissioned this around 1168, probably intending to place it in the Aqsa Mosque once he had conquered Jerusalem. It was placed there by Saladin after the conquest of 1187 and remained there until it was destroyed by a Christian fanatic in 1969. Image © Ashmolean Museum, University of Oxford.

Why was Jerusalem so important? As Hadia Dajani-Shakeel has demonstrated, the city was important to the Muslims of the time for a range of reasons, which can be grouped under three major themes. First, Abraham, regarded as the first Muslim, the builder of the Ka'ba, and the father of Ishmael, lived in Jerusalem before he moved to Mecca, and many traditions linked the two cities and suggested that Muslims had the right to control them both. Jerusalem was also home to other prophets, and Hebron, nearby, was the site of Abraham's grave. Second, Jerusalem was both the original direction of prayer for the Muslims and the city to which the Prophet Muhammad travelled on his *isra'* (miraculous night journey), subsequently rising on his *mi'raj* (ascension) to visit the heavens and meet with God, with the Dome of the Rock being seen as marking the actual place from which he ascended. Thus, it was an important pilgrimage destination. Finally, Jerusalem was regarded as the future site of the Last Judgement, and being buried there was regarded as being particularly meritorious (Dajani-Shakeel, 1986: 206–13). Thus, in giving prominence to the city in propaganda, Nur al-Din and his successors drew on a powerful symbol that loomed large in Muslim views of their sacred past, present, and future.

Figure 4.2 The Dome of the Rock, Jerusalem

Source: The Dome of the Rock, Jerusalem. Completed in 691 and repeatedly restored since, the Dome of the Rock marks the place from which, according to Muslim belief, the Prophet Muhammad ascended when he visited the heavens and met God. imageBROKER/Alamy Stock Photo.

The heightened atmosphere of *jihad* that existed during the reign of Nur al-Din also stimulated the production of other works on the topic. Poetic compositions by figures such as Ibn al-Qaysarani (1085–1154), Ibn Munir (1080–1153), and 'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani (1125–1201) praise Nur al-Din's virtues and devotion to the *jihad*. In addition to the *fada'il* works on Jerusalem, the period also sees the increased production of *fada'il* works on the topic of *jihad*, as well as other works on similar themes (al-Sulami's work, mentioned in Chapter 3, falls into this category); for example, Ibn 'Asakir himself produced, at Nur al-Din's request, a compilation of 40 *hadiths* on the topic of *jihad* that could be used to encourage the Muslim *mujahidin* and which proved to be highly influential in the centuries that followed (Mourad and Lindsay, 2007: 37–55, 2013: passim). Meanwhile in Aleppo, Nur al-Din's original capital, an anonymous author produced a work in Persian entitled *Bahr al-Fava'id* (The Sea of Beneficial Information). This work falls into a genre found in both Muslim and Christian writing called 'Mirrors for Princes', works that were intended to provide guides for good conduct to rulers. The Aleppine author devotes significant attention to the subject of *jihad*, both in its greater and lesser manifestations, as well as providing some less than positive impressions about Christianity (see Chapter 7); in this way, his work seems to reflect the atmosphere of the times. It also seems likely that rousing *jihad* sermons, the texts of which have for the most part not survived, were being given in mosques throughout the lands held by Nur al-Din (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 161–67).

The sheer magnitude of the *jihad* propaganda campaign mounted by Nur al-Din is impressive, but to what extent can we regard it as proof that Nur al-Din was genuinely motivated by piety and a desire to wage the *jihad*, and to what extent should we regard it as a tool that he used to serve his political ambitions? Clearly a number of writers and architects of the time sought to portray Nur al-Din as devoted to the *jihad* and to pious, just Muslim rule. However, a number of modern scholars, including Michael Köhler, Taef El-Azhari, and Yaacov Lev, have questioned Nur al-Din's apparent devotion to the holy war. As indicated earlier, Köhler regards Nur al-Din's use of *jihad* propaganda as simply a way of advancing his political ambitions (Köhler, 2013: 182–83, 208). Lev concurs with Köhler and also argues that Nur al-Din's promotion of Sunni Islam was similarly motivated (Lev, 2008: 276–77). El-Azhari, in the meantime, points out that the propaganda call to Muslim unity

for the *jihad* that Nur al-Din mounted when seeking to negotiate the takeover of Damascus was supplemented by an economic blockade aimed at starving the city into submission (El-Azhari, 1997: 264–70). Certainly it is also striking that Nur al-Din frequently waged war on fellow Muslims, which arguably calls into question his concern for the welfare of the Muslim community. However, it is equally striking how *personally* involved Nur al-Din seems to have been in various activities related to the promotion and conduct of the *jihad* in its various forms, when at times he could arguably have delegated such activities to others; he often led his own armies, and he himself would appear at the *dar al-ʿadl* in Damascus to hear the grievances of his subjects. He is also said to have adopted a more pious, ascetic lifestyle after two bouts of illness and a defeat by the Franks in 1163. While such activities could be interpreted as careful public-relations exercises, they can also be seen as testifying to genuine piety. With regard to the wars that Nur al-Din waged against other Muslims, he may have recognized that in the fractious political environment of the Muslim Levant, unity in the military *jihad* against the Franks was something that could only be imposed by force.

Of course, given the complexities of human nature, we should perhaps be wary of seeing Nur al-Din's activities (and those of later figures such as Saladin) in terms of a binary model that places religious piety and political ambition in opposition to one another. Nur al-Din may well have viewed his political and territorial aims as being appropriate within the context of his faith, with the gains that he made being divinely granted rewards for his piety and devotion, as well as a sign from God that his cause was just and his conduct righteous. Thus, his religious beliefs and worldly desires could be seen as inextricably linked rather than automatically opposed to one another. Ultimately, it is impossible to tell to what extent Nur al-Din was motivated by religious zeal or political goals, but the end result of his efforts was that the Muslims of the region experienced a heightened atmosphere of Sunni piety and *jihad* sentiment, with Nur al-Din himself at its centre.

Saladin and Nur al-Din

As indicated previously, Saladin became the new Fatimid vizier after the death of Shirkuh in 1169. Nur al-Din seems to have expected Saladin to abolish the Fatimid caliphate as soon as possible and rule Egypt as his deputy, but from early on, Saladin seems to have shown signs of resistance that Nur al-Din found troubling. In spring of 1170, in response to a request from Saladin, Nur al-Din sent Saladin's father Najm al-Din Ayyub to Egypt, possibly aiming in the process to remind his deputy of his obligations. He then wrote to Saladin in June 1171 demanding that the latter establish ʿAbbasid authority in Egypt,

something that the latter did only after a further delay of over two months (Lyons and Jackson, 1984: 38, 45–46). Nur al-Din then ordered Saladin to join him in an attack on Frankish Transjordan. Saladin set out with an army and attacked Shawbak, but then withdrew before meeting with Nur al-Din, claiming that there were disturbances in Cairo that had to be dealt with. Nur al-Din refused to accept Saladin's excuses and prepared to depose Saladin, but relented when the latter wrote to re-affirm his loyalty [*Doc. 9*]. Yet Saladin continued to be uncooperative thereafter, and in 1174, the exasperated Nur al-Din prepared an expedition to Egypt to bring his deputy to heel; however, he died before he could set out, and Saladin was spared his sovereign's anger.

Saladin's reluctance to co-operate with Nur al-Din is perhaps understandable; he must have recognized the usefulness of having a Frankish 'buffer zone' between his territories and those of his superior, though as Lyons and Jackson note, it is unlikely that he was so obtuse as to need this to be pointed out to him, as Ibn al-Athir asserts. By the same token, by avoiding meeting with Nur al-Din in 1171, he also avoided being removed from his position as ruler of Egypt by his lord, which enabled him to consolidate his position and establish his independence there (Lyons and Jackson, 1984: 48). As a result of this, he was well placed to expand his influence into *Bilad al-Sham* after Nur al-Din's death.

Conclusion

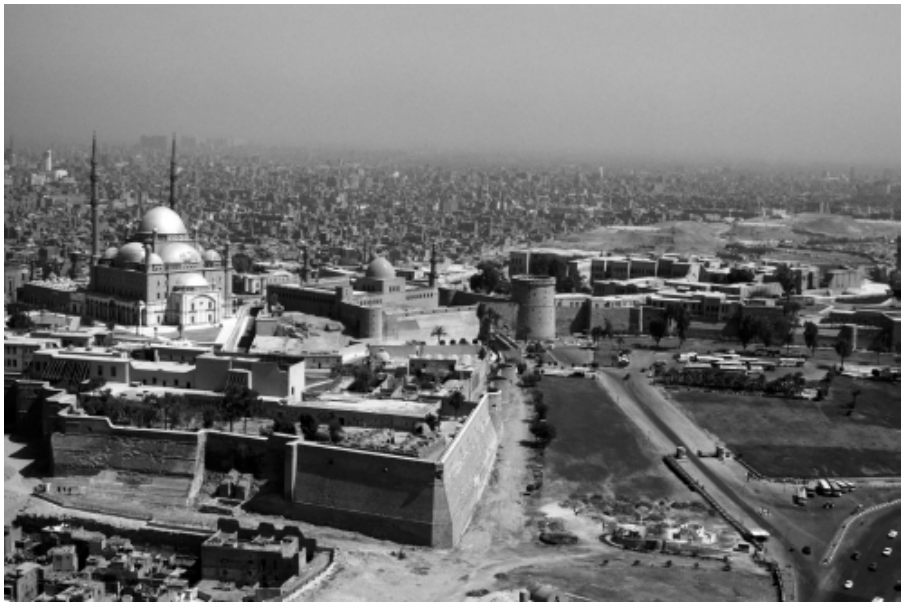
The period covered by this chapter sees the seeds of *jihad* sentiment that we saw planted in the previous chapter grow, under Nur al-Din's patronage, into a wide-ranging and dynamic propaganda campaign. Through a variety of means, Nur al-Din sought to promote both Muslim unity under his command in the military *jihad* against the Franks and, in a more widespread fashion, a reinvigoration of orthodox Sunni Islam. This campaign included not only the propagation of his image as the *mujahid par excellence* in both written texts and architecture (including architectural decoration and inscriptions) but also the return of Egypt to the fold of Sunni Islam through the destruction of the Fatimid caliphate.

In the meantime, the Muslims were also learning more about the Franks, in the process becoming ever more adept at exploiting the divisions between them. This, in combination with increasing Muslim unity, enabled the Muslims to mount more effective resistance to the crusaders. Elisséeff sees the defeat of the crusaders at Damascus in 1148 as the turning point in the history of the Latin states, in that to him it foreshadowed the eventual victory over the Franks of a unified Syro-Egyptian polity (Elisséeff, 1967: Vol. 2: 426). It is that eventual unification and victory, as well as their aftermath, that we will trace

in the next chapter.

Further reading

The standard work on Nur al-Din is Nikita Elisséeff's monumental study, *Nur ad-Din: Un Grand Prince Musulman de Syrie au Temps des Croisades (511–569 H./1118–1174)* (1967). On Nur al-Din's career and propaganda campaign, see also Carole Hillenbrand, *The Crusades: Islamic Perspectives*; Michael Köhler, *Alliances and Treaties between Frankish and Muslim Rulers in the Middle East*; Yaacov Lev, 'The *Jihad* of Sultan Nur al-Din of Syria'; and (on poetry) Hadia Dajani-Shakeel, '*Jihad* in Twelfth-Century Arabic Poetry' and Osman Latiff, *The Cutting Edge of the Poet's Sword*. On Ibn 'Asakir in particular, see Suleiman A. Mourad and James E. Lindsay, *The Intensification and Reorientation of Sunni Jihad Ideology in the Crusader Period: Ibn 'Asakir of Damascus (1105–1176) and His Age, with an Edition and Translation of Ibn 'Asakir's* The Forty Hadiths for Inciting Jihad (2013); their 'Rescuing Syria from the Infidels: The Contribution of Ibn 'Asakir of Damascus to the *Jihad* Campaign of Sultan Nur al-Din' (2007); and James E. Lindsay (ed.), *Ibn 'Asakir and Early Islamic History* (2001). For further discussion of religious life in the period, see Daniella Talmon-Heller, *Islamic Piety in Medieval Syria: Mosques, Cemeteries and Sermons under the Zangids and Ayyubids (1146–1260)* (2007). On the conversion of the Turks, see Nicholas Morton, 'The Saljuq Turks' Conversion to Islam: The Crusading Sources' (2015) and Carole Hillenbrand, 'What's in a Name? Tughtegin – "the Minister of the Antichrist"?' (2011). For a useful discussion of the Sunni revival/Sunni re-centring, see Jonathan P. Berkey, *The Formation of Islam* (2003). On architecture and inscriptions, see Yasser Tabbaa, 'Monuments with a Message: Propagation of *Jihad* under Nur al-Din (1146–74)' (1986) and *The Transformation of Islamic Art during the Sunni Revival* (2001). Taef Kamal al-Azhari's *The Saljuqs of Syria during the Crusades* contains discussions of the impacts of the Second Crusade and Nur al-Din's takeover on Damascus. Further reading on the career of Saladin will be provided in the next chapter, but on the Egyptian period, see in particular Yaacov Lev, *Saladin in Egypt* (1999).



5 Victory and stalemate, 1174–1193

We will now turn our attention fully to the career of Saladin. After our initial chronological overview, we will discuss the problems that historians face when seeking to uncover the true face of the sultan. Subsequently, we will examine the means through which he established and articulated power in the Muslim Levant. Then we will consider his victory at Hattin and conquest of most of the Frankish states, followed by his struggle to defend these conquests against the forces of the so-called Third Crusade that eventually led to a stalemate and peace agreement. In the process, we will assess his overall impact on the Levant and its political and religious environments.

Chronological overview

Nur al-Din's only son and successor, al-Salih Isma'il, was only eleven when his father died, and there immediately ensued a dispute over who was to serve as

regent. Power was quickly established at Aleppo by a triumvirate of Nur al-Din's emirs, the foremost of whom was called Gümüshtigin. They secured the transferral of al-Salih Ismaʿil to Aleppo and ruled there in his name. Although he did make an immediate profession of loyalty to his young overlord, Saladin did not intervene directly in the establishment of the regency. He was occupied in Egypt, in particular with defending Alexandria against an attack made by Sicilian Norman forces in July–August 1174. However, in October, he responded to appeals for help from the emirs ruling in Damascus and Busra, setting out northwards with an army. Both Busra and Damascus surrendered to Saladin; there was brief resistance from the citadel of Damascus, but otherwise the takeover occurred without difficulty.

Saladin's takeover of Damascus was in some senses a prelude to what would turn out to be 12 years of periodic conflict between Saladin and his supporters on the one side and Saladin's opponents, principally members of the Zangid dynasty who still ruled at Mosul and Aleppo, on the other. Over the next two years, Saladin took control of much of southern *Bilad al-Sham* and also conducted campaigns against his opponents in the north, repeatedly besieging Aleppo and defeating the Zangids twice in battle, at the Horns of Hamah on 13 April 1175 and at Tall al-Sultan on 22 April 1176. A peace agreement was concluded on 29 July 1176, but the death of al-Salih Ismaʿil on 4 December 1181 gave Saladin the pretext to intervene again at Aleppo, which he claimed was, according to caliphal decree, meant to pass to him after al-Salih's death. Saladin set out for northern *Bilad al-Sham* again in May 1182. Over the next year, he took control of a number of strongholds and cities in the region, and on 11 June 1183, after a three-week siege, he finally received the handover of Aleppo. Three years later, after another long campaign during which he almost died of illness, Saladin secured a treaty with Mosul that included recognition of his authority and a guarantee of military support. In addition to his other diplomatic and military ventures in northern *Bilad al-Sham*, by this time Saladin had also sent emirs to conquer both Yemen and much of eastern North Africa, so that his authority was now recognized from Tawzar in the west to Mosul in the east and from Akhlat in the north to Aden in the south (Eddé, 2011: 67–89).

It was during this early period that Saladin also came to terms with Sinan, the head of the Syrian Nizari Assassins. Acting in collusion with Gümüshtigin, the Nizaris attacked Saladin twice, in January 1175 and May 1176, and after the second attack, he would sometimes have a wooden tower or palisade built in his camp so that he could sleep more securely. He attacked Sinan's fortress of Masyaf in August 1176 but broke off the siege after a week, in mysterious circumstances. The sources are divided regarding why he broke off the attack. Some maintain that the Nizaris threatened Saladin's uncle Shihab al-Din, and

he persuaded his nephew to abandon the siege. Others suggest that Saladin had to break off the siege to deal with other threats. An Isma'ili source claims that Saladin was frightened off by Sinan's supernatural powers (Eddé, 2011: 392–94; Daftary, 2007: 369–70). Whatever the truth of the matter, it is striking that from this moment on Saladin and Sinan left each other alone, although the Nizaris continued to strike at other targets.

While Saladin was expanding his authority beyond Egypt, he also concerned himself with fighting against the Franks. The Sicilian attack on Alexandria, mentioned previously, was but one of several raids that would be made by the Franks on Egypt in the 1170s and 1180s, and Saladin devoted a significant amount of resources to strengthening the fortifications of both Cairo and a number of the ports on the Egyptian coast, including Alexandria, Tinnis, and Damietta. He likewise built fortifications to protect the routes linking Egypt and southern *Bilad al-Sham* through the Sinai Peninsula. Saladin also went on the offensive; in 1177, he launched a raid into southern Palestine, but despite some initial success, his force was surprised and scattered by a Frankish counter-offensive at Mont Gisard, near Ramla, with Saladin himself barely escaping with his life. Later campaigns were more successful. In 1179, Saladin's troops defeated the Franks in battle twice, in the Jawlan (Golan) in April and again at Marj 'Uyun in June. In August, he destroyed the castle of Bayt al-Ahzan (Vadum Iacob/Jacob's Ford), which was at the time less than a year old and not even completed; then he raided the area around Tiberias, Tyre, and Beirut before returning to Damascus (Eddé, 2011: 198–200).

Figure 5.1 The Citadel of Cairo, Egypt

Source: The Citadel of Cairo, Egypt. Saladin ordered the construction of the citadel in 1176. Work was continued by his brother al-'Adil Muhammad and later rulers. Now the Mosque of Muhammad 'Ali Pasha (bt. 1828–48) dominates the skyline. © Aga Khan Trust for Culture/ Gary Otte (photographer).

Muslim forces made more raids on the Kingdom of Jerusalem in May–July 1182, but a new dimension was added to the conflict in 1183 through the belligerence of Reynald of Châtillon, lord of Kerak and Transjordan. In that year, Reynald launched a naval raid into the Red Sea. His sailors plundered 'Aydhab and sank a pilgrim ship, attacked the Hijaz coast, and captured a number of merchant ships. The precise objective of Reynald's expedition remains a matter of debate among modern scholars, but rumours circulated among the Muslims that he planned to attack the holy cities of Mecca and Medina and perhaps even to steal the remains of the Prophet Muhammad. The Frankish fleet was quickly opposed by a Muslim one under the admiral Husam al-Din Lu'lu', who destroyed it and hunted down the survivors. The prisoners were transported to Cairo and Mecca, where they were publicly executed as

punishment for their sacrilegious ambitions (Lyons and Jackson, 1984: 186–87; Eddé, 2011: 194–95). Saladin followed this up with two attacks on Kerak in October–December 1183 and August 1184, although its citadel was not taken in either case. After the second siege, Saladin raided Frankish territories further north before returning to Damascus. The following year, he agreed to a truce proposed by Raymond III of Tripoli (r. 1152–87), who at the time was acting as regent for the underage King Baldwin V of Jerusalem (r. 1185–86). This conveniently enabled him to concentrate his attention on the final conflict with Mosul.

Saladin was already preparing to renew the holy war against the Franks when Reynald of Châtillon gave him a reason to re-open hostilities. In early 1187, Reynald seized a caravan travelling between Egypt and *al-Sham* and then refused Saladin's demands that he free the prisoners and return the goods that he had taken. Saladin, apparently incensed, swore (for the second time, since he had already done so on a previous occasion) that he would kill Reynald if he ever got the opportunity and, using the broken truce as justification, mustered his troops. Initial raids were made on a number of points on the frontier with the Franks; then Saladin gathered his forces, which probably numbered about 30,000 men, at Busra. The Franks in turn mustered their army of about 20,000 men at Sepphoris (Saffuriyya; Eddé, 2011: 206–8). On 2 July, in an effort to lure the Frankish army out, Saladin attacked and took Tiberias, trapping its remaining defenders, including Raymond of Tripoli's wife, Eschiva, in its citadel. That night the Franks met to decide on a response. What exactly happened in their discussion is unclear, but the following morning, Guy of Lusignan, the king of Jerusalem (r. 1186–92), ordered the advance. The Frankish army marched towards Tiberias. Saladin abandoned the siege of the citadel of Tiberias and sent units of horse-archers to harass the Frankish flanks, in the meantime surrounding the Frankish army and cutting its access to sources of water. Thirsty and drained by the heat, the army headed for the village of Hattin, which had plentiful springs of water, but Muslim pressure prevented the Franks from reaching their goal, and they were forced to camp for the night.

On the morning of 4 July, the Frankish army, harassed by Muslim skirmishers, attempted to march on to Lake Tiberias. In addition to maintaining a constant hail of arrows, the Muslims started brushfires that only exacerbated the heat and thirst that were already taking their toll on the Frankish army. Raymond III of Tripoli attempted to break the cordon by leading the vanguard in a charge on the Muslim ranks, but the Muslims opened their lines and allowed the charge to pass through, shooting at the Frankish knights as they passed. The remnants of the vanguard were allowed to escape and played no further part in the battle. The Franks took refuge on

the slopes of the twin-peaked hill known as the Horns of Hattin, where they pitched the king's red tent. Further attempts to charge the Muslim ranks failed, the Frankish infantry were scattered, and eventually the king's tent fell. The king and many senior members of the nobility, including Reynald of Châtillon and Gerard of Ridefort, the Master of the Knights Templar, were captured, and the relic of the True Cross was taken. The Knights Templar and Knights Hospitaller, implacable enemies of the Muslims, were put to the sword, as were the turcopoles, locally recruited, lightly armed horsemen considered traitors and apostates by the Muslims. The remaining Frankish prisoners were enslaved, and the market would subsequently become so flooded with them that their value would collapse.

Saladin, meanwhile, had King Guy and Reynald brought to his tent. Observing that the king was frightened and thirsty, he sought to calm him and gave him iced water to drink. However, when Guy passed this on to Reynald, Saladin hastened to point out that he had not authorized this and was thus not bound by the laws of hospitality, which would have obliged the sultan to spare his old enemy. Later he separated the two and reproached Reynald for his crimes, and when the latter showed neither repentance nor a willingness to convert to Islam, struck him in the shoulder with his sword. Reynald was beheaded and dragged away past the king, who became convinced that he would be next. However, Saladin hastened to reassure him, commenting (in the words of his army judge Baha' al-Din ibn Shaddad [d. 1234]), 'It has not been customary for princes to kill princes, but this man transgressed his limits' (Ibn Shaddad, 2001: 75, but see also *Doc. 10*).

Without the field army to protect it, Saladin's conquest of the Kingdom of Jerusalem was swift. One after another, over the course of a year, Frankish castles and cities fell to Saladin's forces, with the exception of Tyre, which had managed to withstand Saladin's siege. Jerusalem itself was besieged in September 1187, and initially Saladin refused to give its inhabitants terms, intending to reciprocate for the crusaders' conquest of 1099. However, he was persuaded to accept the city's capitulation on 2 October by its commander, Balian of Ibelin, who threatened to kill the Muslim prisoners therein and destroy its holy sites. The inhabitants were allowed to leave upon payment of a ransom, and chroniclers from both sides tell of the generosity with which Saladin excused many prisoners from payment or enslavement; indeed, Christian sources remark that both Saladin and his brother (probably meaning al-'Adil Muhammad [d. 1218]) personally paid the ransoms of thousands of people who could not afford them, while Muslim sources note that the actual collection of the ransoms was so poorly managed that many others were able to escape without paying. In all, about 16,000 Franks actually became slaves, out of a population of between 60,000 and 100,000 (Eddé, 2011: 218–20; *Doc.*

10).

By the beginning of 1189, all that remained of the Kingdom of Jerusalem were a few scattered fortresses, and the County of Tripoli and Principality of Antioch had also seen their territories significantly reduced. Saladin had freed Guy of Lusignan the previous summer on the condition that he promise not to fight the Muslims, but the king had been absolved from his vow by the Christian clergy. In August, accompanied by his wife, Queen Sybilla, and their two daughters, he arrived at the now Muslim-held Acre with an army and a Pisan fleet, with which he besieged the city. Saladin attempted to remove the besiegers but was having difficulty keeping adequate forces in the field and so was unable to achieve this. He began to look more widely for support, and we have a record that in 1190 he even sent a letter to the Almohad caliph al-Mansur (r. 1184–99). At the time, the Almohads were focused on securing their territories in western North Africa, even as their holdings in Iberia were suffering from attacks by the Christians to the north, and Saladin's diplomatic effort did not generate a helpful response (Eddé, 2011: 85–89; Cobb, 2014: 181–82).

Saladin's conquest of Jerusalem had caused dismay in Europe, leading to the departure of new armies on what many modern historians call the Third Crusade. The Holy Roman Emperor Frederick I Barbarossa (r. 1152–90), King Philip II Augustus of France (r. 1180–1223), and King Richard I the Lionheart of England (r. 1189–99) took the cross and headed east with their troops. Frederick marched overland but drowned en route in the Göksu (Saleph) river in Cilician Armenia. The German army broke up, with some crusaders returning home, and the others taking the unfortunate emperor's remains and continuing their journey. Eventually, further decimated by enemy attacks and disease, the heavily reduced remainder joined Guy's forces in their siege of Acre. Meanwhile, Philip and Richard travelled by sea, landing at the port in, respectively, March and June 1191. As a result of the reinforcements provided by these new European contingents, the siege begun by Guy of Lusignan became a long, drawn-out affair that concluded with the Muslims being forced to surrender the city to the Franks on 12 July 1191. Philip returned home again almost immediately after, but Richard remained to lead an attempt to take Jerusalem from Saladin.

The capitulation of Acre had been agreed on the condition that Saladin return the relic of the True Cross, pay a ransom of 200,000 dinars, and free over 1,500 Christian prisoners. However, Saladin delayed, and in August, Richard lost patience and killed between 2,600 and 3,000 Muslim prisoners – an act that was greeted with great hostility by the Muslims. Richard then gathered his forces and marched south along the coast, heading for Jaffa. Saladin subjected the Frankish army to constant harassment, hoping to break its coherence, but

when he was finally able to provoke a battle at Arsuf (Arsur) on 7 September, his forces were badly defeated and the crusaders were subsequently able to take Jaffa. Saladin, in an effort to prevent the enemy from having a secure base from which to launch an assault on Jerusalem, razed Ascalon and other fortresses on the road between Jaffa and the holy city while simultaneously building up the defences of the latter. In October, the crusading force marched on Jerusalem, but was forced to turn back due to bad weather and doubts about supporting the attack. Richard instead re-fortified Ascalon before heading north to deal with disputes within the Frankish kingdom. May 1192 saw him back again; Darum (Dayr al-Balah), to the south of Ascalon, was taken by Richard's forces on 23 May, and on 24 June he seized a caravan coming from Egypt. He then launched a second march on Jerusalem, but was forced to turn back on 5 July, after having come within sight of the city, again due to concerns about adequately supporting the attack. Saladin almost took Jaffa on 30 July but had barely secured its surrender when Richard's forces arrived by sea and drove the Muslim army away.

Throughout Richard's crusade, Saladin conducted periodic negotiations with both the English king and the local Frankish rulers (some of whom opposed Richard). By the end of the summer of 1192, both Saladin and Richard had come to accept that they were at a stalemate. Richard could not adequately support an attack on Jerusalem, but Saladin could not muster enough forces to defeat the Franks completely. On 1–3 September, a treaty was drawn up and sworn to: a truce was made for three years and eight months; Jerusalem was to remain Muslim, but Christian pilgrims would be allowed to visit; the coast from Jaffa to Tyre would remain in Frankish hands; the defences of Ascalon, Darum, and Gaza would be demolished; Nazareth, Sepphoris, and Ascalon would be Saladin's; and the revenues of Ramla and Lydda would be shared (Eddé, 2011: 268–69). As Daftary has noted, Saladin also ensured that the Nizari holdings in *Bilad al-Sham* were included in the agreement. In April 1192, the Nizaris had sent a shockwave through the Frankish community when they killed Conrad of Montferrat, the new king of Jerusalem. Various sources blame Richard, Saladin, or Sinan for this act; the fact that the Nizari territories *were* included in the peace treaty might suggest that there was indeed a covert alliance by now between Saladin and Sinan, but this can only be speculation at this point (Daftary, 2007: 372–73).

After giving his agreement to the treaty, Richard left for Europe on 9 October 1192. Saladin, meanwhile, visited Jerusalem and Beirut before returning to Damascus. In the following winter, his health deteriorated, and on 20 February 1193, he fell seriously ill. Despite the efforts of his physicians, he died on the morning of 4 March 1193. Baha' al-Din notes, 'In God's name, I had heard from some people that they were desirous of ransoming those dear

to them with their own lives, but I only ever heard such an expression as a sort of exaggeration or poetic license until this day, as I knew for myself and for others that, had the purchase of his life been acceptable, we would have paid for it with our own' (Ibn Shaddad, 2001: 244).

The problem of the sources

Sources for the life of Saladin are plentiful and wide ranging in origin, for he is a prominent figure in both contemporary and later works by not only Muslim authors but also western European, eastern Christian, and Frankish writers. Yet despite this, he remains an enigmatic figure, presented in various guises depending on the viewpoints and agendas of the writers in question. We have already seen hints that Ibn al-Athir's partiality for the Zangid dynasty made him critical of Saladin (see Chapter 4 and *Doc. 9*), an attitude the vehemence of which is often exaggerated by historians in disregard of the occasions when he expresses respect and admiration for the sultan. However, we must also be suspicious of authors who do not express critical attitudes.

We are fortunate to have information about Saladin from three individuals who knew him intimately. Al-Qadi al-Fadil (d. 1200) was a close friend and advisor of Saladin's, as well as his vizier and the chief administrator of Egypt, and has left us hundreds of letters and documents that tell us much about both Saladin's policies and his personality. Al-Fadil was also the man who in 1175 employed, as a *katib* (chancery official and court poet) and his effective deputy vizier, a legal scholar, literary expert and poet known as 'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani (d. 1201); the latter soon became Saladin's personal secretary and *katib* and one of his closest advisors (Richter-Bernburg, 2014: 37–39). Al-Isfahani has left us several poetic and prose works, including two that tell us about Saladin's campaigns [*Doc. 10*]. Finally, Baha' al-Din ibn Shaddad, mentioned previously, was a well-known Mosuli jurist and *qadi* who entered Saladin's service in 1188 as judge of the army and soon became a close companion and confidant of the sultan; he is best known for his biography of Saladin, which includes an account of his master's virtues [*Doc. 11*]. This feature in Baha' al-Din's work typifies the issues that modern scholars face when working with these sources: all three men were close friends of Saladin, as well as being deeply involved in his efforts both to have his authority recognized in the Levant and to promote the military *jihad* against the Franks, and thus we cannot regard their accounts as being objective and unbiased, yet at the same time, their first-hand experience of the sultan and his activities makes them of immense value for the historical details that they supply (Eddé, 2011: 4–9). In this way, the works of all four of the authors mentioned here are emblematic of the wider dilemma that historians face when studying the past

in general; on the one hand, sources contemporary with their subjects are incredibly important as repositories of information, but on the other hand, there is always the challenge of disengaging this information from the agendas of the people who recorded it. In the case of Saladin, a controversial figure, such agendas are emphasized and only hide the real face of the sultan all the more.

The articulation of power

Like Nur al-Din, Saladin employed a number of techniques in order to have his authority acknowledged in Egypt and *Bilad al-Sham*. As Hillenbrand has noted, Saladin adopted the same methods used by Nur al-Din to promote his image as an epitome of piety and consequently the natural leader in the holy war against the Franks, including the foundation and restoration of religious institutions, patronage of poets and religious scholars, and numerous calls for the Muslims to unify with him so that he might re-take Jerusalem for Islam (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 175). However, what is striking is the magnitude of Saladin's efforts in this regard. His prolific correspondence included regular letters to the 'Abbasid caliph in Baghdad, expressing his loyalty and his dedication to the *jihad* and seeking caliphal recognition of his right to rule the territories that he conquered from other Muslim rulers. By the same token, in the Levant, he sought to win over both the politico-military and religious elites with his attestations of piety and devotion to the war against the Franks (Eddé, 2011: passim). Like Nur al-Din, he also sought to engender loyalty among his followers by becoming personally involved in the actions that he asked of them, leading armies himself and even 'mucking in' with his men, carrying stones himself to help build up the defences of Jerusalem in 1192 (Lyons and Jackson, 1984: 347). He also sought to promote a reputation for accessibility and just rule similar to that of Nur al-Din by making himself available on a regular basis to commoners who might wish to appeal to his justice [*Doc. 11*].

Saladin also sought to capitalize on associations with Nur al-Din in other ways. On 6 September 1176, he married 'Ismat al-Din, who was both Nur al-Din's widow and a daughter of Mu'in al-Din Unur, although not the mother of al-Salih Isma'il. In this way, he drew on a practice traditional among rulers to cement his position at Damascus and further lay claim to the heritage of Nur al-Din; the significance of this move is indicated by the fact that in 1182, the Zangid ruler of Mosul and Aleppo married al-Salih Isma'il's mother to strengthen his *own* claim to Nur al-Din's legacy (Eddé, 2011: 76–77). Even after the conquest of Jerusalem in 1187, Saladin continued to emphasize his links to his predecessor by placing the latter's *minbar* in the Aqsa Mosque in the holy city (see Chapter 4). Carole Hillenbrand has described the careers of Nur al-

Din and Saladin as a 'continuum' that together form the real turning point in the development of the Muslim counter-crusade (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 195). It certainly appears from his multifaceted propaganda campaign that Saladin wished them to be seen this way.

Naturally, in his dealings with both other Muslim rulers and the Franks, Saladin employed the traditional two-pronged approach of force and negotiations. Attacks on the Franks were easy to justify as part of his efforts in the military *jihad* against them, but he was criticized by both contemporary and modern scholars, including members of his own retinue, for his wars against other Muslims. Saladin justified his actions by arguing that the imperative of unification to fight the military *jihad* against the Franks should be recognized and obeyed by all Muslim rulers, and those who did not do so were more concerned with secular ambitions than the good of Islam and hence had to be compelled (Eddé, 2011: 93–94). Saladin's negotiations with Muslims were naturally acceptable, but diplomatic dealings with the Franks likewise required justification, particularly given that he himself was fiercely critical of the Zangids for negotiating with them. Saladin and his propagandists were always careful to present his own dealings with them as being both within the *Qur'an's* regulations and only undertaken when absolutely necessary; thus, they sought to preserve his image as a pious *mujahid*, reluctantly driven to treat with the enemy when there was no way to avoid it (Eddé, 2011: 271–73). In fact, Saladin undertook diplomatic relations with both the Franks and the Byzantines whenever it suited his needs, thus following the precedents of many earlier Muslim rulers, including Nur al-Din.

Although he occasionally ordered acts of shocking brutality, in both his diplomatic activities and his conduct of war, Saladin successfully cultivated a reputation for generosity and clemency. Both Muslim and non-Muslim sources commented on these qualities, albeit in both positive and negative ways. His panegyrists naturally drew on Islamic tradition in representing this conduct as entirely befitting an ideal Muslim ruler, but both they and other authors also sometimes questioned the actual value of such qualities. 'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani, for example, expresses regret that Saladin's generosity at Jerusalem resulted in the loss of substantial wealth for his treasury, while Ibn al-Athir states that Saladin's habit of freeing Frankish prisoners taken in battle contributed directly to his failure to take Tyre in 1187, since the Franks freed by Saladin went there and swelled its garrison (al-Isfahani, 1965: 135; Ibn al-Athir, 2007: 337). Nonetheless, this reputation generally served Saladin well in negotiations with both Muslim rivals and Frankish opponents, easing the handover of fortresses and cities and helping to establish his reputation as a pious Muslim, and his financial generosity doubtless assisted him in expanding his supporter base.

Saladin's open-handedness has been seen by some modern historians as indicative of a wider lack of economic sense, an impression that is not helped by comments such as that made by Baha' al-Din, who states that Saladin's treasurers used to hide money from him to prevent him from spending it [*Doc. 11*]. Al-Qadi al-Fadil repeatedly expressed concerns about the extent of Saladin's spending and its impact on the economy, famously commenting that Saladin had 'spent the money of Egypt to conquer Syria, the money of Syria to conquer al-Jazira [the region covering modern south-eastern Turkey, north-eastern Syria, and north-western Iraq], and the money of all of them to conquer the coast' (Eddé, 2011: 427). However, both Eddé and Lev have questioned the idea that Saladin was financially irresponsible. It is clear that as soon as he took power in Egypt, he undertook a number of measures intended to improve the economic health of his state, including reorganizing the collection of taxes and the distribution of *iqta's*, reforming the coinage, and endowing the incomes of properties to finance his construction projects (so-called *waqf* endowments; Eddé, 2011: 418–26; Lev, 2007: passim). He also devoted attention to commerce, seeking to maintain the vibrant trade between Egypt and the Italian cities, which also helped to secure supplies of war materials such as wood and iron; safeguarding as far as possible the land trade between *Bilad al-Sham*, Egypt, and the Red Sea; and attempting to ensure the smooth running of markets. However, wars were expensive, and spending constantly outstripped income, and so finances remained an ever-present challenge (Eddé, 2011: 426–28, 447–61).

The other pillar on which Saladin based his power was his family. Saladin himself had succeeded his uncle Shirkuh in Egypt, and under his rule, the Ayyubid state effectively formed a family confederation with himself at its head. In the early years, his most prominent supporters were his brothers al-Mu'azzam Turan-Shah (d. 1180) and al-'Adil Muhammad, and his nephew Taqi al-Din 'Umar (d. 1191), all of whom were given key responsibilities in Saladin's state. Other family members were also appointed to supporting positions, and later his sons al-Afdal 'Ali (d. 1225), al-'Aziz 'Uthman (d. 1198), and al-Zahir Ghazi (d. 1216) were given important governorships in the state, even though they had not yet reached adulthood. Naturally, not all Saladin's subordinates were family members, but they formed a core upon whom he relied for backing. For the most part, this arrangement proved effective, provided that Saladin's family co-operated. However, the system did not always work; for example, Saladin was furious when it became apparent that Taqi al-Din had left the siege of Acre on 2 March 1191 to pursue territorial ambitions around Lake Van rather than simply to make a visit to his holdings in the north, although the sultan's fury swiftly turned to grief when he learned of his nephew's death on 10 October of the same year (Eddé, 2011: 127–28).

The victorious *mujahid*

One of the ongoing unanswered questions in crusade studies is what happened at the council of war held by the Franks on the night of 2 July 1187. If we had a full understanding of this, we could understand why King Guy of Lusignan marched his army out to its defeat at the Horns of Hattin. Like the Latin sources, the Muslim ones provide differing opinions on the discussion that took place. Baha' al-Din states merely that when they heard of the Muslim conquest of Tiberias, the Franks 'could not bear not to give in to their impulsive zeal, but set out at once' (Ibn Shaddad, 2001: 73); in doing so, he actually misrepresents the Franks, who were generally fairly cautious when deciding to commit their armies to pitched battles. Both 'Imad al-Din and Ibn al-Athir give prominence to Raymond of Tripoli in their accounts, but in contrasting ways. 'Imad al-Din presents Raymond of Tripoli as having been traumatized by the news that the outer city of Tiberias had been taken, urging the king to act and saying that if the city fell completely, then the rest of the Frankish lands would follow (al-Isfahani, 1965: 76). Ibn al-Athir, on the other hand, presents Raymond as having exhorted the Franks to withhold from responding to Tiberias' plight, on the grounds that it would be difficult for Saladin to keep his army in the field; however, he also presents Raymond as having been opposed by Reynald of Châtillon, who accused him of siding with the Muslims (Ibn al-Athir, 2007: 321). Naturally, the Muslim authors did not witness the council of war, and so their accounts must be based on hearsay and speculation, but both 'Imad al-Din's and Ibn al-Athir's versions reflect currents found in the Frankish sources (Lyons and Jackson, 1984: 258). Whatever was actually said at the council, as indicated previously, the consequence was that Saladin destroyed the Frankish field army at Hattin and went on to conquer a huge swath of Frankish territory.

In terms of propaganda impact, the conquest of Jerusalem was, undoubtedly, Saladin's crowning achievement, acting as justification for the military action that he undertook against other Muslims and confirming his claims that his ultimate ambition was the re-conquest of the holy city. Great celebrations ensued among nobility and common folk alike as a result of the conquest. Poets and preachers praised Saladin in joyful panegyrics and pious rhetoric; indeed, the opportunity to be the first to preach and extol the sultan in the Aqsa Mosque after the re-conquest was hotly contested. Saladin himself was careful to make the most of his victory, not only sending out letters to the caliph and other Muslim rulers announcing his success but also waiting to make his triumphal procession into Jerusalem on the anniversary of the Prophet's *mi'raj* and thus invoking the memory of sacred history to enhance his own image of piety (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 188–91). He also devoted

significant resources to restoring the Muslim institutions of the city. 'Imad al-Din, in his chronicle *al-Fath al-Qussi fi'l-Fath al-Qudsi* (Qussian Eloquence on the Conquest of Jerusalem), which covers Saladin's campaigns from 1187 to 1193, provides an account of Saladin's efforts in this regard entitled 'A Description of the Good Works that the Sultan Initiated in Jerusalem, and the Evil Works that he Eradicated'. In it, he notes that his master restored the Aqsa Mosque, including uncovering the *mihrab*, which, he claims, the Templars had turned into a granary or a latrine, and removing other buildings, including a church, that the Templars had added to the structure. As indicated previously, Saladin also installed Nur al-Din's *minbar* in the mosque, thus helping to tie himself into his predecessor's legacy. In his work, 'Imad al-Din goes on to note that Saladin also purified the Dome of the Rock, which the Franks had turned into a church, removing its Christian accoutrements and uncovering the sacred rock itself, with its imprint of the Prophet Muhammad's foot. The sultan also had some of the other Christian buildings converted into Islamic ones such as Sufi convents and *madrasas*. However, a number of churches were spared, including, most notably, the Church of the Holy Sepulchre (*kanisat al-qiyama* [Church of the Resurrection] in Arabic, though for centuries, Muslim writers had nicknamed it *kanisat al-qumama*, a change of one consonant in Arabic that renamed it 'the Church of Garbage'). Some of Saladin's advisors did suggest that he demolish the church to remove its attraction for Christian pilgrims and crusaders, but others pointed out that the holy site itself, rather than the church building, was the attraction and that the caliph 'Umar ibn al-Khattab (r. 634–44), who had first conquered Jerusalem in 638, had left it unharmed for the Christians (Al-Isfahani, 1965: 137–46). As Eddé notes, 'Imad al-Din refrains from also mentioning that the Muslims could impose heavy fees on Christian pilgrims who visited the site (Eddé, 2011: 224). It is worth noting that the Christian presence in Jerusalem was not completely eradicated; thousands of eastern Christians, and even some Frankish ones, were allowed to remain once they had paid their ransoms (Eddé, 2011: 219, 224). However, Saladin put in great efforts to restore a distinctively and perceptibly Islamic character to the holy city, in the process emphasizing his own dedication to the faith.

Facing the crusades of the late 12th century

While the re-conquest of Jerusalem was Saladin's greatest achievement, his failure to defeat the crusading forces led by Richard the Lionheart and Philip Augustus was probably his greatest frustration. Having come within sight of destroying the Kingdom of Jerusalem completely, the sultan found himself able neither to prevent the crusaders' re-conquest of Acre nor to score a decisive

victory against the armies of Richard the Lionheart that subsequently advanced on Jerusalem. Saladin's principal difficulty was holding sufficient manpower in the field. In January 1189, he had been forced to allow his troops to disperse, and thus he only had a reduced force available when Guy of Lusignan besieged Acre. Thereafter, Saladin sent repeated appeals for aid to the rulers of the various cities that theoretically owed him support, as well as other Muslim rulers, but his calls, lacking the lofty goal of the conquest of Jerusalem and being made to men who were weary from years of conflict, received only patchy responses; he was never again able to command a great muster like that which had preceded the Battle of Hattin. From the 'Abbasid caliph al-Nasir (r. 1180–1225), in particular, he received what can only be understood as a diplomatic insult: two loads of naphtha, five naphtha artificers, some spear-shafts, and a note authorizing him to borrow a paltry 20,000 dinars from the merchants on the caliph's behalf. Relations between Saladin and al-Nasir had been tense for years, and it is likely that the caliph was concerned about where Saladin might direct his attention if he defeated the Franks. The last part of the caliph's gift highlights the fact that by now, financial shortages were also impeding Saladin's ability to field sufficient forces to neutralize the Frankish threat. Saladin himself remarked that he was spending more than 20,000 dinars a *day* to support the war effort (Lyons and Jackson, 1984: 310–11), and, as we have already seen, his income was not sufficient to cover such requirements.

Meanwhile, the Franks had been reinforced by large contingents from overseas, fired with enthusiasm for the crusade and zealous to ride to the rescue of the holy city from the infidel; while these newly arrived contingents and the Franks were themselves involved in disputes over questions of authority and the crown of Jerusalem, their arrival nonetheless constituted a significant increase in the military capabilities of Saladin's enemies. In addition, the crusaders were led by Richard the Lionheart, an expert general who was Saladin's equal on the battlefield. Perhaps this is best exemplified by the crusaders' march south along the coast in 1191. Richard arranged his forces with the knights in a central column, supplied and protected by half the infantry, the baggage train and a fleet on the seaward side, and the other half of the infantry, including archers, protecting the column on the landward side (*The Atlas of the Crusades*, 1991: 64). The whole army maintained a disciplined formation and was hence able to avoid being broken up by the usual Muslim harassing tactics. At Arsuf, Saladin was finally able to provoke a break in the crusaders' formation, when two Hospitaller knights charged the Muslim lines, leading the remaining Hospitallers and the French contingent to follow them. Richard quickly ordered the remaining knights to charge and turned the army's broken formation into a victorious one (Phillips, 2014: 175–76).

Yet despite his difficulties, Saladin was able to fight Richard to a stalemate.

Some of this was a result of his exploitation of divisions among the crusaders; as indicated earlier, not all of them supported Richard's activities, and some sought to cut him out of their diplomatic dealings with Saladin and negotiate directly with the sultan. Richard himself was also having other difficulties, including conflict between the French and English crusaders, illness, and pressure to return to England. Meanwhile, Saladin also successfully adopted a number of tactics intended to impede the advance of Richard's forces on Jerusalem, since he could not beat them in pitched battle. As noted previously, he destroyed fortresses on the route between Jaffa and the holy city that might be used as bases from which to attack it. He also destroyed the cisterns around Jerusalem, so that it would be difficult to ensure that there was enough water available for the crusading army. Finally, he mounted harassing attacks on the crusaders' supply lines. Thus, Saladin prevented them from making an attack on Jerusalem by ensuring that they could not support it adequately (Lyons and Jackson, 1984: 352–54). Faced with this frustrating situation, and concerned about the state of his kingdom in Europe, Richard was forced to recognize the impasse, and eventually a mutually acceptable treaty was negotiated.

As indicated previously, the agreement made in September 1192 between Richard and Saladin represented the culmination of periodic discussions over the years that the former had been in the Levant. Saladin and Richard seem to have regarded each other with great respect, though they never met. Baha' al-Din notes that Richard repeatedly asked for a meeting, but Saladin always refused; the sultan explained his refusal by saying, 'Kings do not meet unless an agreement has been reached. It is not good for them to fight after meeting and eating together' (Ibn Shaddad, 2001: 153). Instead, Saladin's chief negotiator was his brother, al-'Adil Muhammad, with whom Richard seems to have enjoyed a close friendship, with interesting results; see what follows.

In some senses, the major issues at stake in the negotiations are effectively summed up by an exchange of letters that took place between Richard and Saladin in October 1191, and which is recorded by Baha' al-Din [*Doc. 12*]. The principal point of contention was Jerusalem, along with the acceptable extent of Frankish territories and the relic of the True Cross. Supplementary concerns were the fate of prisoners, defensive structures, and sources of income. Perhaps the most creative solution mooted at the time was Richard's proposal that al-'Adil marry his sister Joan, with the couple then ruling in Jerusalem, where Frankish clergy would be permitted to live but Frankish troops would not. Both al-'Adil and Saladin accepted the proposal, though the latter thought it was not likely to work out, and he was proved correct when the lady refused marriage to a non-Christian, a position in which she was supported by members of the Frankish nobility. Al-'Adil refused Richard's attempts to persuade him to convert, and after further discussions, the idea fell through. As

indicated previously, the eventual solution focused on Jerusalem, the extent of Frankish territory, fortresses, and income; prisoner concerns were not addressed in the final agreement, nor was the fate of the True Cross, which was sent after Saladin's death to the caliph of Baghdad and in the process passed out of the historical record (Eddé, 2011: 212, 263–69).

Conclusion

To an even greater degree than with Nur al-Din, scholarly discussions of Saladin have often focused on the extent to which he was motivated by genuine piety and how far his actions were actually driven by political aims. Opinions have ranged from one extreme to the other, with some arguing that Saladin was a true devotee to his faith and the military *jihad*, while others have insisted that he was an ambitious politician who cynically made use of religious propaganda to support his secular goals. There is certainly plenty of evidence to support both positions, but ultimately we can never know the absolute truth of the matter, and Eddé argues that the over-concentration of historians on this aspect of Saladin's career has until recently been an unwelcome and prevalent distraction from a full consideration of the period (Eddé, 2011: 615–19). It also anachronistically imposes a modern framework of a division between religion and politics on the time period; as we have seen in our discussions of both Saladin and Nur al-Din, at the time they were not seen as being separate spheres, and political success and piety were not necessarily seen as being incompatible.

In the meantime, it is useful to consider the impact of Saladin's reign on the Muslim Levant, which attests to the greatness of his achievement, regardless of his motivations. Building on the military and propaganda foundations laid by Nur al-Din, Saladin unified an immense amount of territory under his banner, and then directed its resources and manpower to conquer the greater part of the Frankish states, including bringing the holy city of Jerusalem back under Muslim rule. Then, despite the difficulties that he faced in holding an effective fighting force in the field, he was able to blunt the subsequent wave of crusader attacks sufficiently that the Franks remained largely confined to a narrow strip on the Levantine coast and were unable to re-take Jerusalem. By Saladin's death, the Muslim states of the Levant had become a unified confederation, mostly ruled by Saladin's family, that had proved to be an effective basis for opposition to crusader aggression. However, that unity would not continue under Saladin's successors.

Further reading

Numerous books have been published on Saladin, the most comprehensive of which is Anne-Marie Eddé's recent detailed study, *Saladin* (2011). Another important work is Malcolm Cameron Lyons and David E.P. Jackson's *Saladin: The Politics of the Holy War* (1984), while Carole Hillenbrand's *The Crusades: Islamic Perspectives* provides a discussion of Saladin's *jihad* that includes a helpful comparison of Saladin and Nur al-Din. For a sense of the widely differing interpretations of Saladin's motives that exist, it is worth comparing H.A.R. Gibb's *The Life of Saladin* (1973) with Andrew S. Ehrenkreutz's *Saladin* (1972). Ehrenkreutz's work includes a number of useful discussions of Saladin's economic policies, and these are also the subject of Yaacov Lev's important article, 'Saladin's Economic Policies and the Economy of Ayyubid Egypt' (2007). On the Battle of Hattin, see Benjamin Z. Kedar, 'The Battle of Hattin Revisited' (1992); R.C. Smail, *Crusading Warfare, 1097–1193* (1995); and now John France, *Hattin* (2015). On Saladin and the Third Crusade in particular, readers of German will also appreciate Hannes Möhring's *Saladin und der Dritte Kreuzzug: Aiyubidische Strategie und Diplomatie im Vergleich vornehmlich der Arabischen mit den Lateinischen Quellen* (1980). On the establishment of the Ayyubid state, and the role played by Saladin's family in particular, see R. Stephen Humphreys, *From Saladin to the Mongols: The Ayyubids of Damascus, 1193–1260* (1977). On religious life, including preaching of the *jihad*, see Daniella Talmon-Heller, 'Islamic Preaching in Syria during the Counter-Crusade (Twelfth–Thirteenth Centuries)' (2007b) and, again, *Islamic Piety in Medieval Syria*. Finally, on the poetic activities of 'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani and others who composed works during the reign of Saladin, see again Osman Latiff, *The Cutting Edge of the Poet's Sword*.

6 Making war in the Levant

The next two chapters present an intermission in our examination of events in the Levant during the 11th–13th centuries, as our focus now turns to a wider consideration of Muslim-Frankish interaction both on and off the battlefield. This chapter will focus on Muslim warfare, while the next will discuss truces, trade, and social interactions and attitudes. However, before we proceed, we must consider in general terms what the Muslims actually learned about the Franks during the period. Then we will discuss the rules of *jihad*, including the restrictions placed on those undertaking the military *jihad*. After that, we will spend the remainder of this chapter examining Muslim military equipment and tactics, looking in turn at pitched battles, siege warfare, and naval activities.

The problem of the sources

As we seek to explore the wider interactions between the Muslims and the

Franks, we immediately encounter a difficulty: the amount of source material that is available to us drops significantly. Many of the sources that we have been relying on so far are concerned above all with political history, telling us much about the activities of Muslim rulers, but the Franks normally only appear when they have a direct impact on the territories of these rulers. Aspects of Frankish internal politics do appear in the Muslim sources, but other cultural features of the Franks are mostly ignored by the Muslim writers. The accounts of the battles that we have also tend to be presented only in simple terms, principally from a religious point of view rather than an expert military one; we read far more often about the role of the supernatural in victories won by one side or the other and far less often about the particular strategic manoeuvres that carried the day (see, for example, *Doc. 10*). This is, of course, not surprising, since the majority of the writers of the Muslim sources tended to be religiously trained scholars rather than military officers. That said, many of the military officers may well also have seen divine will as being involved in their successes and failures and may have passed their own views on to the writers in question.

However, the situation is not entirely gloomy. It is possible to glean a certain amount about Muslim-Frankish interactions from the anecdotes with which the Muslim writers adorn their narratives, and we do have a few cases of specialized works that give us a deeper understanding of the topics under discussion here. When we look in particular at Muslim military tactics and the impact that the Franks had thereon, we are fortunate that we have a number of military manuals from the 12th and 13th centuries, which contain information on the various sorts of weapons that Muslim soldiers used and the tactics that they employed, although the extent to which such works present ideals rather than realities is of course something that we must bear in mind [*Doc. 13*]. These works can be supplemented with the evidence of archaeological remains, artistic works, and other texts to give us greater insight (see, for example, the image on the cover of this book, and what follows subsequently, as well as Hillenbrand, 1999a: esp. 432–39). Learning about Frankish-Muslim interactions off the battlefield is even harder, as we do not have specialized ethnographic studies of the Franks written by Muslim authors, and so much of our evidence is anecdotal; this raises concerns about how far it is reliable and how far accuracy is subordinated to the literary or propagandistic aims of the writers in question.

A case in point is the *Kitab al-I'tibar* (Book of Contemplation) of the emir Usama ibn Munqidh, a work that has enjoyed perhaps disproportionate attention in the west due to both its uniqueness and its availability in French and English translations since the end of the 19th century. Born in his clan stronghold of Shayzar in northern Syria, Usama had a chequered career during

which he spent periods serving as an officer under both a number of Sunni rulers in *Bilad al-Sham* and the Fatimid caliphs in Egypt; in many instances, he had to move on after becoming involved in dangerous political entanglements, which suggests that he was an enthusiastic if not always adept participant in the intrigues of the ruling classes of his time. He eventually joined the court of Saladin, where he was initially warmly welcomed but seems to have become (or at least felt) neglected by his exalted patron. He died in 1188 at the age of 93, lamenting the loss of his youthful vigour (Cobb, 2005: *passim*).

The *Kitab al-I'tibar*, which presents itself as the memoirs of the aging Usama, has been much celebrated by historians as giving an account of one Muslim's relations with the Franks, both in battle and in times of peace. Certainly Usama claims to have had friends among the Latins, including the Templars, who apparently used to let him pray in a mosque next to their headquarters in the Aqsa Mosque on the Temple Mount, and he describes his experiences of Frankish culture in a wide range of forms, including judicial proceedings, medical practices, and their behaviour towards women [*Doc. 14*]. However, as a number of scholars have noted, we cannot take Usama's work at face value. Usama was well known for his literary skills, and his purported memoirs show a wealth of features that indicate that they are intended to be entertaining and didactic rather than a straightforward account of his experiences; in particular, following Qur'anic precedent, they juxtapose contrasting examples that seek to teach readers how to live as a good and honourable Muslim in the face of the inevitability of divinely ordained events (Irwin, 1998: 73–75; Cobb, 2005: 67–91). This does not mean that we should simply write off Usama's work completely, but as we read it, we must bear in mind that it is a book that is carefully constructed, and much of what the author tells us is probably embroidered at the very least, if not at times completely fabricated; Usama was a talented storyteller who preferred not to let the facts get in the way of a good yarn if it served his purposes. That said, at times, he perhaps reveals more to us about Frankish-Muslim interactions than he intends, as will be discussed in the next chapter.

'The Franks'

Despite the problematic nature of the sources, it is possible to detect a marked evolution in Muslim knowledge of the Franks during the crusading period. As we have indicated earlier, the Arabic term *ifranj* (along with similar permutations of the *f-r-n-j* root letters), which we translate as 'Franks', was originally used by Muslim writers to refer to the people of, roughly, the Frankish territories that emerged after the collapse of the Roman Empire and came under the sway of the Merovingians and their successors, the

Carolingians. However, with the onset of the crusades, the term came to be used of western Europeans in general, without intending to refer to a particular part of the region. This generalized usage persisted as the decades passed, even though it is apparent that by the second half of the 12th century, the Muslims had gradually gained a deeper understanding of the differences between the origins of the various Franks whom they encountered. Ibn al-Qalanisi, writing in about 1145–60, was already distinguishing the Genoese from the rest of the Franks, though he also occasionally mixed up names and ethnicities, calling Conrad III of Germany (r. 1138–52), for example, *Alman*, probably an Arabicization of the medieval French word *Aleman* (German; see *Doc. 7.i*). Later writers were clearly aware of the ethnicities and political allegiances of the Franks, including seeing the Franks of the crusader states as being distinct from the Franks of Europe, even as they continued to use *ifranj* as an overarching ethnic term (see, for example, *Doc. 7.ii*). Indeed, as we have noted, some writers suggested that Muslim exploitation of the distinction between 'local' and 'foreign' Franks played a part in the thwarting of the crusader attack on Damascus in 1148 (see Chapter 4; Hillenbrand, 1999a: 303, 331–34; Christie, 1999: 63–71, 187–90). By the same token, Usama gives us two (typically balanced) anecdotes through which he contrasts the rough nature of Franks who are newly arrived from Europe with the more refined character of those who have lived in the Levant for some time and have adapted to Middle Eastern ways, although he is careful to note that the latter are rare exceptions (see *Doc 14.i*; Cobb, 2005: 104–5; Christie, 1999: 69–71).

We also see Muslim writers singling out particular figures by name in order to express respect or condemnation; for example, the merits of Richard I the Lionheart of England, Louis IX of France, and the Holy Roman Emperor Frederick II are all praised by Muslim writers, while Conrad of Montferrat (r. as King of Jerusalem, 1190–92) and above all Reynald of Châtillon are vehemently criticized (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 336–47). Of course, often such praise is given with ulterior motives, not the least of which is the reflection of even greater praise on the Muslim heroes who fought or defeated such formidable opponents.

It is worth noting that the Muslim writers were undoubtedly aware from the outset that the Franks were Christians. The Muslims had been intimately acquainted with Christians living within their communities for centuries, as we have seen (see Chapter 2), and some of them knew a significant amount about Christianity. However, the Muslim sources play down this understanding, instead emphasizing the (to them) heretical nature of the Christian faith, above all by using words such as ***kuffar*** (blasphemers or infidels) and ***mushrikun*** (polytheists) to refer to their enemies and by regularly calling down God's curses upon them (see, for example, *Doc. 14.i*).

This allows them to present the Franks firmly as enemies of both the Muslim inhabitants of the Levant and God Himself; in other words, the Muslim writers seek to avoid drawing attention to similarities between Islam and Christianity that might hinder their attempts to present the Franks as an unquestionably legitimate target for the military *jihad*. We will return to the Muslim sources' presentation of Frankish Christianity in the next chapter.

Kuffar Arabic: 'blasphemers' or 'infidels'. A term applied by the Muslim sources to the Franks, whose claims that Jesus was the son of God were seen by the Muslims as blasphemous.

Mushrikun Arabic: 'polytheists'. A term used by the Muslim sources of the Franks as a way of denigrating them.

It is worth considering whence the Muslims likely derived their improving knowledge of the Franks. As we have seen, even before the arrival of the first crusaders, the Muslims had encountered Franks, including those serving in the Byzantine armies and those who visited the east as merchants, ambassadors, or pilgrims. It is clear that these interactions continued throughout the period of Frankish presence in the Levant, although the Frankish troops whom the Muslims encountered were now usually fighting on their own behalf rather than that of the Byzantines or sometimes serving as mercenaries in Muslim armies (Nicolle, 1999: 208). With regard to diplomatic contacts, it is clear that Muslim rulers increasingly exchanged embassies with not only local Frankish rulers but also more distant European monarchs and popes. The Italian trading powers had already been negotiating with the rulers of Egypt before the onset of the crusades, but in the latter half of the 12th century, Muslim-Frankish diplomacy expanded in volume and geographical range; early evidence of this includes letters exchanged between Saladin and both Frederick I Barbarossa and the papacy (Eddé, 2011: 244–45, 302), and such diplomatic interactions expanded still further after the sultan's death. Muslim writers would also have encountered both Frankish converts to Islam and Frankish slaves who had been former prisoners of war; there were many of the latter in particular, especially in the wake of the Battle of Hattin in 1187. Muslims and Franks also interacted socially; we have already noted that Usama described some Templars in Jerusalem as being his friends, and both he and other writers give accounts of Frankish festivals that they attended. Thus, it is apparent that as the crusades proceeded, there were ever more opportunities for the Muslims and the Franks to gain a fuller understanding of each other's cultures and habits. There were, however, other factors that limited the extent to which such opportunities influenced the Muslim sources, as we shall see.

Jihad and religious warfare

Let us turn now to the topic of *jihad*. As indicated earlier, in Islamic teaching, the word *jihad* encompasses a complex concept that is rather more nuanced than the simplistic meaning of 'holy war' that is sometimes ascribed to it by some modern media outlets. At the basic level, the word *jihad* means 'striving' and can manifest itself in a wide range of activities that an individual undertakes with the intention of serving God faithfully and combating evil. With regard to fighting for the faith, what we have been referring to as 'military *jihad*', it is striking that the *Qur'an* itself demonstrates a mixed attitude towards such violence. A survey of its verses shows that at times, the text seems to encourage forbearance from the Muslims in the face of opposition, while at other times, it advocates warfare, albeit within limits (for examples, see *Doc. 1.i*). Muslim scholars resolved the apparent contradictions in the text using theories of abrogation, whereby one teaching was seen as being superseded by another, and in the case of warfare, they related the various teachings to various stages of the Prophet's career, during which he was initially encouraged to turn away from conflict but was later allowed to engage in defensive and then offensive warfare as the ongoing conflict between Mecca and Medina developed (Landau-Tasseron, 2001–6: 3, 35–43; Firestone, 1999: 16–18, 47–65).

After the death of Muhammad, the Muslim campaigns out of the Arabian Peninsula were fought in the name of the military *jihad*. However, as the pace of conquest slowed, the obligation to fight for the faith became less of a universal concern and instead began to take the form of periodic raids made on enemy territory, often by volunteers living on the borders of the Muslim state. At the same time, under the influence of Muslim religious scholars, *jihad* teaching became increasingly sophisticated; indeed, as Asma Afsaruddin has shown, this included the development of a range of views regarding how the term *jihad* should be understood, to what extent it encompassed military action, how such military action should be accomplished, whom one should fight, and what rewards those who died in the fighting should expect from God (Afsaruddin, 2013: *passim*). Under the influence of such thinkers, gradually, various regulations became formalized that dictated how the military *jihad* should be waged.

We are fortunate that we can gain some insight into how these regulations looked during the period of Frankish presence in the Levant through the writings on *jihad* of a number of Muslim thinkers. Of course, such scholars' views and approaches were at times highly variable, but for our purposes the most useful to our discussion is al-Sulami, who was for the most part trying to be conventional in his views on the conduct of the *jihad* and thus can be seen

as presenting a 'majority' view of this aspect; in addition, as we know, he publicly composed his work in 1105 and thus gives us a 'time-stamped' snapshot of *jihad* regulations, at least as he conceived them, from soon after the arrival of the first crusaders from Europe (Christie, 2007b: 14). As the crusading period unfolded, al-Sulami's views were reflected in the opinions of other scholars who came after him. Of these, we will look in particular at the ideas of the famous Hanbali theologian Ahmad ibn Taymiyya (d. 1328), who, as we will see, was an important public figure in the Mamluk period and has continued to be influential right up to the modern day (see Chapters 9 and 10). Taken together, the works of these two men are emblematic of the fact that there was a degree of consistency in core scholarly approaches to the conduct of the military *jihad* against the Franks that persisted throughout the time of the latter's presence on the Levantine littoral, even though individual religious thinkers also elaborated or expanded on such views, as we will see.

Who should fight?

As we have indicated previously, al-Sulami aimed his call to the *jihad* first and foremost at the politico-military elites of his day, since they were the ones who could assemble armies and send them out to fight against the crusaders. However, in line with standard teaching, he distinguished between offensive and defensive military *jihad*. For al-Sulami, the obligation to offensive military *jihad* was fulfilled if the Muslims conducted annual raids on enemy territory, in line with the previous conduct of their forebears; however, as far as he was concerned, the defensive military *jihad*, not surprisingly, was a greater priority. He argued, following standard Shafi'i doctrine, that when Muslim territory was attacked, the obligation to fight in the defence of it fell upon all Muslims, 'soldiers, citizens, peasants or all the rest of the people', until there were sufficient of them to repel the enemy attack. As we have seen, he considered the *jihad* both an individual and collective duty (*fard 'ayn* and *fard kifaya*), imposed as required to ensure its success (see Chapter 3; *Doc. 6*; and al-Sulami, 2015: 12–15). It is important to bear in mind that by 'all' Muslims, al-Sulami meant all adult, male, free, and sane Muslims. In his work, he lays this out clearly, including explicitly prohibiting women from taking part (al-Sulami, 2015: 15, 69–70, 232–33). For more on Muslim attitudes towards women taking part in combat, see the next chapter.

In *al-Siyasa al-Shar'iyya fi Islah al-Ra'i wa-l-Ra'iyya* (Governance according to God's Law in Reforming both the Ruler and his Flock), Ibn Taymiyya follows al-Sulami's lead in encouraging both the offensive and defensive military *jihad*; indeed, his comment that defensive action is obligatory 'both for the regular professional army and for others' parallels al-

Sulami's qualification previously, and he also adopts the model of *fard kifaya*, arguing that the obligation is imposed on all Muslims until sufficient numbers undertake the military *jihad* to ensure its success. Ibn Taymiyya, however, also advocated strongly for military *jihad* against self-identified Muslims within the community who were not fulfilling their obligations under the faith; as Richard Bonney has noted, in the process, he provided material that has inspired modern extremists, who took his teachings and selectively used them to justify violence against other Muslims (Peters, 2016: 44–54; Bonney, 2004: 111–26).

Legitimate targets

Al-Sulami and Ibn Taymiyya are largely agreed on whom one may attack in the military *jihad*. The former devotes several pages of his work to forbidding the killing of old men, monks, women, children, peasants, and the blind; the major exceptions are if the individuals in question fight in combat against the Muslims or if old men or monks provide wisdom to the enemy that helps them to defeat Muslim attacks (al-Sulami, 2015: 103–10, 267–74). In a similar vein, Ibn Taymiyya states, 'As for those who cannot offer resistance or cannot fight, such as women, children, monks, old people, the blind, handicapped and their likes, they shall not be killed, unless they actually fight with words [e.g. by propaganda] and acts [e.g. by spying or otherwise assisting in the warfare]' (Peters, 2016: 49). In both cases, the authors based their arguments on *Qur'an* 2: 190: 'Fight for the cause of God those who fight you, but do not transgress limits'. In this verse, the most significant words are 'those who fight you', while 'do not transgress limits' is understood to prohibit attacks on non-combatants and prisoners. The *hadith* also forbade the unnecessary destruction of property, including trees, occupied buildings, flocks (except when beasts are taken for food), and beehives (al-Sulami, 2015: 88–89, 251–52).

Rewards

A number of rewards are offered to participants in the military *jihad*, both those who survive the fighting and those who do not As we have seen, al-Sulami highlights both; those who survive gain not only divine approval but also material rewards. In the first decades of the Muslim conquests, warriors were rewarded with a share of the plunder taken from the enemy, while a fifth, the 'Prophet's share', was reserved for charitable causes. Even after salaries were established for Muslim armies, these continued to be supplemented with shares of the plunder taken, and al-Sulami devotes a significant portion of his work to providing regulations governing exactly how such rewards should be allocated (al-Sulami, 2015: 18, 169–97, 337–65; Christie, 2007b: 9). Thus,

material rewards provided an incentive to the military *jihad* that undoubtedly encouraged the participation of those for whom divine approval was not enough.

Meanwhile, those who died in the military *jihad* were offered the exalted rank of the martyr, with immediate promotion to Paradise, rather than having to wait in their graves until the Day of Judgement. Al-Sulami provides a number of stories of martyrs who see what awaits them in dreams, spend enough time still on earth to pass on what they have learned, and then die and go on to their final rewards. Such rewards are characterized by fine dwellings, riches, servants, and beautiful heavenly wives (al-Sulami, 2015: 19, 160–69, 329–37; Christie, 2007b: 12–13). For those who accepted such accounts, they were thus promised great rewards whether they survived or died on the battlefield. As Ibn Taymiyya puts it: 'Any individual or community that participates in [the *jihad*], finds itself between two blissful outcomes: either victory and triumph or martyrdom and Paradise. […] The death of a martyr is easier than any other form of death. In fact, it is the best of all manners of dying' (Peters, 2016: 48–49).

At the same time, deliberately killing oneself on the battlefield does not make the individual a martyr. As al-Sulami points out, it achieves the exact opposite. He tells a story from the lifetime of the Prophet of a man who has impressed his fellows in the Muslim army with his energetic fighting. However, upon seeing the man in question, the Prophet comments that he is bound for Hell. The following day one of the Prophet's Companions follows the man onto the battlefield. The latter is gravely wounded, so he falls on his sword and commits suicide. The observer returns to the camp and tells the Prophet what has happened, and the Prophet responds, 'A man may indeed spend much effort on what seems to the people to be the deeds of the denizens of Paradise and still be one of the denizens of the Fire, and a man may likewise do what seems to the people to be the deeds of a denizen of the Fire and still be one of the denizens of Paradise' (al-Sulami, 2015: 60–61, 224). While al-Sulami is at the time discussing purity of motivation in one's undertaking of the military *jihad*, the listener is also being reminded that suicide is forbidden in Islam, even on the battlefield, so dying there does not automatically guarantee a place in Paradise.

The Abode of Islam and the Abode of War

Up until the 10th century, Muslim theologians who wrote about the military *jihad* divided the world into two zones: *dar al-islam* (the Abode of Islam) and *dar al-harb* (the Abode of War). *Dar al-Islam* was the region where Islam was the faith of the rulers, even if it might not be that of the majority of the

inhabitants. Meanwhile, the rest of the world was *dar al-harb*, against which, in theory at least, Muslims were meant to wage perpetual war to expand *dar al-islam*. However, as the Muslim world fragmented politically, this bipartite division came to be nuanced, with the addition of *dar al-'ahd* (the Abode of the Treaty) or *dar al-sulh* (the Abode of Peace), non-Muslim territory that remained autonomous provided that its people recognized Muslim authority and paid tributes. Peace agreements with states in the *dar al-harb* were also made, facilitating trade and diplomatic exchanges (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 98).

Greater and lesser jihad

By the 12th century, a number of Muslim religious scholars, particularly Sufis, had conceived a division of the *jihad* into *al-jihad al-akbar* (the greater *jihad*) and *al-jihad al-asghar* (the lesser *jihad*). The military *jihad* was viewed as the lesser of the two; the greater *jihad* was a spiritual struggle waged both externally – speaking or writing in defence of the faith – and above all internally – against one's own inner sinfulness – something that was seen as a prerequisite before one undertook the lesser *jihad*. Although the timing is a matter of some debate, the doctrine was probably crystallizing during the first decades of crusader presence in the Levant (Morabia, 1993: 256–57, 293–336; Cook, 2005: 32–48; Bonner, 2006: 13–14, 169–70). As we have seen, al-Sulami certainly urged his listeners to undertake such an internal *jihad* as a prerequisite for fighting against the crusaders [*Doc. 6*]. Not all accepted this view, however; in another work, *al-Furqan bayna Awliya' al-Rahman wa-Awliya' al-Shaytan* (The Criterion between the Friends of God and the Friends of Satan), Ibn Taymiyya explicitly rejects this teaching, stating, 'This *hadith* has no source, nobody whomsoever in the field of Islamic Knowledge has narrated it. *Jihad* against the disbelievers is the most noble of actions, and moreover it is the most important action for the sake of mankind' (Bonney, 2004: 117). Thus, we can see that the question of greater and lesser *jihad* continued to be debated in the 14th century.

Muslim-Christian influences?

Readers who are familiar with Christian teachings on just war and crusading will undoubtedly have noticed a number of parallels in the brief description of the military *jihad* provided previously. These include the opportunity to gain divine approval and the belief, popular among Christians of the time, that those who died in the holy war became martyrs. There are many more such similarities, but space will not permit a full comparison of Christian and Muslim teachings on holy war here (see Further Reading, subsequently). However, these parallels do raise the question of how far each religion's

doctrines on the subject had an influence on the other's during their development, and this remains a matter of discussion among modern scholars. Certainly there would seem to be a lot of circumstantial evidence to suggest that this might have occurred; the Bible and the *Qur'an* share many similar stories and teachings, and followers of the two religions had been living with each other or visiting each others' lands for centuries before the First Crusade was launched (see Chapter 2). Thus, it is hard to believe that Muslims and Christians would not have exchanged at least some thoughts on the concept. Recently, Thomas Sizgorich has demonstrated that depictions of military *jihad* written by a number of Muslim authors in the 8th to 10th centuries draw heavily on representations of martyrs and monasticism found in Christian texts; indeed, a famous *hadith* cited by these authors records the Prophet Muhammad as having stated, 'Every community has its monasticism, and the monasticism of my community is *jihad* on the path of God', and records of famous *mujahidin* in the medieval Muslim sources emphasize their ascetic piety in a way that recalls Christian depictions of Christian monks and saints (Sizgorich, 2009; *passim*, esp. 168–95). Nur al-Din is one example from the crusading period of a figure who is lauded for both his activities as a *mujahid* and his asceticism (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 194). As an example of discussion about how far the influence went the other way, scholars continue to debate whether the military activities of figures like Charlemagne were influenced by theories of *jihad* and thus reflect a Muslim influence on Christian ideas of holy war (König, 2016: *passim*). It is clear that ideas were shared between Muslim and Christian thinkers; however, the *extent* to which there was a Muslim influence on Christian holy war teachings or vice versa remains a matter of ongoing investigation and scholarly dialogue.

Armies and pitched battles

It is important to note from the outset that the armies with which the Muslims fought the Franks were diverse in composition and tactics, and every military encounter had its own particular circumstances and physical context, so that what follows is only a brief overview of the armies and tactics of the Muslim forces. When the crusaders arrived in the east, the Fatimid army was in the process of being reformed by the viziers Badr al-Jamali and al-Afdal Shahanshah. The core of the army was made up of infantry, including archers and javelin troops, who were supported by light cavalry and a range of other troops; it was a very diverse mix that included Armenian Christian troops, African slaves serving as heavy infantry, Turkic *mamluks* and horse-archers, and mercenary light infantry from Daylam in Persia. As a result of the reforms, the mercenary and slave contingents were expanded, although the

core contingents remained the basis of Fatimid tactics, which required infantry and cavalry to co-operate effectively (Lev, 1997: 144–48; Nicolle, 1999: 119–20, 2007: Vol. 2: 39–42).

The forces used by the Seljuks and Zangids continued, broadly, to follow the earlier Seljuk model, being based around two core contingents, one consisting of Turkic *mamluks*, who fought equally effectively with bows and close-combat weapons, and the other consisting of Turkmen horse-archers. Both dynasties also employed mercenaries and auxiliaries as both cavalry and infantry, of various origins, including Bedouin Arabs and Armenians. Importantly, in the case of the Zangids, such forces were also supplemented with free Kurdish cavalry, which is how Saladin came to serve them. Given the large proportion of cavalry troops, one can see that Seljuk and Zangid armies continued to emphasize mobility above all in their tactics. In the 12th and 13th centuries, the Seljuks of *Rum* expanded their forces to include an even wider range of mercenary and allied contingents. Some of these consisted of European or Frankish troops, who seem not to have been criticized by western sources for 'fighting for the enemy', in contrast to the hostile reaction that such mercenaries received when fighting for Muslim rulers of *Bilad al-Sham* or Egypt. It is worth recalling, of course, that there were also Muslims who fought as mercenaries for Frankish rulers and were frequently criticized by their fellow Muslims for this; we have already seen how implacably Saladin treated the turcopoles whom he captured at Hattin, many of whom were probably originally Muslim. (Nicolle, 1986: 6–12, 1999: 176–78, 207–9, 2007: Vol. 2: 35; Holt, 1986: 42–43).

Saladin and his successors followed the Seljuk and Zangid model, basing their armies above all on cavalry, principally Turkic *mamluks* and free Turkmen and Kurdish troops. Saladin did initially make use of infantry, but over time he and his successors placed an increasing emphasis on cavalry armies, with infantry being used only in siege actions. The infantry in question often consisted of local militias; Bedouin tribal levies; dismounted cavalry (both free-born and *mamluks*); and siege specialists from Aleppo, Mosul, and Khurasan. Saladin's successors then reduced the prominence of Kurdish troops in their forces, instead expanding the more disciplined *mamluk* contingents in their armies. At the same time, the Ayyubids also made use of additional mercenary and allied contingents drawn from various parts of the Muslim world (Nicolle, 1986: 18–19, 1999: 120–121, 2007: Vol. 2: 42–45; Hillenbrand, 1999a: 445).

As implied previously, it is important not to neglect the importance of the auxiliary troops who swelled the ranks of the Muslim armies. As indicated previously, for sieges, it would be necessary to employ additional infantry, and city militias could be drawn on to assist with this, thus acting as offensive as

well as defensive troops; at times, city militiamen were also even mounted on horses and used as cavalry. As we have seen, Bedouin Arabs also frequently served in Muslim armies, and charismatic rulers such as Nur al-Din and Saladin also attracted volunteer soldiers; Saladin's forces at the Battle of Hattin in 1187, for example, included a large contingent of ascetics and Sufis who had chosen to take up arms in the military *jihad* against the Franks (Nicolle, 1999: 176–78, 2007, Vol. 2: 35; Holt, 1986: 42–43; Hillenbrand, 1999a: 445).

It is clear from the previous that the majority of the Muslim armies consisted of mainly cavalry, with mobility being the most prized quality in troops. On the battlefield, Muslim armies were normally divided into a centre and two wings, with the greater part of the cavalry being found in the centre; this formation could be supported with a vanguard and additional flanking units. Favoured tactics included harassment of the enemy by repeated waves of horse-archers, each of which would advance, shower the enemy with arrows, and then retreat to make way for the next, which would arrive about ten seconds later; the attrition from such attacks was intended to weaken a force and make it vulnerable to a final, crushing cavalry charge. Related to this was the traditional Muslim tactic of *al-karr wa'l-farr*, a rotation system that enabled repeated attacks to be made, sometimes by different units of attackers. Muslim cavalry were also effective at feigned retreats, intended to tempt enemy units to pursue and in the process break enemy formations. This is not to say that Muslim troops were not also capable of the more traditional military manoeuvres; the *mamluks* were known for the effectiveness of their shock charges and also became increasingly skilled at standing, rapid-fire arrow volleys that enabled them to decimate more mobile foes like the Mongols (Nicolle, 2007: Vol. 2: 122–50).

There is one Frankish military manoeuvre that attracted particular attention from Muslim chroniclers and has also received much attention from modern scholars: the Frankish heavy cavalry charge. When describing the Frankish effort to take Damascus in 1148, Ibn al-Qalanisi notes that at one point, the Frankish cavalry prepared to make the charge 'for which they are famous', though in this case without success (Ibn al-Qalanisi, 1983: 464). Joshua Prawer has described the charge of the Frankish heavy cavalry, when launched, as 'pareil à un bloc de fer se mouvant à toute vitesse' (like a block of iron moving at full speed; Prawer, 1964: 178). The potential psychological impact and physical destructiveness of the Frankish cavalry charge was immense; it could shatter a battle line and punch a hole through an army. However, it was an attack of opportunity, requiring particular circumstances, rather than a manoeuvre that could be set up in advance, which made it difficult to deliver. In addition, the Muslims soon learned ways to neutralize its effectiveness, including avoiding presenting a static target or opening their ranks to allow

the charge to pass through the gap; the charging unit could then be attacked in the flanks or rear (as seen at the Battle of Hattin in 1187; see Chapter 5). In response, the Franks sought to ensure that infantry crossbowmen co-operated effectively with cavalry, protecting them from harassment until suitable opportunities to charge arose, but the Muslims became so skilled at minimizing such opportunities that the tactic eventually saw little use against them. In addition, as Muslim armies increasingly emphasized cavalry, there were simply fewer units of infantrymen, which would have been the most obvious targets for such cavalry charges, and this contributed to the decline in their use (Nicolle, 2007, Vol. 1: 65–68).

It is worth noting that pitched battles between Muslims and Franks were actually relatively rare. Forces for such encounters required considerable resources to mount, and they were incredibly destructive in terms of human lives and equipment. For the Latin states, which relied on careful co-operation of the Frankish field army and castles for their survival, engaging in major battles was a risky endeavour, for the destruction of the army would leave the strongholds and cities of the Latin states vulnerable to attack; this was exactly what happened in the wake of the Battle of Hattin in 1187. Thus, most encounters between military forces tended to be skirmishes, often occurring as a result of forces from one side being sent out to repel enemy forces who had entered their territory to conduct raids. Given this situation, siege warfare was more decisive in determining the balance of power between Muslims and Franks, and it is to this that we will now turn.

Fortifications and sieges

Both the Franks and the Muslims built fortifications, which served multiple purposes. Naturally, they were important as military structures, used to fend off the attacks of enemies and prevent them from taking control of territory, as well as acting as staging posts for the launching of expeditions. They also served as political tools, sending propagandistic messages of legitimacy and power to other rulers and opponents and acting as means through which local populations could be controlled. In addition, they also served as administrative centres, from which regions could be ruled and where governors, their troops, and their equipment and supplies could be kept safe. They could also act as places of refuge for civilians in times of war or as prisons (Fulton, forthcoming).

In 1910, in his undergraduate thesis on crusader castles written as part of his final examination at Jesus College, Oxford, T.E. Lawrence (later better known as Lawrence of Arabia) argued that European and Frankish castle builders took little from Byzantine or Muslim architects, instead basing their structures on

techniques developed by themselves. Others took up his views, and the 20th century saw an ongoing debate among scholars over the extent to which Frankish, European, Muslim, Byzantine, and also Armenian architects shared ideas and techniques (Kennedy, 1994: 4; Lawrence, 1988, *passim*, esp. xxvii–xl). In recent decades, most scholars have taken the view that there was a lot of interchange; for example, Hugh Kennedy has highlighted the similarities between the box machicolations (small projecting structures enabling defenders to shoot at or drop objects on attackers) at Krac des Chevaliers (Hisn al-Akrad) and similar structures on Muslim fortifications, while David Nicolle has noted that it was from the Muslims that the Franks learned to build cisterns in castles to store water, a vital requirement in withstanding a siege (Kennedy, 1994: 154–56; Nicolle, 2007: Vol. 2: 204). The situation is further complicated by the fact that the leaders of the various factions involved in the conflict in the region would often restore and re-use fortifications that they took from each other, sometimes extending or modifying them, and they also built on even earlier structures; for example, Saladin's brother al-'Adil Muhammad based the citadel of Busra al-Sham on a Roman theatre, to which he added concentric walls between 1202 and 1218 (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 500; Nicolle, 2007: Vol. 2: 218). Rulers and architects also employed workers from various traditions, who brought their own techniques into play. An early example from the Muslim side is the massive *Bab al-Futuh* (Gate of Conquests) in Cairo, which was completed in 1087, shortly before the arrival of the crusaders, at the orders of Badr al-Jamali, the vizier of the Fatimid caliph, who was himself Armenian and employed fellow Armenian architects in the task; it is not surprising, then, that it shows similarities to contemporary Greater Armenian architecture (Ettinghausen and Grabar, 1994: 186). Thus, we cannot normally speak of particular whole structures being of, for example, purely Frankish or Muslim design; there was too much interchange to allow us to maintain such neat divisions.

We can, however, detect a different emphasis in the military architecture created by the Muslims and the Franks. While the Latins built primarily castles, the Muslims devoted most of their attention to strengthening the defences of cities. This is not to say that the Franks did not seek to do the same; as Fulton has shown, in the early 13th century, they devoted significant resources to strengthening the citadels of a number of port towns (Fulton, forthcoming). Likewise, one should not disregard the importance or quality of the castles built by Muslim rulers; for example, a number of scholars have drawn attention to the impressive castle at Ajlun, built in the Jordan valley at the orders of Saladin in 1184–85, near the crusader castle of Belvoir (Nicolle, 2007: Vol. 2: 218; Raphael, 2011: 11–51; Kennedy, 1994: 181). In this case, whether Ajlun was intended to rival Belvoir remains a matter of debate;

Fulton, for example, maintains that it was instead intended to fulfil a number of functions, including asserting control over the local Bedouin, who had a habit of allying with the Franks; controlling the local iron industry; and serving as an administrative base in the region (Fulton, forthcoming).

Figure 6.1 The Citadel at Busra al-Sham, Syria

Source: The Citadel at Busra al-Sham, Syria. Al-'Adil Muhammad based the stronghold on this Roman amphitheatre, to which he added concentric walls between 1202 and 1218. Over the decades that followed, it was expanded and modified by the Ayyubid rulers. Panther Media GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo.

While both Muslim and Frankish architects employed many of the same basic structural forms in creating their fortifications, there are some that were nevertheless often distinctive to one or the other. For example, the Franks were more likely to build isolated keeps, some of which would later be surrounded by protective walls, while Muslim rulers of the 13th century would more commonly incorporate large towers into wider defensive structures. Meanwhile, the machicolations that we have mentioned previously originated in the Muslim east and were then adopted by Frankish, and subsequently western European, architects (Fulton, forthcoming).

Despite their impressive castle-building efforts, Muslim rulers spent far more time and resources on strengthening the walls and citadels of towns and cities, something that Carole Hillenbrand ascribes to the tendencies of the Muslims of the region to see cities as their natural places of shelter, with the citadels providing fortified strongholds in time of need (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 473). Saladin, for example, spent considerable resources strengthening the walls and citadels of a number of Muslim cities; perhaps the best-known surviving example of this is the citadel in Cairo, which was begun at his orders in 1176. The citadel's fortifications were completed after his death by his brother al-'Adil Muhammad, and the complex was further expanded by subsequent rulers of Egypt in the centuries that followed (Fulton, forthcoming; Hillenbrand, 1999a: 478–79; see Fig. 4).

Figure 6.2 Bab al-Futuh, Cairo, Egypt

Source: Bab al-Futuh (the Gate of Conquests) in Cairo, Egypt. Completed in 1087, this is one of a set of gates built into the walls of the Fatimid city of Cairo by Armenian architects. It bears striking similarities to fortifications constructed at about the same time in Greater Armenia. B.O'Kane/Alamy Stock Photo.

Figure 6.3 The Castle of Ajlun, Jordan

Source: The Castle of Ajlun, Jordan. Overlooking the Jordan valley, this castle was built on the orders of Saladin near the crusader castle of Belvoir in 1184–85. It was enlarged during the reign of al-'Adil Muhammad and used at times as a link in communications using beacons and pigeons and as a store for weapons and supplies. Middle East/Alamy Stock Photo.

The equipment and weapons used during sieges by both Muslims and Franks were, on the whole, the same. Both attackers and defenders would use swing-beam trebuchets (stone-throwing machines). These were initially pulled by hand, but some later versions were pulled by a counterweight. As Fulton has shown, such weapons were used to destroy light defences, siege towers, and enemy artillery, as well as to harm troop formations, but did not generally strike with enough force to cause major damage to walls or towers (Fulton, 2018: 408–12). Soldiers also used crossbows and bows to shoot projectiles (both regular and incendiary) at each other, and defenders would also use rocks, javelins, incendiaries, and anything else suitable that came to hand to repel those trying to get into the stronghold being attacked. Attackers would use various forms of rams to damage walls and gates. Likewise, they would use wheeled, wooden shelters and siege towers to attack walls and protect those operating rams or conducting sapping operations, although it seems that the Muslims made less use of these; Nicolle ascribes this both to the fact that the Muslims were expert in the use of incendiaries, including *naft* (Greek fire), and hence were aware of how easy such constructions were to destroy, and to the fact that wood was always in short supply. Fulton concurs with Nicolle's comments about supplies of wood but also notes that siege towers were less suited to the more mobile nature of Muslim forces, which may have led to them preferring sapping as a means by which a greater number of troops could be brought into the fray at once (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 523–29; Nicolle, 2007: Vol. 2: 237; Fulton, forthcoming).

Naturally, the means used to prosecute sieges varied. Many of the weapons mentioned previously were intended to batter fortifications and their defenders, both to create breaches through which to gain entry, reducing the number of capable defenders in the process, and to intimidate the enemy into surrendering. Sappers would dig tunnels under walls, which they would then fill with incendiary materials and set fire to; the resultant conflagration would create a weakness in a wall's foundations that could cause it to collapse. Of course, if the enemy became aware of the sapping attempt, they might dig a moat or counter-tunnel to intercept the sappers, which could lead to furious battles being fought in the tunnels. Other means might be used to harm enemy morale, including playing drums during assaults to create an intimidating noise or forging letters from the defenders' allies or military superiors telling them to surrender. Naturally, the besiegers would attempt to cut off supplies to the stronghold that they were attacking, to weaken their enemies both physically and psychologically. At times, bribery or trickery led to the surrender of fortresses. Taking a city or castle by storm was probably the least-preferred option, as it would be very costly in terms of casualties and damage to the edifice in question, requiring a leader to rebuild his both his forces and

also the defences of the stronghold if he wanted to re-use it. Indeed, as Fulton has pointed out, the majority of successful sieges ended with the surrender of the stronghold's defenders (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 529–33; Nicolle, 2007: Vol. 2: 220–41; Fulton, forthcoming).

Fighting at sea

Before concluding our discussion of warfare, we should give brief consideration to the role of Muslim navies in the war with the Franks. From the outset, the crusaders outclassed the Muslims at naval warfare. When the Franks arrived in the Levant, the only political power there with any naval might was the Fatimid caliphate. However, while Fatimid fleets had been prominent in the eastern Mediterranean in the 10th and 11th centuries, by the time that the first crusaders arrived, the Fatimid navy was in decline; this was principally due to shortages of raw materials, especially timber, but was also exacerbated by other factors such as Egypt's limited shoreline and number of ports, adverse prevailing winds, and the impact of Fatimid internal political conflicts. The Franks, on the other hand, were supported by fleets from Europe, especially from the Italian maritime cities, which enabled them to seize most of the ports on the coast of *Bilad al-Sham* and hence secure a major tactical advantage. Saladin attempted to revive the Egyptian fleet with some success, even securing trade deals with the Italian city-states for raw materials, but was not sufficiently expert in naval warfare to use his ships effectively against the Franks, in the Mediterranean, at least; as we have seen, his maritime activities in the Red Sea were more successful. His successors and their political heirs, the Mamluks (see Chapters 8 and 9), on the whole did not seek to recover a naval advantage against the Franks. The Mamluk solution to the problem was to adopt a general policy of razing the ports that they took from the Franks, so that they could not be used again as bridgeheads for crusading forces (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 561–77; Nicolle, 2007: Vol. 2: 256–68; Hamblin, 1986: 79–81).

Yet we must not be too hasty to criticize the Muslim rulers of the time for their neglect of the maritime aspect of warfare. Admittedly, Muslim rulers could have made more efforts to prosecute the maritime military *jihad* against the Franks, but there were also a number of other factors that hindered the Levantine Muslim leaders from establishing a serious military presence in the Mediterranean Sea. As we have already noted, wood was always in short supply, and so were iron and wax, and given that the major source of these valuable resources for the Levant was Europe, their importation was periodically interrupted whenever military conflict led to a suspension of trade. In addition, both ships and their crews were expensive, and in many

cases, rulers' coffers were already drained from assembling land-based armies. In any case, the issue was not a lack of expertise. As Nicolle notes, the Muslims actually exceeded the Franks in terms of their theoretical expertise in shipbuilding and maritime activity; however, they did not translate this into practical dominance of the Mediterranean's waters (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 558–59, 576–77; Nicolle, 2007: Vol. 2: 256–68, esp. 256–57).

The Frankish influence?

To what degree were Muslim military tactics and technology influenced by the presence of the Franks? We have already touched on debates among scholars about the extent to which crusader military technology outstripped that of the Muslims, thus enabling the success of the First Crusade and the survival of the Frankish states for almost two centuries. Lynn White in particular described the crusades as 'implemented by the world's best military technology', and scholars seeking to understand the eventual demise of the Frankish states generally explained it as having been a result of the Muslims outnumbering the Franks rather than superior Muslim strategy or other causes (White, 1975: 97–112, esp. 111; France, 1997: 163; Hillenbrand, 1999a: 578–79). However, more recently, a number of scholars have argued for other factors playing a prominent part, in particular a lack of desire and capacity on the part of the Muslims to resist or extirpate the Franks; Carole Hillenbrand has noted that the Mamluks, who eventually swept the Franks from the coast (see Chapter 9), were distinctive in having 'the expertise, resources and will to conduct […] a series of sieges and to uproot the Franks definitively' (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 580). In the meantime, other scholars, including John France and David Nicolle, have shown that the Muslim forces were not actually inferior in terms of their technology and structure, as has previously been assumed. As Nicolle has noted, the small but significant contingents of heavy cavalry that were used in Muslim armies during the period were actually, at least until the end of the 12th century, more heavily armoured than the western knights, wearing both lamellar and mail armour and also using horse-armour; the latter in particular was only adopted by European cavalry in the 13th century. Likewise, the flow of influence with regard to gunpowder and incendiary weapons at the time was probably from east to west, with Muslim ideas influencing Frankish and European ones. Meanwhile, as we have seen, there was probably also a mutual exchange of ideas in military engineering as better ways of resisting and prosecuting sieges developed (France, 1997: 163–76; Nicolle, 2007: Vol. 2: 293; Nicolle, 1994: 31–32, 45). However, as Fulton has noted, this exchange was not simply two sided, but rather consisted of influences adopted by each architect from multiple building traditions (Franks, various Muslim states, Armenians,

Byzantines, and others), even as any given construction project would also be conditioned by the immediate environment and available materials and expertise, the political situation in the region, and local cultures and societies (Fulton, forthcoming).

Conclusion

As we have seen, it can be difficult to gain an understanding of wider interactions between the Muslims and the Franks, since the sources do not generally see revealing such information as their primary purpose. However, it is possible to gather some insight from the sources that are available, especially if one moves outside the chronological works to look at other types of writings, supplemented with archaeological and artistic remains. In this chapter, we have used these to look first at Muslim theories of *jihad* and religious warfare, observing that these concepts were highly developed by the time that the first crusaders arrived in the Levant. We have then discussed the armies, tactics, and means through which warfare was waged, in the process showing that such conflicts provided contexts in which the peoples of the various Muslim and Frankish (and other) states exchanged knowledge. In the next chapter we will look at interactions off the battlefield, including truces, trade, and other peaceful cultural interactions.

Further reading

For a detailed overview of the main issues addressed in this chapter, see Carole Hillenbrand, *The Crusades: Islamic Perspectives*. Developments in Muslim knowledge of the Franks during the period covering the First and Second Crusades are also discussed in Niall Christie, *Levantine Attitudes towards the Franks during the Early Crusades (490/1096–564/1169)* (1999). On *jihad* in particular, see David Cook, *Understanding Jihad* (2005); Michael Bonner, *Jihad in Islamic History: Doctrines and Practice* (2006); and Asma Afsaruddin, *Striving in the Path of God* (2013). On martyrdom in particular, see David Cook, *Martyrdom in Islam* (2007) and again Asma Afsaruddin, *Striving in the Path of God*. For a comparison of Christian and Muslim approaches to the concept of holy war, see Bettina Koch, *Patterns Legitimizing Political Violence in Transcultural Perspectives* (2015). On the question of mutual influences, the classic work is Albrecht Noth, *Heiliger Krieg und Heiliger Kampf in Islam und Christentum* (1966), but see also Thomas Sizgorich, *Violence and Belief in Late Antiquity* (2009). The debate about Charlemagne's wars mentioned previously is neatly addressed in Daniel G. König's article, 'Charlemagne's ›Jihad‹

Revisited: Debating the Islamic Contribution to an Epochal Change in the History of Christianization' (2016). For a study of the military aspects of the Muslim response to the crusades, see in the first instance David Nicolle, *Crusader Warfare*, especially Volume 2, which deals directly with the Muslim and Mongol armies and strategy (2007), and idem, *Arms and Armour of the Crusading Era, 1050–1350: Islam, Eastern Europe and Asia* (1999). Readers of French may also wish to consult Abbès Zouache, *Armées et Combats en Syrie de 491/1098 à 569/1174: Analyse Comparée des Chroniques Médiévales Latines et Arabes* (2008). In addition, Osprey Publishing produces a number of excellent short illustrated introductions to the armies and weaponry of the period; see in particular, from the Men-at-Arms series: *Armies of the Crusades*, by Terence Wise (1978) and *Saladin and the Saracens*, by David Nicolle (1986), and from the Warrior series: *Saracen Faris*, by David Nicolle (1994). For artillery, see Michael S. Fulton, *Artillery in the Era of the Crusades* (2018). On Muslim castles and siege warfare, see in the first instance Michael S. Fulton's forthcoming, comprehensive study, *Siege Warfare during the Crusades*, as well as Hugh Kennedy, *Crusader Castles* (1994); Kate Raphael, *Muslim Fortresses in the Levant: Between Crusaders and Mongols* (2011); and for readers of French, Cyril Yovitchitch, *Forteresses du Proche-Orient: L'Architecture Militaire des Ayyoubides* (2011). On Usama ibn Munqidh and his work, see Paul M. Cobb, *Usama ibn Munqidh: Warrior Poet of the Age of the Crusades* (2005), and his translation of both the Shayzari emir's 'memoirs' and extracts from the latter's other works, *The Book of Contemplation: Islam and the Crusades* (2008).

7 Making peace in the Levant

It can be very tempting to think of the crusades as a period of constant warfare, and this is certainly how some in the modern day would have us see it (see Chapter 10). However, we must remember that most interactions between Muslims and Franks during this period, as far as we can tell from the sources, were non-violent, with the battles punctuating what was for much of the time a period of co-existence between the various social and religious groups in the region. Thus, with this chapter, we will move away from the battlefields to consider these less violent aspects of Muslim-Frankish relations. We will begin by looking at the treaties made between the Muslims and the Franks, then consider the situation of Muslims under Latin rule. After that, we will discuss trade, before devoting closer attention to the opinions that Muslim writers present us with on some aspects of Frankish culture. In the process, we will see that Muslim-Frankish interactions were multifarious in nature, even though there were limits on how far they could ever come to a true understanding of each others' worldviews and perspectives.

Truces

As will have by now become apparent, it is clear that the state of hostility that, according to the pronouncements of some political and religious leaders, was meant to exist between the Muslims and the Franks did not prevent them from making peace agreements and allying with each other as the circumstances required (see, for example, *Doc. 7.ii*). Indeed, as Yehoshua Frenkel has noted, the traditional vision of the crusades as a period of conflict between Christians and Muslims has created a skewed impression in modern minds, when in fact the real situation was 'one of fighting side by side with commerce and negotiations' (Frenkel, 2011: 29); as it happens, Frenkel's description could also be applied to relations between the various Christian rulers of the region and likewise to relations between the various Muslim rulers. With regard to

Muslim-Frankish interaction, Yvonne Friedman has traced approximately 109 treaties successfully made between Franks and Muslims between the years 1097 and 1291 that are noted in the sources for the period, and there were undoubtedly more, the records of which have not survived (Friedman, 2011: 232). Treaties and alliances were undertaken by most of the factions active in the region at the time and allowed for both joint military activity and more peaceful forms of interaction, including not only a cessation of bloodshed but also agreements about division of territory, exchanges of prisoners, and in particular trade, which flourished in the region at the time.

By the time the first crusaders arrived, Muslim scholars had given detailed consideration to the question of peace treaties. Precedents for making peace with non-Muslims are found in the *Qur'an* and the biographies of the Prophet, and agreements are permitted under almost all circumstances, including from positions of military strength, to avoid further bloodshed or to allow the Muslims an opportunity to bring in reinforcements or supplies; from positions of military parity, to allow for the use of alternative means to resolve the conflict; and from positions of military weakness, to allow the Muslims to adapt to the needs of the current situation (Friedman, 2011: 231). The popular view is that the duration of peace agreements can range from a few days to a maximum of ten years, but as Gideon Weigert has shown in an important article, most Muslim scholars have actually agreed that peace treaties can have an unlimited duration, and it is clear that many Muslim rulers throughout history also took this view. Muslims are expected to abide by the terms of the treaties that they make, and the decision to break a peace treaty with the enemy should not be undertaken lightly; in particular, Muslims should announce their intentions to the enemy, both to maintain honourable conduct and to give the latter the opportunity to prepare for the coming conflict (Weigert, 1997: 401–4).

Despite the clear legal authorization that existed for making peace with the Franks, Muslim rulers were still aware of the potential impact that their treaties and alliances might have on the way that they would be regarded by their subjects, particularly if they were simultaneously seeking to be viewed as great heroes of the military *jihad*. Many were thus careful to ensure that they had publicized widely the justifications that they were using for their diplomatic relations with the Franks. Saladin, for example, while criticizing other rulers who concluded alliances with the Franks, frequently made agreements with the latter himself, one example of which is his peace treaty with Richard I. At the same time, he always ensured that his peace-making fell within the requirements of Islamic law, and in his official propaganda, he always justified these agreements on various grounds. Thus, a treaty might be presented as having been made to allow his troops time to rest and re-arm for

the next phase of conflict; it might be described as a device to encourage the enemy to disperse without a fight, on the understanding that it would be difficult for them to gather their forces again in the future, especially if the forces in question were crusaders from abroad; or it might be depicted as having been made out of generosity because the Franks, in the face of humiliating defeat by the Muslims, were pleading for peace. Peace agreements with the Franks of course also allowed Saladin to concentrate on extending his political power within Muslim lands or consolidating his territorial gains, although naturally his propagandists did not dwell on this (Eddé, 2011: 271–73). Thus, Saladin was careful to ensure that his negotiations with the Franks would not tarnish his image as a suitable leader of the Muslims by presenting them as having been undertaken out of unavoidable necessity or the clemency befitting a pious *mujahid*.

As indicated previously, Islamic legal teaching requires Muslims to adhere to the terms of the peace agreements that they make, and the Muslims of the time clearly expected the same of the Franks. This is not to say that Muslim rulers never reneged on the treaties that they agreed to (with the Franks or other Muslims), but it is striking that one particular feature of the Franks that we see condemned repeatedly in the Muslim sources is treachery, a condemnation that becomes especially vehement when the Franks broke truces without warning. Naturally, the benefits to be gained from not warning one's opponents before making a raid upon them must have made such actions attractive, but given that on the whole, the Franks generally adopted a similar approach to treaties with the Muslims, including usually warning them if they were going to break agreements, the occasions when this did not occur particularly offended the Muslim writers (Christie, 1999: 77–80, 194–96; Dajani-Shakeel, 1993: 212–13). The Muslim sources seem to have thought that these treacherous tendencies even led the Franks to deceive and work against each other for their own gains. We have seen that Ibn al-Athir, for example, describes the failure of the Second Crusade's siege of Damascus as resulting from the Franks of the Levant collaborating with the Muslims of Damascus by withdrawing support from their brother-crusaders from Europe and encouraging the latter to give up the siege, for which they were rewarded with the castle of Banyas [*Doc. 7.ii*]. Thus the Franks' predisposition to treachery is something that the Muslim sources depict as affecting not only the Muslims but also others with whom the Franks interacted, including themselves (Christie, 1999: 108–9, 211). That said, this feature of the Frankish personality is exaggerated by the sources for dramatic and propagandistic effect; both Muslims and Franks seem on the whole to have abided by the agreements that they made with one another, including the customary practices that were associated with their abrogation (Dajani-Shakeel, 1993: 211–13). Failing to do

so would have led to a reputation for untrustworthiness that could have impeded attempts to make treaties in the future.

Muslims under Frankish rule

Despite the hostility and resentment that they aroused, the Franks' conquests of Muslim territory did not result in mass migrations of Muslims from the lands that had fallen into Frankish hands. Certainly there were many who fled the Frankish attacks, particularly from cities in the aftermath of massacres like the ones that took place at Maʿarrat al-Nuʿman in 1098 and Jerusalem in 1099. However, it is clear that for most Muslim peasants, once the dust of the First Crusade had settled, life did not change significantly, except that they were now paying taxes to Frankish rather than Muslim overlords. It was neither practical nor desirable for the Franks to expel the Muslim inhabitants of their new territories, for the former were few in number and could not import people to work abandoned fields. The Franks became, on the whole, a ruling minority reigning over the majority inhabitants of the region, who, as we have noted, were a mixture of Muslims, eastern Christians, and Jews (Prawer, 2001: 46–93). Frenkel has argued that there was a significant change in the lives of the Levantine peasantry, in that the Franks' fusion of the pre-existent *iqtaʿ* system with European feudal institutions led to them becoming serfs under Latin rule and then remaining so under Saladin and his successors when they maintained the Frankish practices after they conquered their lands (Frenkel, 1997: *passim*). It is, however, very difficult to make generalizations about Frankish treatment of the peoples whom they conquered, as there was a great deal of variation from place to place, and every situation was different.

Why did most of the Muslim peasants acquiesce to Frankish rule? It is, of course, important to bear in mind that for peasants at the time, in both Europe and the Levant, the decision to abandon one's lands and move to another place was not an easy one and was often not practical simply because in doing so, one was giving up one's means of survival. However, it does seem that when faced with the complex ethnic and religious composition of the Levant, the Franks chose on the whole to enact only limited changes to the social structures that they encountered, enough to impose and maintain their ruling position but not to disrupt the established order any more than necessary. They allowed the subject populations to practise their own religions and did not generally seek to convert them to Latin Christianity, though the social hierarchy that they created in the process placed themselves firmly at the top, with the various other populations in subordinate positions, subject to a range of tax obligations and legal restrictions. The Franks did, of course, take over a number of Muslim religious buildings, including the Dome of the Rock and the

Aqsa Mosque in Jerusalem, but they did not engage in a wide-scale appropriation of Muslim religious sites. Meanwhile, a number of Muslims did convert to Christianity, and some even rose to positions of prominence in their conquerors' governments and military, but some Frankish lords found it more profitable to discourage or even prevent conversion of their non-Christian subjects, since non-Christian slaves who converted were legally entitled to their freedom (Kedar, 1997a: 190–93). Muslims were treated as inferior to Christians (including eastern Christians) in matters of law, and taxation was heavy, but Muslim peasants were taxed heavily by their Muslim overlords too, and in some cases, this actually resulted in Muslims under Frankish rule being taxed less heavily than their neighbours under Muslim rule (Kedar, 1990: 153–74). The Spanish Muslim Muhammad ibn Jubayr (1145–1217) travelled through Frankish lands on the way back from performing the *hajj*, which he had apparently undertaken in remorse at having drunk seven cups of wine (Ibn Jubayr, 2001: 15); in his record of his travels, he expresses his outrage at the sight of Muslims preferring Frankish to Muslim rule:

Our entire route passed through uninterrupted landed estates and orderly settlements, of which all of the inhabitants were Muslims, [living] in a state of contentment with the Franks. We take refuge with God from this temptation, which is that they give the Franks half their produce at the time that it is harvested, and a poll-tax for each person of one dinar and five qirat, and [the Franks] do not trouble them any more than that. […] The hearts of most of them have become dominated by this temptation, because of what they see of their brethren among the people of the Muslim regions and [how they are treated by] *their* governors, for the latter are in a state that is the contrary to theirs with regard to contentment and comfort. This is one of the calamities that is descending on the Muslims: the Muslim people complain of the tyranny of their co-religionist ruler and cherish the conduct of their opponent and enemy, the Frank who rules over them, being used to his justice.

(Ibn Jubayr, 1907: 301–2)

Ibn Jubayr thus criticizes both the Muslim peasants who choose to stay under Frankish rule and the Muslim overlords whose own behaviour makes this the more attractive option. Ibn Jubayr's piety, and his evident desire to prove it, of course influenced his account, and as a foreigner, he would not have been likely to have understood the nuances of the local interactions between Muslims and Franks that made this situation acceptable. It is also clear that the situation that he indignantly describes was not universally true (Kedar, 1990: 168), but despite these caveats, his comments do give us an insight into the extent to which some Frankish rulers sought to avoid alienating their Muslim

subjects.

A particularly well-known case of a significant number of Muslims fleeing Frankish rule is that of the Hanbalis of the Nablus region, about 30 miles north of Jerusalem, who emigrated to Damascus in 1156. This case has been studied in detail by Joseph Drory. According to the account of Diya' al-Din Muhammad al-Muqaddasi (1173–1245), a member of the Qudama family, which led the exodus, the Frankish lord under whom the Muslims of the region lived, Baldwin of Ibelin, used to levy inflated taxes on his Muslim subjects, as well as mutilating the legs of some of them. The emigration was led by Ahmad ibn Qudama, a religious scholar who fled to Damascus because Baldwin planned to kill him and because of the oppressive conditions under which he and his fellows lived, which he felt included a lack of religious freedom. Ahmad subsequently sent a call to his family to follow him, perhaps seeing better opportunities for himself and his family in Damascus, where the Sunni revival was taking place under Nur al-Din. The obligation to emigrate from infidel territory was in line with Hanbali religious teaching, being seen as a form of imitation of the Prophet Muhammad, who emigrated from Mecca to Medina to avoid having to live with infidels. When Ahmad ibn Qudama issued his call, it was enthusiastically received by some of the inhabitants of nine villages under Baldwin's rule; we have the names of 139 people who subsequently emigrated to Damascus. Others, however, rejected the call and attempted to prevent the migrants from departing, even informing the Frankish authorities of what was taking place, though the latter were unable to prevent the exodus. The Qudama family subsequently played a small role in the preaching and prosecution of the military *jihad* against the Franks (Drory, 1988: *passim*).

It is striking, of course, that Ahmad ibn Qudama's call received only limited support, and indeed those who rejected it sought to prevent those who accepted it from leaving, even to the point of calling in the help of the Franks. Even if one accepts Diya' al-Din's accounts of Baldwin's misdeeds as true (and they are likely exaggerated), one can still understand the reluctance of those who did not flee both to depart and to allow others to do so; we have highlighted the economic and survival implications of abandoning one's lands previously, and given that the inhabitants of medieval villages operated as unified communities, ploughing, sowing, and reaping together, the Muslim peasants of the Nablus region must have also been unwilling to allow the manpower of their villages to become reduced. In any case, migrations such as the one described previously were the exception rather than the rule.

The experience of Muslim prisoners in Frankish hands was rather different. They could be treated well, or they could be handled harshly, tortured, or even killed. It is clear that they were an important element in the economic and

especially military life of the Frankish territories; enslaved Muslims were often put to work, and in particular were used as manpower in the ongoing castle-building activities of the Franks. Among Muslims, ransoming prisoners is seen as a pious act; as we have seen, it is one of the uses to which the *zakat* is put, and at the time, both private individuals and political figures devoted additional funds and efforts to redeeming prisoners. Indeed, Usama ibn Munqidh makes a point of mentioning the many prisoners whom he personally ransomed (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 549–52; Kedar, 1990, 152–53, 1997b: 139–40; Usama, 2008: 93–95).

As Hadia Dajani-Shakeel notes, the Muslims were particularly unsettled by the prospect of their womenfolk being taken prisoner by the Franks and possibly molested; indeed, the fate of female prisoners was a concern shared by both the Muslims and the Franks, and it was assumed by both that women captured by the opposition would be unable to keep their virtue intact (Dajani-Shakeel, 1995: 206; Friedman, 1995: 81–85). Such assault was seen as harmful not only to the woman in question but also to the honour of the family, since it threatened the purity of the family bloodline (Cobb, 2005: 80–81). The Muslim poets who called for a response to the First Crusade certainly played on this concern, highlighting the distress that Muslim women were suffering as a result of the Franks' activities [*Doc. 5.i*]. In his *Kitab al-I'tibar*, Usama includes a number of stories that draw attention to this fear; perhaps the most striking is that of the attitude of a member of the garrison of the bridge defences of Shayzar:

In the garrison of the Bridge was a Kurdish man called Abu al-Jaysh, who had a daughter named Raful, who had been carried off by the Franks. Abu al-Jaysh became pathologically obsessed with her, saying to everyone he met, 'Raful has been taken captive!'

The next morning we went out to walk along the river and we saw a form by the bank of the river. We told one of the attendants, 'Swim over there and find out what that thing is.'

He made his way over to it, and what should the form be but Raful, dressed in a blue garment. She had thrown herself from the horse of the Frank who had captured her and drowned. Her dress was caught in a willow-tree. In this way were the pangs of despair of her father silenced.

(Usama, 2008: 162)

For Raful and her father, as for many among both the Muslims and the Franks, a woman's capture and the assumed rape that would follow were a fate seen as literally worse than death, to be avoided at all cost. Usama likewise speaks with great admiration of his mother who, when Shayzar was attacked by

Nizari Isma'ilis in March 1114, took his sister to a high balcony and was ready to push her off to her death rather than see her fall into the hands of the enemy. This does not mean that death was the normal recourse for a woman who feared capture, nor that women who had been captured were not ransomed back by the Muslims, but Usama's accounts, which may well be exaggerated, do nonetheless tell us that it was expected that every effort should be made to avoid such an occurrence in the first place (Usama, 2008: 136–37; Friedman, 1995, 83–84; Christie, 1999: 87–88, 2004: 76, 81; Cobb, 2005: 13).

In turn, Muslim treatment of Frankish prisoners in many ways reflected that of Muslim prisoners by the Franks. Frankish prisoners taken in battle by the Muslims faced the same uncertainty about their future. Some were tortured or killed out of hand, while others were enslaved and put to work. Some were given the choice of conversion to Islam or death, while others were simply released. We have already noted that in the wake of the Battle of Hattin in 1187, so many Frankish prisoners were sold into slavery that the market collapsed. As we have also seen, Saladin otherwise often let prisoners go free, which prompted criticism from Muslim authors who felt that in doing so he was allowing them to reinforce the Frankish armies (see Chapter 5). Of course, it is important to remember that feeding prisoners was a drain on resources, and for a sultan like Saladin, who was often short on cash, it must have been preferable to dispense with the burden, even if it swelled the enemy's ranks. He could at least be satisfied with the potential impact that the arrival of defeated, dispirited soldiers might have on enemy morale.

High-ranking Frankish prisoners were likely to be held for ransom, sometimes for long periods. Raymond III of Tripoli and Reynald of Châtillon respectively spent seven and fifteen years in captivity, during which they probably learned Arabic and gained some awareness of Muslim culture. Not all Frankish leaders were so lucky, though, and the Muslim sources are full of stories of grisly fates inflicted on them by principally Turkic Muslim leaders; Gervase of Basoches, mentioned previously, is just one example.

Trade

One of the major benefits of the peace treaties that the Muslims made with the Franks was vibrant trade between Europe and the Levant. As we have seen (see Chapter 2), there was already trade between the two regions before the launching of the First Crusade, and during this period, encouraged by the Frankish occupation of ports on the coast and privileges given to maritime trading powers such as Venice, such commerce increased. The mercantile powers became more involved in the crusading effort, and their agendas

became more of a factor in the perpetuation of the crusade, of which the so-called Fourth Crusade is the most infamous example. Thus, trade and crusade became interlinked and supported each other. Meanwhile, Muslim rulers also sought to capitalize on the opportunities that commerce could bring; indeed, when he was not fighting the Franks, Saladin sought to nurture trade links with Europe, recognizing the lucrative gains that the Mediterranean trade routes offered (see Chapter 5). Other rulers adopted a similar approach, despite the 'official' state of war that existed between the two sides, and commerce boomed. Indeed, it is clear that incidents of conflict between the Muslims and the Franks caused only temporary hiatuses; for example, trade was suspended in the summer of 1187 in the wake of Saladin's Hattin campaign but resumed as early as the spring of 1188 (Eddé, 2011: 451).

Muslim rulers could justify their support of trade activities through Islamic legal teaching, which permits trade with the enemy provided that Muslim merchants do not supply them with war materials (such as weapons; armour; and, according to some interpretations horses, slaves, and food) or prohibited substances (such as pork and wine). Importation of war materials is permitted, and foreign merchants are welcomed, provided that they pay customs duties on the goods that they sell (Khadduri, 1955: 223–30).

Foreign merchants were accommodated in *funduqs* (trade hostelries) located in Muslim cities and specifically designated for this purpose. These were constructed with the approval of local Muslim rulers and were subject to regulations governing how they operated, which presumably helped the Muslim authorities to control the foreigners visiting their lands. A late example of such regulations comes from the account of the Irish pilgrim Symon Semeonis, who visited Alexandria in 1323; he notes that foreign merchants were locked in their *funduqs* at times, a measure that seems to have been intended to control their movements when the Muslim rulers saw fit, such as at night and during Friday prayers (Semeonis, 1960: 51; Constable, 2003: 124).

Probably the most important trade centre in the Levant was indeed Alexandria, which was the main channel for goods passing from the Indian Ocean through the Red Sea to the Mediterranean. As we have noted, Italian merchants had been trading in Alexandria even before the onset of the crusades, and such trade only expanded as the period progressed. Acre also became a major mercantile centre in the late 12th and early 13th centuries, and to a degree, the two ports were interdependent, with trade between them forming an important part of the commercial activities of the eastern Mediterranean (Abulafia, 1995: *passim*; Runciman, 1965: 3 and 355).

Europe and the Muslim world had much to offer each other. European merchants bought both basics and luxury products, including spices (especially

pepper and ginger), embroidered and patterned rugs and textiles, dyes, glassware, porcelain, metalwork, gold, and base metal ores. In return, they supplied eastern markets with silks; woollen cloth; cereals; silver; and above all slaves, wood, and iron (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 404–7; Atiya, 1962: 182–86; Abulafia, 1994: 7–12). In providing these last three, the European merchants were effectively supporting the Muslim war effort; as we have seen, wood and iron were instrumental in the construction of siege weapons and ships, and many of the slaves became *mamluks* in the Muslim armies. While this state of affairs suited the Muslims, it generated significant resentment among the popes, who periodically tried to ban European merchants from trading with the Muslims, at times prohibiting trade completely and at others forbidding trade specifically in war materials. Even though the popes threatened excommunication of any who engaged in trade with the Muslims, their efforts were largely unsuccessful, for there was simply too much money to be made (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 404–5).

It is worth noting that the crusades were contemporary with significant developments in European intellectual culture, in particular the so-called 'twelfth-century Renaissance', which was based on the continued translation into Latin of both Arabic translations of Classical texts and the works that Muslim scholars produced as they synthesized and built upon these. However, the principal channels for such works seem to have been Iberia and Sicily, with the Latin states of the Levant playing only a secondary role (Irwin, 1995: 235). It is, on the other hand, possible to trace the transfer of some more practical innovations through the Latin states: for example, it was returning crusaders who brought the precise technique for making paper to Europe, and through obtaining techniques and materials from *Bilad al-Sham* in 1277, Venice was able to establish a virtual monopoly on glass production that lasted into the 17th century. Ceramic, leatherworking, metalworking, and wood carving methods also seem to have been copied by western artisans from Middle Eastern models during this period (Atiya, 1962: 205–50).

Muslim views on Frankish culture

We will now turn our attention to some aspects of Frankish culture as they are represented in the Muslim sources, considering how the Muslim writers portray their Frankish opponents. Space dictates that this will of necessity be a brief discussion, and readers are encouraged to consult the Further Reading section at the end of this chapter for more extended treatments of the topics addressed here. In conducting our investigation, we will be drawing particularly heavily on the data provided to us by Usama ibn Munqidh, who, as we have commented previously, has been lionized by scholars as the major

source for 'anthropological' information on the Franks, although it is also worth reminding ourselves that he is not an entirely trustworthy writer. We will naturally also be calling on the evidence of other sources where appropriate.

Religion

As indicated previously, it is clear that the Muslim writers were aware that the Franks were Christians, but the extent of their familiarity with the specifics of the Latin Christianity followed by the Franks is far more difficult to determine. In any case, it is also clear that they were keen to depict the Franks' religious beliefs in terms as negative as possible. The Muslim writers considered their understanding of God's wishes for and from humanity to be superior to that of the Franks; they were, after all, the recipients of the *Qur'an*, which was understood as being, among other things, a corrective to the misunderstandings that had crept into the religious practices of the earlier recipients of the religion of Abraham. It is interesting to note, as Nicholas Morton has, that in Europe around the same time, some Christian theologians were depicting the Muslims in similar terms: potentially virtuous people who were following the wrong religion (Morton, 2016: 42–56). In any case, the Muslims' sense of religious superiority was then exacerbated by the fact that the Muslims were at war with the Franks, with the result that the Muslim writers emphasize the points of conflict between Christianity and Islam and for the most part disregard the features shared by the two faiths.

As an example, Muslim writers are strongly critical of the Christian belief that Jesus, to Muslims a prophet secondary only to Muhammad, was God incarnate. When recalling how a Frank showed him an icon of Jesus and Mary, describing it as an image of 'God when He was young', Usama reacts with indignation, saying, 'May God be exalted far beyond what the infidels say!' (Usama, 2008: 147–48). Usama's disapproval is positively mild when compared to that of the anonymous writer of the *Bahr al-Fava'id*, who sometime between 1159 and 1162 noted the following:

> They believe in this utter iniquity, that their God came forth from the privates of a woman and was created in a woman's womb, and that a woman was made pregnant by their God and gave birth to him […] Anyone who believes that his God came out of a woman's privates is quite mad; he should not be spoken to, and he has neither intelligence nor faith.
>
> (*The Sea of Precious Virtues*, 1991: 232)

The author of the *Bahr al-Fava'id* is similarly contemptuous of Christian belief in the crucifixion and the Trinity, although with regard to the latter, the author

distorts even the *Qur'an's* misunderstanding of the Trinity as consisting of God, Jesus, and Mary (see, for example, *Qur'an* 5: 116–17). He expresses incredulity at such ideas:

The most amazing thing in the world is that the Christians say that Jesus is divine, that he is God, and then say that the Jews seized him and crucified him. How then can a God who cannot protect himself protect others? […] The Christian sects do not dispute (the belief) that Jesus is not (God's) servant, but God, and divine, that he created the earth, that he is pre-existent, creator, and sustainer. He descended from Heaven, joined with Mary, and Jesus and Mary became one God; he was crucified and buried, and after three days he rose and ascended to Heaven.

(*The Sea of Precious Virtues*, 1991: 231–32)

It is worth noting the vital position that both Jesus and Mary occupy in Muslim views of their salvation history. Mary, as the one chosen by God to bear the prophet preceding Muhammad, is held in enormous esteem (indeed, Maryam [Mary] is an immensely popular name given to baby girls in the Muslim world). Jesus, likewise, is hugely respected, and Muslim understandings of the end of his time on earth state that he was *not* crucified, but was instead taken up to Heaven by God and will return in the end times to slay the Antichrist. Here the author of the *Bahr al-Fava'id* focuses deliberately and exclusively on the points where Islam and Christianity disagree, in order to promote the superiority of Islam over Christianity at a time when followers of the two faiths were at war.

Most Muslim writers do not engage with Frankish Christianity on such a detailed theological level, and reading the Muslim sources, one almost gets the impression that the writers saw the Franks as blasphemers worshipping God incorrectly in often unspecified ways, pagans worshipping multiple gods (the Trinity), or idolaters worshipping cross-shaped idols. The cross in particular recurs again and again in the works of the Muslim sources as a symbol of the Franks' religious deviancy; as we have seen, the anonymous poet cited by Ibn Taghri Birdi describes crosses set up in the *mihrabs* of mosques [*Doc. 5.i.c*]. Likewise, Ibn al-Athir takes considerable satisfaction in describing the removal of the cross from the Dome of the Rock after Saladin's conquest of Jerusalem in 1187:

On top of the Dome of the Rock was a great gilded cross. When the Muslims entered the city on the Friday, several men climbed to the top of the dome to displace the cross. When they did so and it fell, everyone in the city and outside, both Muslims and Franks, cried out as one. The Muslims shouted,

'God is great!' in joy, while the Franks cried out in distress and pain. People heard a clamour so great and loud that the earth well-nigh shook under them.

(Ibn al-Athir, 2007: 334)

In this way, the Muslim writers associate the Franks with the pagan idolaters who opposed Muhammad's mission in the early days of Islam, thus marking the Franks as enemies against whom the Muslims are obliged to fight rather than merely misguided recipients of a previous revelation about the faith that the Muslims themselves follow.

Carole Hillenbrand has highlighted the particular link made by the Muslim sources between Frankish Christianity and ideas of pollution. This link is rooted in the fact that from the Muslim point of view the Franks were already physically unclean. Part of this was because they ate pigs, animals considered unclean according to Muslim teachings, but they were also considered personally unhygienic as well. Ibn Jubayr, who as we have noted was not a neutral observer, states of Acre, 'Blasphemy and oppression blaze [there], and pigs and crosses abound. [It is] filthy and squalid, completely filled with dirt and excrement' (Ibn Jubayr, 1907: 303), thus highlighting both the porcine and human uncleanliness associated with the Franks. Usama relates the story of a Frankish knight who, in a bungled attempt to adopt Middle Eastern customs, behaved with considerable lack of decorum in a Muslim bath-house in Maʿarrat al-Nuʿman; not only did he omit to wear the customary loin-cloth that would have protected his modesty and removed that of the bath attendant, but he also had his wife brought into the bath-house, against the customary practice of women and men using the bath-houses on different days to preserve appropriate social divisions between the sexes. Usama also highlights the fact that both the knight and his wife needed to have their pubes shaved, with the knight in particular having hair 'thick as a beard', a stark contrast to Muslims, for whom shaving pubic hair was a regular practice (Usama, 2008: 149). Usama's no doubt exaggerated tale only serves to highlight the idea that cleanliness (along with appropriate modesty and cultural sensitivity) is a foreign concept to the Franks, who are naturally filthy creatures (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 274–82).

This idea of lack of hygiene is then extended into the spiritual sphere, in that the Franks' occupation of Muslim territory, and especially religious sites, is depicted as constituting a defilement of Muslim territory in a way that partakes of the physical pollution that the sources associate with the Franks. It is important to remember that the Muslims called the Church of the Holy Sepulchre the 'Church of Garbage'. The quotation from Ibn Jubayr, previously, is striking for its juxtaposition of blasphemy, pigs, crosses, and dirt. By the same token, the anonymous poet mentioned previously refers to pigs' blood

being used by the Christians in the mosques where they have set up their crosses [*Doc. 5.i.c*]. 'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani describes the purification of the sacred spaces of Jerusalem in 1187 in detail, in a way that is admittedly undoubtedly embellished, given his frequently expressed vitriolic hatred of the Franks and his desire to present Saladin as a paragon of virtue; this purification apparently included the removal of structures that the Franks had added to the Aqsa Mosque and the Dome of the Rock (including carvings of pigs on a marble tabernacle over the sacred rock) and the washing of the Dome of the Rock with water, after which it was sprinkled with rose-water and incensed (al-Isfahani, 1965: 141–43). In this fashion, he depicts a spiritual purification of the sacred sites of the Temple Mount from the defiling presence of the Franks that takes the form of a physical cleansing using traditional ritual tools such as rose-water and incense. Thus, we see physical and spiritual impurity and purity are intimately bound up together in the eyes of the Muslim authors (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 282–303).

Not every reference made to Frankish Christianity is hostile. Even the *Bahr al-Fava'id* notes with apparent approval the respect with which the Frankish (and Byzantine) kings treat their clergy, though one could argue that this is only in order to suggest that Muslim rulers should follow this example (*Sea of Precious Virtues*, 1991: 215, 221). Usama also expresses his respect for Christian clergy, albeit in a guarded fashion; in his *Kitab al-'Asa* (Book of the Staff), an anthology of poetry and anecdotes on walking staves, he admits his admiration for a group of elderly Christian ascetics whom he saw in a church at the tomb of John the Baptist near Nablus. Usama was initially disappointed that he had never seen Muslim ascetics showing similar devotion, but at a later date, his concerns were eased when he saw the pious observances of a group of Sufis in Damascus, which were 'greater than those of the priests' (Usama, 2008: 253–54). Fabricated or not, naturally Usama is aware of the message that such an anecdote sends about the relative merits of Muslim and Christian ascetics; nevertheless, it is interesting that Usama, like the anonymous author of the *Bahr al-Fava'id*, was at least willing to concede that some of the Christians demonstrated admirable piety. However, the overarching message of this anecdote in some senses epitomizes the wider Muslim sentiment towards the Franks' religious beliefs; even those Muslims who accepted that their opponents' Christianity had some value still regarded the Franks as being, ultimately, inferior in matters of religion.

Law

Usama is our major source for Muslim views on Frankish legal procedures. Employing his typical mix of negative and (in this case seemingly) positive

stories, Usama provides three anecdotes describing his experiences of Latin justice. Two of these are clearly negative depictions of trials by ordeal; in one, he describes a case of trial by combat in which he saw two men fight to the death to determine the truth of a case, commenting, 'And that was but a taste of their jurisprudence and their legal procedure, may God curse them!' (Usama, 2008: 151–52). The second concerns a case of trial by water, during which the accused's guilt or innocence was determined by whether he would, respectively, float or sink in a cask of water; according to the beliefs of the time, water would reject a guilty person, thus forcing them to float and in the process indicating their guilt. In this case, the accused did indeed float and was punished for his wrongdoing by being blinded [*Doc. 14.ii*]. Again, Usama expresses his distaste by proclaiming, 'May God curse them'. Yet Usama also notes a counter-example, in that he describes an incident when he himself sought justice from King Fulk of Jerusalem (r. 1131–43) after the lord of Banias stole some sheep from the territory of Damascus during a period of truce. Fulk turned the case over to a group of knights, who, after consulting with one another, ruled in Usama's favour [*Doc. 14.ii*].

In this way, Usama provides evidence that seems on the surface to suggest that at times Frankish justice is arbitrary and violent, but at other times legal rulings are made through reason and consultation. Yet as Paul Cobb has shown, even the more civilized example of Frankish legal procedure would have struck Usama as strange and nonsensical, for in Muslim society, there were scholars who were trained in the niceties of legal procedure, devoting their careers to exploring and applying the law as derived from the *Qur'an* and the sacred traditions of the faith. The capacity to make fair and just legal rulings was thus ascribed to those appropriately qualified, not to men who were respected for their virtues as warriors; the ability to fight on the battlefield was not seen as something that made one an expert lawyer! The examples of trial by water and trial by combat noted previously, in the meantime, would have struck Usama as superstitious, barbaric appeals for divine intervention followed by vicious penalties inflicted on those found guilty. As Cobb has noted, the punishments themselves would not have upset Usama; indeed, Islamic legal codes include punishments such as death and amputation. However, the nature of the legal procedures that led to their imposition struck him as unreasonable, illogical, and lacking the true divine guidance that Muslims found in their own legal tradition (Cobb, 2005: 109–111).

Medicine

Usama's depiction of Frankish medicine is perhaps more genuinely balanced.

Some of his depictions are indeed highly critical; in possibly his most famous anecdote, Usama describes a Frankish physician who disregarded the reasonable remedies of a native Christian doctor from *al-Sham* and applied more violent treatments that resulted in the deaths of two patients [*Doc. 14.iii*]. As Cobb has indicated, this tale is probably intended more as a critique of the Frankish physician's haste to adopt the most drastic solution than of his methods *per se*, and scholars have been too quick to see it as representative of a vast gap between European and Islamic medical knowledge, when in fact both traditions based their treatments on a mix of the medical science of the Classical world and folk beliefs and also enjoyed relative parity in this period (Cobb, 2005: 107–8). Usama balances this and other negative depictions with positive ones, including a Frankish remedy for scrofula that he used himself [*Doc. 14.iii*] and a case of a Frankish doctor washing wounds with vinegar, leading to their being disinfected and healing (Usama, 2008: 146). Thus, his attitude towards Latin medical practices comes across as rather mixed, possibly more so than any of his other views on the Franks.

Sexual morality

We have already seen Muslim writers expressing concern for the safety and virtue of their womenfolk, both on an individual level and as an expression of wider family honour. Given this concern, it is not surprising that Muslim writers use negative depictions of Frankish attitudes towards women as a way to cast aspersions on the Franks as a whole. Usama states that the Franks 'possess nothing in the way of regard for honour or propriety', which he illustrates with a number of anecdotes about Frankish lack of concern for the virtue of their women. Probably the best known of these is an incident that Usama claims to have witnessed himself, which concerns a Frankish wine-seller who comes home and finds another Frank in bed with his wife; after a brief exchange, the wine-seller tells the other man, 'If you do this again, we'll have an argument, you and I!' and Usama comments, shocked, 'And that was all the disapproval he would muster and the extent of his sense of propriety!' [*Doc. 14.iv*]. Carole Hillenbrand has described this as 'a cleverly constructed apocryphal tale which plays shamelessly on the prejudices of Usama's readers', noting in particular that Usama is careful to enhance the critique of the Franks by not only highlighting their lack of propriety but also depicting the cuckolded husband as a wine-seller, a morally questionable figure in the eyes of a Muslim audience (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 348). However, if we accept that this is a constructed tale, despite Usama's claims, we can actually gain an insight into Usama's relations with the Franks that he may not himself have been aware of. It actually seems likely that the tale, with its threefold questioning

and punch-line, was in its original form a joke, and the fact that at the end of this exchange the husband still seems unaware that he has been cuckolded makes it heavily reminiscent of the *fabliaux*, European folktales in which stupid husbands do not realize that their wives have been unfaithful to them. The fact that the wine-seller seems to sell wine by letting people taste from the bottle that he carries, then is paid at the end of the day with that bottle, reinforces the idea that he is an idiot who can be outwitted by his wife and her lover. As we have seen, Usama claims to have had friends among the Franks, and it is thus not unrealistic to suggest that this story was told to the Shayzari emir by one of his Frankish friends, as a joke, but that Usama *did not get it*, as revealed by his final, shocked comment (Christie, 2004: 73–74).

Whatever the truth of this, Usama balances this and his other demonstrations of Frankish lack of concern for their women's honour with a tale that also acts as an effective contrast to the bath-house story mentioned previously. He describes visiting a bath-house in the Frankish-held city of Tyre, where he saw a (presumably Frankish) father who had brought his daughter in to wash her hair. The daughter's mother was dead, so the father had brought her into the bath-house on a 'man day', despite this being against normal custom. Usama notes that the young woman was so well covered up that his servant had to lift the hem of her clothing to establish that she was indeed female, a marked contrast to the immodesty of the knight and his wife mentioned previously, and this care for modesty, combined with the father's clear concern for his daughter's welfare, led Usama to make a comment that suggests that he himself was willing to subordinate propriety to the dictates of need: 'That's a kind thing you're doing [...] This will bring you heavenly reward' [*Doc. 14.iv*].

The Muslim sources show mixed attitudes towards Frankish women themselves. The poet Ibn al-Qaysarani seems to have been enraptured by some of the Frankish women, writing effusive poems praising their beauty [*Doc. 15.i*]. He was not the only Muslim to be struck by the attractions of Frankish women; Ibn Jubayr remarks on the beauty of a bride whom he saw in a wedding procession in Tyre, before commenting, 'We take refuge with God from the temptation of the sight!' (Ibn Jubayr, 1907: 305–6). Others were not as impressed; 'Imad al-Din is typically vitriolic, providing an extended pornographic passage in which he depicts women who arrived with crusading forces at Acre in 1189 as essentially religious prostitutes who sought to support the effort through sexual support of the crusaders. He in the process takes the opportunity to impugn both Christianity and the wider honour of the Franks in general, remarking that these women saw sexual intercourse as a form of Eucharist, and that unmarried men were not criticized by the Franks for sexual activity. In this, we see particular slurs cast against Christian attitudes towards

both the Eucharist and sexual propriety [*Doc. 15.ii*].

Muslim attitudes towards women actually fighting in the Frankish forces, and indeed women fighters in general, seem to have been largely negative, something that resulted from an overarching assumption that women should be restricted to the domestic sphere, while men should be the public faces of the family both in social life and on the battlefield. Indeed, Islamic religious scholars normally prohibited women from fighting in battle. The Muslim sources thus usually express amazement when they become aware of women fighting. Baha' al-Din notes that upon being brought a bow taken from a Frankish woman who fought against the Muslims at Acre in July 1191, Saladin was 'greatly surprised', and 'Imad al-Din likewise remarks on Frankish women fighting in the crusades with a clearly critical description of their activities on the battlefield (Ibn Shaddad, 2001: 158; and *Doc. 15.ii*). Of course, it is difficult to determine how far we should take such accounts at face value; suggesting that one's enemies were unable to restrict their women to their appropriate gender roles was a way of questioning their masculinity and hence denigrating them. However, there were women who fought in the crusades, and this seems to have surprised the Muslims who encountered them (Maier, 2004: 63–67, 69–70, 81).

Usama is an important exception to the general rule that Muslim writers disapproved of women taking part in battle. In his *Kitab al-I'tibar*, he highlights a number of cases of women who did so directly or indirectly. For example, his mother led the defence of Shayzar against Nizari Isma'ilis referred to previously, distributing weapons to the defenders; during the same battle, his aunt put on armour and shamed his male cousin into fighting, and an elderly servant named Funun veiled herself, took up a sword and plunged into the fray. Such activities prompted Usama to remark, 'No one can deny that noble women possess disdain for danger, courage for the sake of honour and sound judgment' (Usama, 2008: 135–37; Cobb, 2005: 12–14). However, we should not see in this a suggestion that Usama was a proto-feminist; these women took action in cases of need, when their home was attacked, rather than actively seeking to go on a military campaign. However, their willingness to do so clearly earned his admiration, even if he likely felt that fighting should normally be a male activity.

And additional nuance to this question can be added when we turn to the folk literature from the period. This would have been enjoyed by (usually male) members of all social classes, and includes both shorter tales, such as those found in the *Arabian Nights*, and also much longer works known as *sira* (epic) literature. Such works are virtually impossible to date with any degree of accuracy, but they are valuable because they give insights into wider society that are generally lacking in more formal works. As Remke Kruk has

demonstrated, such literature is full of examples of warrior women who are admired for their prowess. However, the characters in question are of course safely fictional; as Kruk has noted, their appearances in the literature thus enabled the audiences to explore anxieties about gender roles in a way that was not normally expected to impinge on real life. Yet at the same time, their popularity suggests, at least tentatively, that the idea of a woman fighting was, for some people at least, not as abhorrent as one might expect (Kruk, 2014: *passim*, esp. 225; Christie, 2019: *passim*).

The cultural barrier?

We have already seen that Usama's understanding of Frankish humour was limited by his lack of familiarity with European folktales. Another of his anecdotes is similarly revealing about his lack of a complete understanding of European society:

In the army of King Fulk, son of Fulk, there was a respected Frankish knight who had come from their country just to go on pilgrimage and then return home. He grew to like my company and he became my constant companion, calling me 'my brother'. Between us there were ties of amity and sociability. When he resolved to take to the sea back to his country, he said to me:

'My brother, I am leaving for my country. I want you to send your son (my son, who was with me, was fourteen years old) with me to my country, where he can observe the knights and acquire reason and chivalry. When he returns, he will be like a truly rational man.'

And so there fell upon my ears words that would never come from a truly rational head! For even if my son were taken captive, his captivity would not be as long as any voyage he might take to the land of the Franks (*or:* his captivity could not bring him a worse misfortune than carrying him into the lands of the Franks).

So I said, 'By your life, I was hoping for this very same thing. But the only thing that has prevented me from doing so is the fact that his grandmother adores him and almost did not allow him to come here with me until she had exacted an oath from me that I would return him to her.'

"Your mother,' he asked, 'she is still alive?'

'Yes,' I replied.

'Then do not disobey her,' he said.

(Usama, 2000: 161, 2008: 144)

As a result of ambiguities in the Arabic, the precise cause for Usama's concern with regard to his son being taken away to Europe is not apparent. He may have been worried that his son might be corrupted by European ways, or he

may have been genuinely distressed at the thought of having to part with him for a long period of time. One could also sensibly expect that a boy who had been raised to be Muslim might encounter difficulties in Christian Europe, even though a noble patron might mitigate these somewhat, which does lead one to question whether Usama's friend seriously intended his offer to be accepted or was simply making it as a token of his esteem. In any case, it is clear that, despite the apparent depth of friendship between them, Usama was not aware of the magnitude of the offer that the Frankish knight was making. In Europe at the time, it was common for the sons of noble houses to be fostered out to other households, usually those of their father's lord or another prominent nobleman, in order to learn courtly etiquette and the arts of war, which paved their way for entry into knightly society. Thus, having one's son accepted into such a 'training programme' was of great importance. Usama's friend was, then, offering to assist with his son's training and in the process do Usama himself a great favour. However, Usama, not fully understanding European knightly conventions, did not understand the significance of the offer and only saw it as a bizarre suggestion. We are reminded again that there were limits to Usama's understanding of Frankish ways that he himself was unaware of.

Conclusion

Despite the obfuscating influences of propagandistic agendas and hostile viewpoints, it is clear from what we have seen in the last two chapters that the Muslims and Franks interacted with each other on a number of levels both on and off the battlefield. Wars might be fought between Franks and Muslims, but they might also form alliances against other Franks, other Muslims, or both, or they might make truces and live alongside each other in conditions of relative peace. They might visit each others' cities, trade, perform pilgrimages to sacred sites in each others' territories, or simply spend time together interacting socially, exchanging medical remedies, attending each others' festivities, or attempting to swap jokes. However, there were limits to how far most Muslims and Franks could come to understand each other, limits that possibly derived from the legacy of violence between them; a lack of shared historical and societal formation; and, above all, from attitudes of religious and cultural superiority that prevented them from ever seeing each other as true equals. These insurmountable barriers would continue to poison Frankish-Muslim relations and are likely to have contributed to the rising atmosphere of hostility against the Franks that eventually resulted in their ejection from the Levantine coast by the Mamluks.

Further reading

Most of the topics addressed in this chapter are discussed in further detail in Carole Hillenbrand's, *The Crusades: Islamic Perspectives*. Again, developments in the period covering 1095–1169 are also considered in Niall Christie's *Levantine Attitudes towards the Franks during the Early Crusades*. A good introduction to the situation of Muslims under Frankish rule is Benjamin Kedar's article, 'The Subjected Muslims of the Frankish Levant' (1990). A number of scholars have looked at peacemaking and treaties between Muslims and Franks. The standard work on Muslim legal teaching about both war and peace is Majid Khadduri's *War and Peace in the Law of Islam* (1955), but for good starting points for further enquiry about treaties specifically during the period under discussion, see also Yvonne Friedman's 'Peacemaking: Perceptions and Practices in the Medieval Latin East' (2011) and Gideon Weigert's 'A Note on Hudna: Peace Making in Islam' (1997). On trade and cultural interchange, see initially Aziz S. Atiya's *Crusade, Commerce and Culture* (1962), but for qualification, see also David Abulafia, 'The Role of Trade in Muslim-Christian Contact during the Middle Ages' (1994). On transfer of knowledge through Sicily in particular, see Alex Metcalfe, *The Muslims of Medieval Italy* (2009). For an excellent and extensive treatment of *funduqs*, see Olivia Remie Constable, *Housing the Stranger in the Mediterranean World: Lodging, Trade, and Travel in Late Antiquity and the Middle Ages* (2003). On Usama's anecdotes, see *The Book of Contemplation: Islam and the Crusades* and Paul Cobb's *Usama ibn Munqidh: Warrior Poet of the Age of the Crusades*. Finally, on women in combat, see Remke Kruk, *The Warrior Women of Islam: Female Empowerment in Arabic Popular Literature* (2014), and Niall Christie, 'Fighting Women in the Crusading Period through Muslim Eyes: Transgressing Expectations and Facing Realities?' (2019).

8 The successors of Saladin, 1193–1249

In this chapter, we will discuss the period during which Saladin's successors and descendants held power in much of the Levant. After our chronological survey, we will consider the later Ayyubids' conflicts with one another, which occupied much of their attention in the half-century following Saladin's death. We will then examine their approach to the Franks, including both their general reluctance to advance their illustrious forebear's conquests of Frankish territory and the diplomatic and trade relations that they enjoyed with the Latin Christian states both on the coast and across the Mediterranean. Not all Muslims approved of such dealings, naturally, so we will also discuss the activities of some of the Ayyubids' critics, in the process establishing that their vocal disapproval was not, at this point, a serious concern for their rulers.

Chronological overview

At the time of Saladin's death, his territories were divided up, mostly among the various members of the Ayyubids who had ruled on his behalf. The most important centres were ruled by the three sons mentioned previously: al-'Aziz 'Uthman ruled Egypt, with his capital at Cairo (r. 1193–98); al-Zahir Ghazi controlled the vast northern principality based at Aleppo (r. 1186–1216); and al-Afdal 'Ali held the territories in between, with his capital at Damascus, and was designated as the new head of the confederation (r. 1186–96). The remaining territories were held by other members of the family; most notably, al-'Adil Muhammad ruled a disparate range of territories to the north and east, including the important cities of Edessa and Harran in the north, and Transjordan, including the fortress of Kerak, in the south-east. This meant that these important and exposed regions were in the hands of a senior and experienced member of the family who could defend them effectively (Humphreys, 1977: 83–84).

This division of territories soon broke down, however. Al-Afdal 'Ali and

al-ʿAziz ʿUthman quickly became embroiled in a struggle for supremacy, in which al-ʿAdil Muhammad intervened, initially as a mediator and then as a skilful player. In 1196, al-ʿAdil Muhammad took control of Damascus from al-Afdal ʿAli, ruling there in the name of al-ʿAziz ʿUthman, and then in 1200, he usurped power in Egypt from the young son of the now-deceased al-ʿAziz ʿUthman and declared himself head of the family. Two years later, he compelled the submission of al-Zahir Ghazi of Aleppo. Al-ʿAdil Muhammad's sons, al-Kamil Muhammad (d. 1238) and al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa (d. 1227), became al-ʿAdil's deputies in Cairo and Damascus, respectively.

The disputes that occurred in the ten years after Saladin's death in some senses set the tone for the decades that followed, as various members of the Ayyubid family competed with each other for power. Meanwhile, the Ayyubids' enemies, both Frankish and Muslim, took advantage of their disunity to stage attacks on Ayyubid territory; for example, immediately after Saladin's death, the Ayyubids had to deal with an attack by the Zangids, which was fended off and successfully turned into a further expansion of Ayyubid territory, while in 1197, Beirut and Sidon were lost to a fresh wave of crusaders. This mixture of internal disputes and the periodic need to deal with external threats would characterize the remainder of the Ayyubid period.

In 1217, a new force of crusaders arrived at Acre (the expedition commonly called the Fifth Crusade). After some initial action in *Bilad al-Sham*, they attacked Damietta in May 1218. In August, hearing that the Franks had stormed part of the city's defences, al-ʿAdil Muhammad set out for Damietta but died en route. His territories were divided between his sons al-Kamil Muhammad; al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa; and a third son, al-Ashraf Musa (d. 1237), who at the time held lands in northern *Bilad al-Sham* and the Jazira. In a last major show of unity by members of the Ayyubid family, al-Kamil Muhammad, al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa, and (eventually) al-Ashraf Musa co-operated to deal with the crusader threat. In addition to providing military support, in 1219, while the crusaders were dug in at Damietta, al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa dismantled the fortifications of Jerusalem and other strongholds in his territory to render them useless to the Franks as bases of operations should they subsequently take them by force or negotiation. The destruction of Jerusalem's defences caused widespread panic and led many to flee the city. Al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa also acquiesced to al-Kamil Muhammad's repeated attempts to persuade the crusaders to evacuate Egypt in return for most of the old Kingdom of Jerusalem, including the holy city itself, territories that at the time were under al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa's control. The offer was rejected by the crusaders, who were later themselves forced to sue for peace after becoming cut off by the Nile flood opposite al-Kamil Muhammad's camp at al-Mansura, in the Nile Delta, in the summer of 1221. An eight-year truce was agreed, and the Franks were

allowed to leave Egypt (Humphreys, 1977: 162–70; Riley-Smith, 1987: 149).

While these events were taking place, changes were happening in the Nizari Ismaʿili community that affected its relations with the other Muslim powers of both the Levant and Persia. In 1210, the new Nizari *imam*, Hasan III (r. 1210–21), publicly rejected Nizari teachings and declared that the Nizaris should now follow Sunni Islam. His instructions were accepted by both the Persian and Levantine branches of the Nizaris, although most of them assumed that they were in reality being ordered to conceal their true faith and present an appearance of adherence to Sunni Islam in an effort to safeguard their community from external enemies. However, the *imam's* claims were also accepted by the Sunni rulers of the surrounding territories, including the caliph al-Nasir, who soon made an alliance with the Nizaris. As a result, relations between the Nizaris and the other Muslim leaders improved and continued to be more cordial even after Hasan's successor, Muhammad III (r. 1221–55), effectively abandoned Sunni Islam and reintroduced Nizari beliefs and practices. By then, the rulers of the eastern Muslim states had a bigger problem anyway: the Mongols, about whom we will say more in the next chapter (Daftary, 2007: 375–86; Egger, 2004: 192–93).

Returning to the Ayyubids: relations between al-Kamil Muhammad and al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa soon deteriorated, and when he heard that the Holy Roman Emperor Frederick II (r. 1220–50) was preparing a new crusade, al-Kamil Muhammad sent an embassy to the latter in 1226, offering again to surrender Jerusalem and its surroundings, but this time in an attempt to gain aid against his brother, or at least to disquiet him (Humphreys, 1977: 184; Atrache, 1996: 93). Frederick had become the titular king of Jerusalem a year earlier through his marriage to the heiress Isabella II. However, by the time that he reached the Holy Land in September 1228, circumstances had changed. In 1227, al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa had died of dysentery, and Isabella had died in 1228 giving birth to a son, Conrad, for whom Frederick was now only a regent. In addition, Frederick had delayed his departure due to problems at home, a delay to which the pope objected, excommunicating the emperor. Thus, when Frederick arrived in the east, he was in a much weaker political and ideological position. Meanwhile, al-Kamil Muhammad's major rival had disappeared from the scene. Nonetheless, the sultan still had to avoid alienating the Muslims while also engaging with the Franks as promised; he could not afford for the Franks to renew hostilities. He was also at the time embroiled in negotiations with his own family over the fate of al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa's inheritance. In the end, an agreement between Frederick and al-Kamil Muhammad was made in February 1229. The precise terms are unclear, but it seems that the Franks were to receive Jerusalem, along with the villages in a corridor linking the holy city to the coast. However, the other villages surrounding Jerusalem were to remain in

Muslim hands, as was the Temple Mount, though the Franks would be allowed to visit the Temple area to pray. The Franks were not to rebuild the defences of Jerusalem, but at the same time, the Muslim inhabitants of the city were forbidden from living there any longer. Finally, a truce was made for ten years, five months, and 40 days (Gottschalk, 1958: 157; Humphreys, 1977: 202–3). The agreement was greeted with vocal protests on both sides, but Frederick crowned himself in the Holy Sepulchre on 18 March, before returning to Acre the following day, where he faced further demonstrations. On 1 May, he attempted to leave Acre discreetly but was spotted as he passed by the meat market and pelted with offal (Riley-Smith, 1987: 151). Frederick, the excommunicate crusader, had managed to achieve the return of Jerusalem to Christian hands, but in a way that pleased nobody.

Jerusalem did not stay under Christian control for long. In 1239, the Ayyubid ruler of Kerak, al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa's son al-Nasir Dawud (d. 1258), took advantage of the weakness of the Frankish forces and occupied the Holy City. It was returned to the Franks the following year by al-Nasir Dawud and the Ayyubid ruler of Damascus, al-Salih Ismaʿil (r. 1237 and 1239–45), in return for aid against al-Kamil Muhammad's son al-ʿAdil II Abu Bakr (r. 1238–40), but in 1244, the city was taken by Muslim troops again.

The troops in question were known as Khwarazmians. In the wake of the collapse of the Great Saljuq Sultanate in 1157, much of that region came under the control of a dynasty known as the Khwarazm-Shahs, but their state was in turn conquered in 1220 by the Mongols. The Khwarazmians, then, were Turkic warriors who had previously served the Khwarazm-Shahs in the Muslim east but had been displaced by the Mongol advance and were now surviving by working as mercenaries. They had first become involved in the twisted web of Ayyubid politics as allies of al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa in 1225 and had remained an active and undisciplined element in the northern Jazira thereafter. By now, they were (loosely) in the service of al-Salih Ayyub (r. 1240–49), who had succeeded in Egypt in 1240 after the deposition of his brother al-ʿAdil II Abu Bakr by discontented troops. In the early summer of 1244, they mounted a major raid into Palestine, looting and pillaging as they went, and in July, they attacked Jerusalem. After a resistance of a little over a month, the garrison in the citadel surrendered, by which time the Khwarazmians had comprehensively sacked the city, including its Christian holy sites. They then joined forces with an army sent by al-Salih Ayyub and defeated a coalition of Frankish and rival Ayyubid forces at Harbiyya (La Forbie) in October, a victory that helped al-Salih Ayyub to take Damascus from al-Salih Ismaʿil the following year. However, the Khwarazmians, who felt that they had not been adequately rewarded for their services, conducted destructive raids in the region and, in alliance with Ayyubid opponents of al-Salih Ayyub, besieged

Damascus itself in March 1246, only to be attacked, defeated, and scattered by troops from Homs and Aleppo (Humphreys, 1977: 274–87).

Three years later, al-Salih Ayyub faced a new challenge, as on 4 June 1249, crusading forces under Louis IX of France (St Louis, r. 1226–70) attacked Damietta, taking the city after two days. Al-Salih Ayyub, like al-Kamil Muhammad before him, made his base of operations at al-Mansura, but he was by now seriously ill, and on 21 November, he died. The timing could not have been worse; the sultan's son and heir al-Muʿazzam Turan-Shah was far away, governing territories in the northern Jazira, and the Frankish forces were preparing to advance on the Muslim camp. It seemed that Egypt would soon be lost to the crusaders.

To inhabitants of the eastern Mediterranean region at the time who looked beyond the Levant to places elsewhere, it might have seemed that the Muslim world was decidedly beleaguered, for not only were there crusaders active in the Nile Delta and Mongols advancing through Muslim territory from the east, but in both Sicily and Iberia, Muslims were beset by Christians. Indeed, by 1249, the end had come for the Muslim community on Sicily. In 1189, in the wake of the death of King William II (r. 1166–89), many Muslims, discontented about the increasing economic, religious, and social pressures to which their communities were subject, rebelled against the new king, Tancred (r. 1189–94). Tancred defeated the rebels in battle, then bought them off, but the peace was temporary. At the end of the 12th century, Sicily became contested between the German Hohenstaufen family and Pope Innocent III (p. 1198–1216). The Muslims of western Sicily allied themselves with the Hohenstaufens, and as a result were the losers when papal forces defeated the Hohenstaufen ones at Monreale in July 1200. Innocent negotiated the fealty of the Muslims of the island, but, again, this was a temporary respite. After the Muslims of Sicily sided with Otto IV of Brunswick (r. 1198–1215) against the Hohenstaufen Frederick II, the latter invaded in early 1221 to reassert his authority there, putting down the rebellion by 1223. He then started deporting the Muslim population to Apulia on the mainland; by 1246, the Muslim population of Sicily had been largely removed (Metcalfe, 2009: 275–98; Cobb, 2014: 261–65).

Meanwhile, the early 13th century saw the decline and fall of the Almohad caliphate in Iberia and North Africa. Both contemporary Muslim and Christian writers and modern scholars have seen the defeat of the Almohad forces by a coalition of Spanish Christian armies at Las Navas de Tolosa in 1212 as the tipping point. However, as Amira Bennison has pointed out, more recently, scholars have reassessed the impact of the battle, pointing to a concatenation of other factors that led to the eventual collapse; such factors included the accession of a number of short-lived caliphs, political and ideological disputes within the ruling class, internal rebellions, and attacks by the Christians from

the north and other Muslim dynasties in North Africa. In the face of these pressures, the Almohads effectively abandoned Iberia in 1228 and then gradually lost power in North Africa over the subsequent decades. In 1269, their capital, Marrakesh, was taken by another Berber dynasty known as the Marinids, who by then were the dominant power in Morocco and would continue to rule there until 1465. In the meantime, Christian-led forces had continued to take Muslim-ruled territory, and by 1248, the only major Muslim state remaining in Iberia was the Kingdom of Granada. This held out until 1492, when the 'Catholic Monarchs', Ferdinand II of Aragon (r. 1479–1516) and Isabella I of Castile (r. 1474–1504), took the kingdom's last territories, including Granada itself (Bennison, 2016: 109–17; Egger, 2004: 186–87; Kennedy, 1996: 249–304).

Family politics in the Levant

The Ayyubid dominions were a confederation rather than a single unified entity. The major territories under their control were for the most part ruled by members of the family who operated essentially as independent sovereigns. While there was normally a figure who was recognized as the head of the confederation, usually the ruler of Egypt, the extent to which he could enforce his authority over the other rulers was limited. As Humphreys has noted, this familial confederative power structure was not unusual at the time, but it was also prone to disruption through the ambitions of its members (Humphreys, 1998: 5–7). The lack of a strong central figure whose authority was continuously reinforced gave the Ayyubid princes plenty of freedom to plot against each other and their nominal overlord.

Ayyubid family politics were vicious but not normally deadly. An Ayyubid ruler who was defeated by his rivals was likely to be displaced rather than killed, often ending up in a smaller appanage. This meant that he had the opportunity to continue to participate in family disputes and might attempt to regain his lost position. An illustrative example is al-Nasir Dawud, whom Joseph Drory describes as a 'much frustrated Ayyubid prince'. Al-Nasir Dawud succeeded to the throne of his father al-Mu'azzam 'Isa in Damascus in 1228 but was ousted from the city by al-Kamil Muhammad and al-Ashraf Musa in 1229. He was compensated with territories in Palestine and Transjordan, making his capital at Kerak, and from there continued to be a participant in the tense family politics of the region. Al-Nasir Dawud lost further territories to al-Kamil Muhammad and al-Ashraf Musa, and when the latter died in 1237, he was denied Damascus, despite having been promised it by al-Kamil Muhammad, the nominal head of the family at the time. An attempt by al-Nasir Dawud to take control of Damascus in 1238 after al-Kamil Muhammad's

death resulted only in a disastrous military defeat at the hands of its Ayyubid governor. As we have seen, al-Nasir Dawud did manage to take control of Jerusalem in 1239 but was forced to hand it back to the Franks the following year, and in the Ayyubid internal conflicts of the 1240s, he was on the losing side and had to concede more territory to the victorious Egyptians. In 1249, he was forced to leave Kerak, initially moving to Aleppo but then spending some years wandering *Bilad al-Sham* and the Jazira in search of a new state, which included two periods of imprisonment by other Ayyubids who saw him as a threat. Eventually al-Nasir Dawud was sent east to lead an army to support Baghdad against the Mongols, but he failed to reach the city before the latter took it in February 1258. Tired and worn out, he fell ill and died in the following May, aged 53 (Drory, 2003: passim). Thus in al-Nasir Dawud we see a figure who, after being displaced from his original holdings, continued to manoeuvre and scheme in an attempt to restore his fortunes. The predisposition of various members of the Ayyubid family to such machinations only enhanced the political turbulence of the time.

The Ayyubids and the *jihad*

In his account of the year 628 (1230–31), Ibn al-Athir notes that 'For now we do not see among the princes of Islam one who has a desire to wage the Jihad or to aid the religion. On the contrary, each of them looks to his pleasures, his sport and the oppression of his subjects. For me this is more frightening than the enemy' (Ibn al-Athir, 2008: 304–5). Ibn al-Athir's description of the situation is, naturally, exaggerated, but nonetheless, Ayyubid approaches to the Franks shifted in this period. In some senses, we see a return to the early years of the crusading period, in which some rulers conducted periodic expeditions against the Franks but at the same time concentrated more often on conflicts with other Muslim rulers and employed the Franks as allies when the situation warranted it. We will return to the medieval critics of the Ayyubids later, but it is worth considering why we see a decline in attacks on the Franks by the Ayyubids.

Certainly the death of Saladin played a part; his personal charisma, military talents, and skilful use of propaganda had enabled him to unite the Muslim rulers of the Levant in a way that was never duplicated by his successors. However, as we have seen, after Saladin recaptured Jerusalem in 1187, even he had encountered difficulties in holding his coalition together. Likewise, a number of the Ayyubid rulers must have recognized that without the draw of Jerusalem, it would be difficult to unite their fractious relatives under their command. Jerusalem itself seems also to have been seen differently by Saladin's successors. As Donald Little and Carole Hillenbrand have noted, the

Ayyubid rulers never lost sight of the religious significance of the city, but this did not mean that they promoted settlement in the Holy City or used it as a capital, and they were willing to allow pragmatism to trump principle if handing it over would free them from crusader attacks (Little, 1997: 181–85; Hillenbrand, 1999a: 211–23). In actually doing this in 1229, al-Kamil Muhammad aroused fierce resentment among the common folk and religious classes, as we shall see, but this did not prevent him from honouring his agreement with Frederick II.

R. Stephen Humphreys has remarked on an additional factor that led to reduced enthusiasm among the Ayyubids to fight the Franks: the latters' persistence. Despite the Franks having been driven out of Jerusalem and repeatedly defeated thereafter, there were always more of them arriving from Europe, in a seemingly inexhaustible supply. As Humphreys puts it, 'the Ayyubids were terrified of the Franks, who, however badly mauled they might be, just kept coming back' (Humphreys, 1998: 9–10). Thus, the Ayyubids were willing to go to extraordinary lengths in making treaties and conceding territory in order to avoid provoking the arrival of fresh waves of crusaders. This does not mean that the Ayyubids allowed themselves to be passive victims of Frankish aggression, but they generally avoided conflict where they could, only engaging in military action against the Franks if severely provoked.

It is also worth considering the use of *jihad* propaganda by Saladin's successors. As Hillenbrand has noted, in official rhetoric, Ayyubid rulers continued to be celebrated with titles exalting their activities as *mujahids*, even if their actions did not match up, and Laila Atrache has noted the ongoing depiction of the Franks as polytheists and infidels in the historical sources for the period, works that could also have a propagandistic function (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 204–7; Atrache, 1996: 71). Sivan has commented that the Ayyubids even sought to justify their activities against each other with *jihad* propaganda, claiming, much as Saladin had, that they were only fighting against other Muslims for the sake of the long-term goal of defending the coast against the Franks (Sivan, 1968: 135). However, it cannot be denied that by this time the grandiose titles and pious pronouncements made by the Ayyubids had begun to ring suspiciously hollow.

Yet at the same time, it is important to remember that the military *jihad* was but one aspect of the wider *jihad* doctrine in Islam. As we have seen, even greater importance was given by a number of thinkers to the struggle to promote the faith within both the individual and the state. Humphreys comments, 'In the internal *jihad*, Saladin's heirs performed splendidly', noting both the religiously educated nature of the rulers and their generosity in endowing religious buildings (Humphreys, 1998: 9). Hillenbrand remarks that even though they did not make it their capital, the Ayyubids devoted

significant resources to creating and expanding religious institutions in Jerusalem (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 211–13). In this way, the Ayyubids pursued the greater, internal *jihad* with more enthusiasm than the lesser, military *jihad*, through the support of the religious life of their states.

Relations with the Franks

Naturally, as before, Ayyubid interactions with the Franks took on forms other than conflict on the battlefield. Hillenbrand comments, 'The Ayyubid period witnessed the full integration of the Franks as local Levantine rulers' (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 203). Certainly there is no denying that by now, the Franks of the coast had become full participants in the power struggles of the Ayyubids and the surrounding states of the Levant, but we might in fact go one stage further and suggest that even as the period saw a deepening of the conflicts and rivalries in the region, it also witnessed a deepening of co-operative relations between states of the Levant and Europe, including and going beyond the intermediary territories held by the Franks on the Levantine coast. As noted in the previous chapter, trade relations had existed between the major Italian trading powers and the Levant even before the onset of the crusades and only expanded as the decades passed. The Ayyubid rulers continued to seek to capitalize on this relationship, allowing both Italian and other merchants to establish more *funduqs* in a number of cities in their territories in order to expand commerce between their states and Europe. Humphreys also suggests that the Ayyubids deliberately refrained from seeking to re-conquer coastal towns because they believed that foreign merchants would find towns under Frankish control to be more attractive trade centres, and the wealth generated in them would eventually pass to the Ayyubids' own states through trade between these towns and the Muslim hinterland (Humphreys, 1998: 9). In addition to trade, we also have records of diplomatic contacts between the Ayyubids and European rulers, which had begun as early as 1175 with negotiations between Saladin and Frederick I Barbarossa (Eddé, 2011: 244–46). We have already seen that al-Kamil Muhammad engaged in discussions with Frederick II even before the latter's departure for the east, with a view to strengthening his hand against al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa. In 1248, Frederick II wrote to al-Salih Ayyub, warning him of Louis IX's plans to conduct a crusade in the east, suggesting that al-Salih Ayyub hand Jerusalem over to the Franks and offering to act as a mediator between the Ayyubid sultan and the French king (Eddé, 1996: 68). We also have records of exchanges of gifts between Frederick II and al-Kamil Muhammad. Frederick sent al-Kamil Muhammad a number of horses, including his own, which bore a golden saddle encrusted with precious stones;

and later a polar bear, which attracted attention because of its talents at catching fish; and a white peacock. Al-Kamil Muhammad, not to be outdone, responded with treasures from India, Yemen, Iraq, *Bilad al-Sham*, and Persia worth twice as much as the horses and saddle that Frederick had sent, as well as a golden saddle bearing jewels worth 10,000 Egyptian dinars (Gottschalk, 1958: 217; Atrache, 1996: 97–98, 174). Thus, the reign of the Ayyubids as a whole sees the beginning of integration of European states proper into the political affairs of the east through trans-Mediterranean diplomacy that went beyond the necessary diplomatic contacts between the Muslim rulers and their Frankish counterparts who happened to be on crusade in the Levant.

Diplomacy during actual crusading expeditions also took on new and unusual forms. One incident, recorded only in the European sources, involves a visit allegedly made to al-Kamil Muhammad by St Francis of Assisi during the crusade of 1218–1221. St Francis is said to have visited al-Kamil Muhammad in his camp, probably during a period of truce and negotiations in September of 1219, and remained there for a few days before returning unharmed to the crusader side. What exactly took place during the alleged encounter is unknown, and no contemporary Muslim source mentions it. St Francis would probably have been received politely and admitted into the presence of the sultan, who would have listened graciously to the friar's preaching but otherwise been unmoved. Fareed Munir suggests that St Francis and al-Kamil Muhammad may have found that they shared a similar spirituality and desire for peace, seeing them as pioneers of inter-religious dialogue, but in the absence of evidence from any contemporary eyewitnesses, such claims should be considered to be no more than speculation (Munir, 2008: passim). Regardless of its veracity or lack thereof, the incident captured the imaginations of European writers both at the time and in the centuries that followed but would probably have been seen by the Muslims as just another visit from what Tolan calls 'a barefoot Italian ascetic, a sort of Christian Sufi'. While non-Muslims were legally prohibited from seeking to convert Muslims, al-Kamil Muhammad was himself open to religious discussions and would have been likely to have tolerated St Francis' preaching, though he probably would not have seen it as anything remarkable (Tolan, 2009: 5–6). The very different treatments of St Francis' visit in the Frankish and Muslim sources are a salutary reminder for historians that the significance of any given event very much depends on the viewpoint of the person describing (or not describing) it.

Critics of the Ayyubids

As indicated previously, the Ayyubids' approach to the Franks generated a great deal of resentment among Muslim thinkers. The hand-back of Jerusalem

to Frederick II, not surprisingly, was greeted with an outpouring of hostility. Ibn al-Athir comments, 'The Muslims were outraged and thought it monstrous. This caused them to feel such weakness and pain as are beyond description' (Ibn al-Athir, 2008: 294). Both religious scholars and common folk whom they whipped up with their preaching railed against what had happened; the best known of the former was the immensely popular Damascene preacher Sibt ibn al-Jawzi (d. 1257), a grandson of 'Abd al-Rahman ibn al-Jawzi, whose account of the crusader attack on Damascus we saw in Chapter 4. Sibt ibn al-Jawzi settled in Damascus in about 1204, spending most of his time there teaching and writing, when he was not travelling on preaching tours. He devoted much of his efforts to *jihad* preaching, and when the agreement was made, al-Nasir Dawud, at the time the ruler of Damascus but already besieged by his uncle al-Ashraf Musa, ordered Sibt ibn al-Jawzi to preach against al-Kamil and his treacherous handover of the holy city to the infidel, a task that the Damascene preacher was happy to undertake. It is thus no surprise that when al-Ashraf Musa, reinforced by al-Kamil Muhammad, compelled al-Nasir Dawud to leave Damascus, Sibt ibn al-Jawzi was obliged to leave, too (Talmon-Heller, 2007b: 71–72). In his own chronicle, *Mir'at al-Zaman fi Ta'rikh al-A'yan* (The Mirror of Time Concerning the History of Important People), when describing the reaction of the inhabitants of the region to the events, Sibt ibn al-Jawzi states, 'The news of the surrender of Jerusalem to the Franks arrived, and turmoil erupted in all the lands of Islam. The misfortunes [associated with the events] were so distressing that ceremonies of mourning were held' [*Doc. 17.ii*]. Given his own involvement in the events of the time, it is not surprising that Sibt ibn al-Jawzi's account thus not only corroborates but also expands on that of Ibn al-Athir.

One might expect that the Ayyubids' dealings with the Franks, and particularly the giving of Jerusalem to them, would have shattered the alliance between the religious and political classes that we saw built up in previous chapters. However, as Sivan has shown, this was not actually the case. As we have seen, the Ayyubids continued to patronize the religious classes within their states, founding religious institutions and taking a personal interest in religious affairs, something that did much to win over the religious scholars who were keen to see Islamic orthodoxy promoted in society. However, many of these scholars continued to protest against their patrons' collaboration with the Franks and to encourage them to engage in the military *jihad* against the enemy, something that Hillenbrand has described as 'an embarrassment rather than a stimulus to these sultans' (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 223). Yet the protest movement was never sufficiently widespread or strong to constitute a real threat to the Ayyubids' power, which rested first and foremost upon their armies, and so while the Ayyubid rulers could not completely neglect the role

of the religious classes in supporting their authority, they could for the most part proceed as they wished (Sivan, 1968: 141–55); the fact that al-Kamil Muhammad was able to commit the highly controversial act of handing Jerusalem over to the Franks without incurring greater opposition is testimony to this fact. The religious-political alliance was shaken but not seriously threatened.

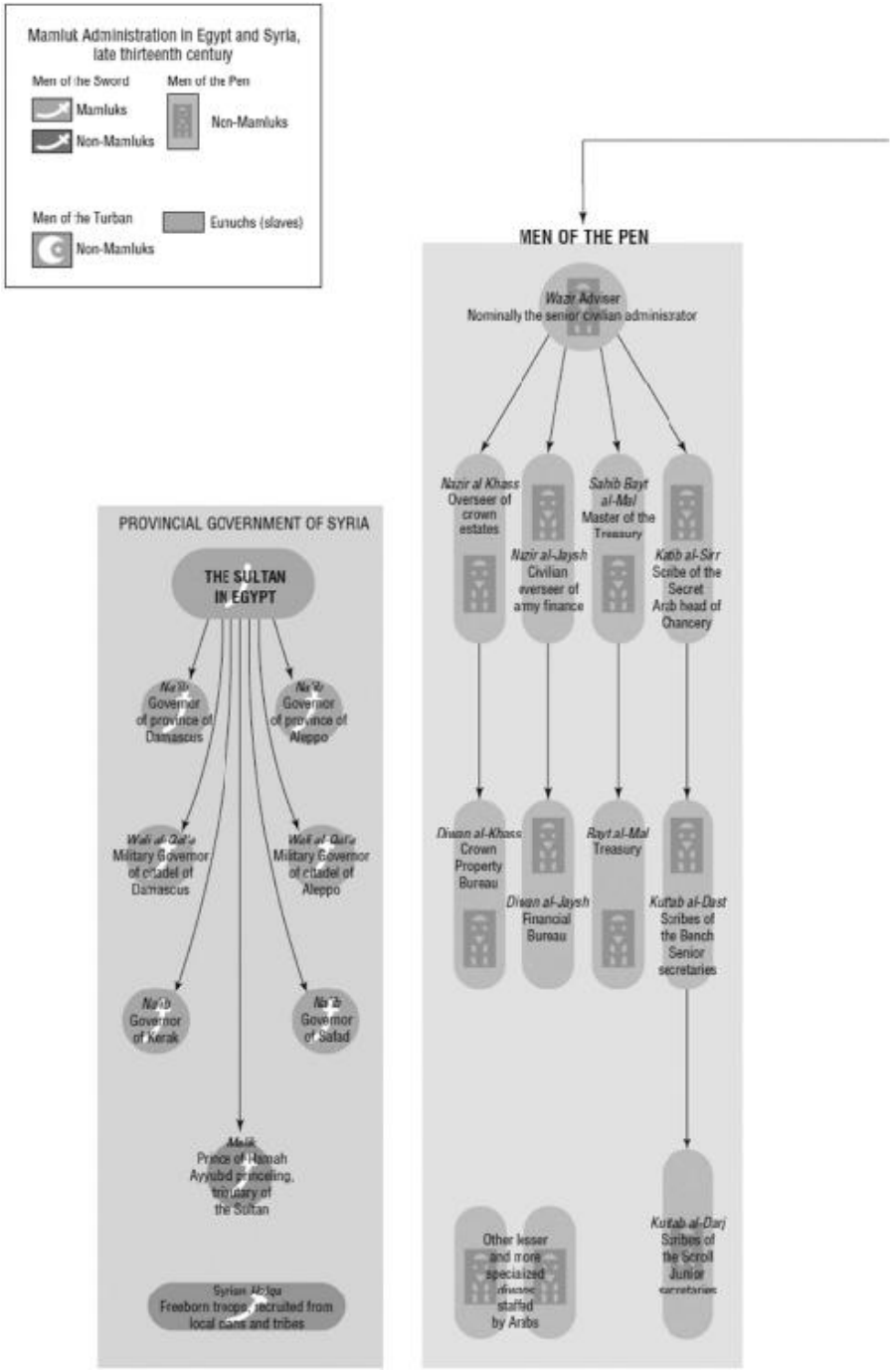
Conclusion

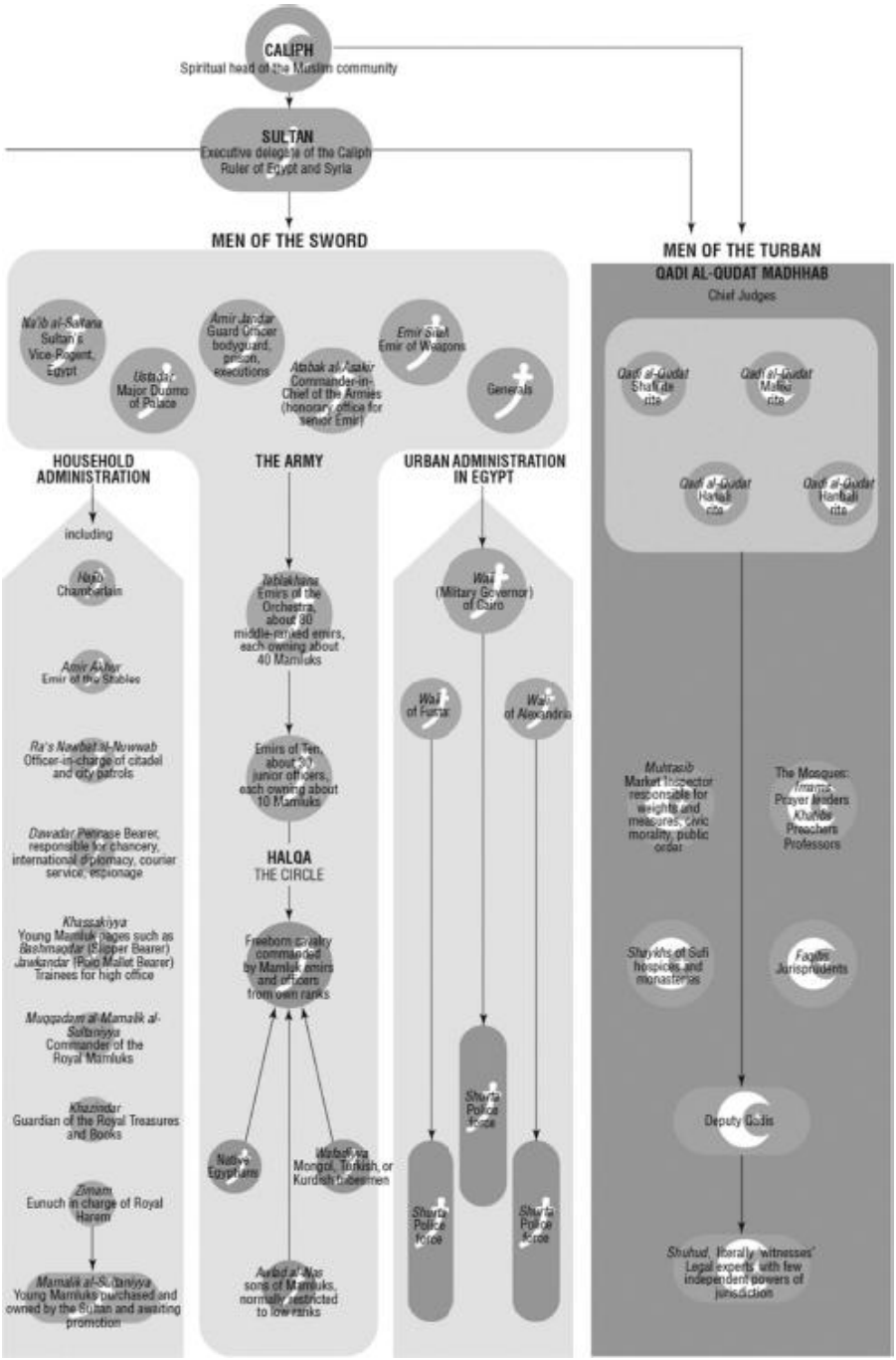
In the wake of the death of Saladin, the Ayyubids found themselves ruling a confederation of states that were beset by enemies on several fronts. However, distrust and ambition divided them, so that rather than forming a united front to preserve their territories, they instead engaged in conflicts with one another, in which the rulers of the surrounding territories, Muslim and Frankish, became involved as allies or opponents. At times, the Ayyubids were able to take advantage of relations with other states to further their own goals, while at other times, their disputes weakened them, so that the other powers were able to expand their influence or territories at Ayyubid expense. The military *jihad* against the Franks, in the meantime, became largely defensive in nature, with treaties and compromises being the generally preferred option, despite the protests of religious scholars and any commoners whom they were able to stir up against their sovereigns. At the same time, the Ayyubid rulers came to rely increasingly on their military forces, especially *mamluk* bodyguard contingents, as the principal basis of their power. The eventual result of this policy will become apparent in the next chapter.

Further reading

Probably the best starting point for further research on the Ayyubids is R. Stephen Humphreys' *From Saladin to the Mongols*, which, though centred on Damascus, provides a detailed history of the Ayyubid confederation. For a briefer overview of the structure of the Ayyubid state and its relations with the Franks, see his 'Ayyubids, Mamluks and the Latin East in the Thirteenth Century' (1998) and Carole Hillenbrand, *The Crusades: Islamic Perspectives*. A comprehensive treatment of the Ayyubid principality of Aleppo is Anne-Marie Eddé's *La Principauté Ayyoubide d'Alep (579/1183–658/1260)* (1999). Two important biographical works on the later Ayyubids have been written by German scholars: Franz-Josef Dahlmanns's *Al-Malik al-'Adil: Ägypten und der Vordere Orient in den Jahren 589/1193 bis 615/1218* (1975) is the author's doctoral thesis on the career and reign of al-'Adil Muhammad after the death

of Saladin, and Hans L. Gottschalk's *Al-Malik al-Kamil von Egypten und seine Zeit: Eine Studie zur Geschichte Vorderasiens und Egyptens in der Ersten Hälfte des 7./13. Jahrhunderts* (1958) is a study of the reign of al-Kamil Muhammad. For another detailed discussion of al-Kamil Muhammad's response to the crusades, see Laila Atrache, *Die Politik der Ayyubiden* (1996). On the encounter between St Francis and al-Kamil Muhammad, see John Tolan, *Saint Francis and the Sultan: The Curious History of a Christian-Muslim Encounter* (2009), and, for a Muslim perspective, Fareed Z. Munir, 'Sultan al-Malik Muhammad al-Kamil and Saint Francis: Interreligious Dialogue and the Meeting at Damietta' (2008). On Muslim reactions to the Ayyubids' diplomatic dealings with the Franks, see Emmanuel Sivan, *L'Islam et la Croisade* and, again, Daniella Talmon-Heller, 'Islamic Preaching in Syria during the Counter-Crusade' and *Islamic Piety in Medieval Syria.*


Mamluk Administration in Egypt and Syria, late thirteenth century
Men of the Sword
Mamluks
Non-Mamluks
Men of the Pen
Non-Mamluks
Men of the Turban
Non-Mamluks
Eunuchs (slaves)
MEN OF THE PEN
Wazir Adviser
Nominally the senior civilian administrator
Nazir al Khass
Overseer of crown estates
Nazir al-Jaysh
Civilian overseer of army finance
Sahib Bayt al-Mal
Master of the Treasury
Katib al-Sirr
Scribe of the Secret Arib head of Chancery
Diwan al-Khass
Crown Property Bureau
Diwan al-Jaysh
Financial Bureau
Bayt al-Mal
Treasury
Kuttab al-Dast
Scribes of the Bench Senior secretaries
Other lesser and more specialized diwans staffed by Arabs
Kuttab al-Darj
Scribes of the Scroll Junior secretaries
PROVINCIAL GOVERNMENT OF SYRIA
THE SULTAN IN EGYPT
Na'ib
Governor of province of Damascus
Na'ib
Governor of province of Aleppo
Wali al-Qal'a
Military Governor of citadel of Damascus
Wali al-Qal'a
Military Governor of citadel of Aleppo
Na'ib
Governor of Kerak
Na'ib
Governor of Safad
Malik
Prince of Hamah Ayyubid princeling, tributary of the Sultan
Syrian Halqa
Freeborn troops recruited from local clans and tribes


CALIPH
Spiritual head of the Muslim community
SULTAN
Executive delegate of the Caliph
Ruler of Egypt and Syria
MEN OF THE SWORD
MEN OF THE TURBAN
QADI AL-QUDAT MADHHAB
Chief Judges
Qadi al-Qudat Shafi'ite rite
Qadi al-Qudat Maliki rite
Qadi al-Qudat Hanafi rite
Qadi al-Qudat Hanbali rite
Na'ib al-Saltana
Sultan's Vice-Regent, Egypt
Ustadar
Major Domo of Palace
Amir Jandar
Guard Officer bodyguard, prison, executions
Atabak al-Asakir
Commander-in-Chief of the Armies (honorary office for senior Emir)
Emir Silah
Emir of Weapons
Generals
HOUSEHOLD ADMINISTRATION
including
Hajib
Chamberlain
Amir Akhur
Emir of the Stables
Ra's Nawbat al-Nawwab
Officer-in-charge of citadel and city patrols
Dawadar
Pennape Bearer, responsible for chancery, international diplomacy, courier service, espionage
Khassakiyya
Young Mamluk pages such as Bashmaqdar (Slipper Bearer) Jawkandar (Polo Mallet Bearer)
Trainees for high office
Muqaddam al-Mamalik al-Sultaniyya
Commander of the Royal Mamluks
Khazindar
Guardian of the Royal Treasures and Books
Zimam
Eunuch in charge of Royal Harem
Mamalik al-Sultaniyya
Young Mamluks purchased and owned by the Sultan and awaiting promotion
THE ARMY
Tablakhana
Emirs of the Orchestra, about 30 middle-ranked emirs, each owning about 40 Mamluks
Emirs of Ten, about 300 junior officers, each owning about 10 Mamluks
HALQA
THE CIRCLE
Freeborn cavalry commanded by Mamluk emirs and officers from own ranks
Native Egyptians
Walidiyya
Mongol, Turkish, or Kurdish horsemen
Awlad al-Nas
sons of Mamluks, normally restricted to low ranks
URBAN ADMINISTRATION IN EGYPT
Wali
(Military Governor) of Cairo
Wali of Fustat
Wali of Alexandria
Shurta Police force
Shurta Police force
Shurta Police force
Muhtasib
Market Inspector responsible for weights and measures, civic morality, public order
The Mosques:
Imams
Prayer leaders
Khutaba
Preachers
Professors
Shaykhs of Sufi hospices and monasteries
Faqihs
Jurisprudents
Deputy Qadis
Shuhud, literally 'witnesses'
Legal experts with few independent powers of jurisdiction

9 The Mamluks, 1249–1382

Al-Salih Ayyub had placed great reliance on *mamluk* troops, and he integrated a large regiment thereof into his armies, including an important unit known as the Bahriyya. In the wake of his death, the Bahriyya were instrumental in saving Egypt from St Louis' crusade. However, they then went on to depose their Ayyubid masters and set up their own state in Egypt and *Bilad al-Sham*. It is this state that we will examine in this chapter, considering the circumstances of its establishment, the organization of the state, and the efforts undertaken by its rulers to assert their legitimacy. As we will see, such efforts were a significant factor that contributed to the demise of the Frankish states on the Levantine coast.

Chronological overview

As indicated in the last chapter, al-Salih Ayyub's heir, Turan-Shah, was absent from Egypt when his father died, but al-Salih's widow, a Turkish or Armenian former slave named Shajar al-Durr (d. 1257), took quick action to avert a potential crisis. Acting in collusion with a senior *mamluk* emir, she concealed the sultan's death, even forging his signature on official documents. Resistance to the crusaders continued, and in February 1250, the Muslims inflicted a decisive defeat on their enemies at al-Mansura, in which the Bahriyya played a prominent role. In the aftermath, King Louis was taken prisoner. His wife, Margaret of Provence, negotiated his release in return for Damietta, and the crusaders left Egypt. Louis himself remained in the Levant for four more years, strengthening the defences of the Latin Kingdom before returning home.

By the time that Louis left in 1254, a radical change had occurred in the government of Egypt. Turan-Shah had arrived at the Muslim camp at the end of February 1250 and was duly recognized as sultan, but he soon alienated his father's senior Bahri *mamluks* by threatening them and by assigning members of his own *mamluk* retinue to the major posts in the state (Irwin, 1986: 21). Tensions soon came to a head, and on 2 May 1250, a group of Bahri *mamluks* murdered Turan-Shah. They elected Shajar al-Durr as the new sovereign, an act almost without precedent in Islamic history. However, it soon became apparent that if the new rulers were to impose their authority on *Bilad al-Sham*, where rebellions against the new regime immediately broke out, then they would need a military leader (a man) at the helm. Less than three months later, then, Shajar al-Durr was deposed and replaced with a *mamluk* emir named Aybak al-Turkumani (r. 1250 and 1254–57). Aybak was induced to abdicate after only five days to make way for a ten-year-old member of the Ayyubid family, instead becoming the young sultan's *atabeg*, though he remained the effective ruler of the state, with the exception, as Holt puts it, that 'Shajar al-Durr ruled him' (Holt, 1986: 84). At some point during the proceedings, Shajar al-Durr also married Aybak. In 1254, once Aybak had consolidated his own political position, he deposed his young charge and assumed the title of sultan. Aybak then ruled for three years before being murdered in the bath at the orders of Shajar al-Durr, who felt politically and personally threatened by his plans to marry again and in the process have another displace her from her position as his chief wife. Aybak's 15-year-old son al-Mansur ʿAli (r. 1257–59, not a son of Shajar al-Durr) succeeded to the throne, although it was the senior *mamluk* emirs who controlled the actual positions of power in the state. In the meantime, Shajar al-Durr was killed, apparently beaten to death with wooden clogs by Aybak's concubines (Irwin, 1986: 29). Thus began the Mamluk sultanate (1250–1517), a period when Egypt and (from 1260) *Bilad al-Sham* were ruled by whichever *mamluk* emirs were able to gather the most support among the various factions of the army and (to

a lesser extent) the wider elite classes of society.

Historians traditionally divide the Mamluk sultanate into the so-called 'Bahri Mamluk Sultanate' (1250–1382) and the 'Burji Mamluk Sultanate' (1382–1517), labels derived from the names of two prominent Mamluk units. As David Ayalon has shown, a better labelling for these same periods might be the 'Turkish Mamluk Sultanate' and the 'Circassian Mamluk Sultanate', reflecting the ethnicity of the majority (though not all) of the Mamluk ruling class in each period (Ayalon, 1994: Vol. IV: 3–53). In any case, it is the first of these two periods that we will concern ourselves with here, since this was the period during which the Mamluks ejected the Franks from the Levantine coast. However, the Mamluks first had to deal with other threats. As indicated previously, Turan-Shah's murder and Shajar al-Durr's accession were greeted with revolts in *Bilad al-Sham* that were mostly led by Ayyubid princes who objected to the Mamluks' usurpation of power. By 1260, these princes had been mostly eliminated or suppressed by the Mamluk forces, who in the same year also managed to break the seemingly unstoppable advance of the Mongols.

This advance had begun in 1206, when a pagan Mongol warrior chieftain named Temujin, but better known by his title Chingiz Khan (or Genghis Khan ['Universal King'], r. 1206–1227), welded together a confederation of Central Asian tribes and launched a series of campaigns intended to create a great empire. He conquered much of northern China and began expanding west into the Muslim world; the state of the Khwarazm-Shahs was the first major Muslim polity to fall to his advance. After Chingiz Khan died, his successors took up his mission and continued the Mongol expansion. A successful and destructive expedition was launched into Russia and Eastern Europe in 1236–41; the Seljuk Sultanate of *Rum* was subdued in 1243; and in 1255, Hülegü (d. 1265), the brother of the Great Khan Möngke (r. 1251–60), launched a major campaign into Persia and Iraq. The Nizari *imam* tried to come to terms with Hülegü, but the negotiations were unsuccessful, and in 1256, the Mongol leader took Alamut, bringing the Persian state of the Nizaris to its end. The *imams* and their followers went into hiding, and for the next two centuries would survive by concealing their faith, often by posing as Sufis, before re-emerging at Andujan in Persia in the late 15th century. Hülegü, in the meantime, took Baghdad on 12 February 1258. The caliph, al-Musta'sim (r. 1242–58), was executed by being rolled up in a carpet and trampled to death by horses, in accordance with a Mongol custom that forbade the shedding of royal blood, and the reign of the 'Abbasid caliphate was also, temporarily, ended.

Hülegü continued his progress westwards. Aleppo fell in January 1260, Damascus in March; then, hearing of the death of his brother, Hülegü returned east to take part in the choice of the next Great Khan, leaving behind a small portion of his forces to continue the advance. The following summer, a Mongol

embassy arrived in Cairo, where one of Aybak's *mamluks*, Qutuz (r. 1259–60), had usurped power from al-Mansur ʿAli. Qutuz responded to the Mongols' demands for surrender by executing the ambassadors and setting out with his army. The two forces met in September at ʿAyn Jalut, to the south-west of the Sea of Galilee, and the Mamluks carried the day, putting the Mongol army to flight [*Doc. 18*]. The Mongols would make further attempts to invade *Bilad al-Sham* in the future, but each time, the Mamluks would turn them back. On the way back from ʿAyn Jalut, Qutuz was murdered by a group of *mamluk* conspirators. Among their number was a Bahri *mamluk* named Baybars al-Bunduqdari (r. 1260–77), who had also been involved in the murder of Turan-Shah. Baybars was now chosen as the new sultan.

Baybars spent most of his reign fighting wars on multiple fronts. In addition to consolidating Mamluk control of their territories in *Bilad al-Sham* and putting down rebellions within his state, he also fought ongoing wars against the Mongols on the northern and eastern frontiers, mounted punitive expeditions into Lesser Armenia, brought the fortresses and activities of the Nizaris of *Bilad al-Sham* under his control in 1265–73, and directed almost yearly campaigns against the Franks. Baybars adopted a multi-pronged approach in his attacks on the Franks, destroying crops, pastures, and livestock to damage the economic prosperity of the Latin states, while also razing coastal fortresses so that they could not be used as bridgeheads for new waves of crusaders. In May 1268, he personally oversaw the capture of Antioch, thus ending its time as a Frankish capital. These military actions were complemented by skilful diplomacy that enabled him to extract further concessions from the Franks in the form of land- and income-sharing agreements (Irwin, 1986: 47–48, 55–57; Holt, 1986: 95–96).

Baybars died on 20 June 1277, probably accidentally poisoned by a bad batch of *qumiz* (fermented mare's milk; Irwin, 1986: 58). After brief, successive reigns by two of his sons, power was usurped, in November 1279, by another Bahri *mamluk*, Qalawun al-Alfi ('of the thousand', so-called because his first master had paid 1000 [Arabic: *alf*] dinars for him; r. 1279–90). Like Baybars, Qalawun spent much of his time at war, quelling opponents within and outside the Mamluk state, including defeating the Mongols at the Battle of Hims in 1281, and pursuing the military *jihad* against the Franks. Qalawun adopted similar tactics to those used by Baybars, destroying coastal strongholds and mixing diplomacy with force [see *Doc. 19*]. His crowning achievement was the capture of Tripoli in April 1289. He demolished the city and was preparing to mount an expedition against the last Frankish capital, Acre, when he fell ill, dying on 10 November 1290. Qalawun's son, al-Ashraf Khalil (r. 1290–93), sought to fulfil his father's ambition, besieging the city in March 1291. The city was taken on 18 May and was, like Tripoli, demolished [*Doc. 20*].

The conquest of Acre did not signify the end of conflict between the Mamluks and the Franks in the Levant. There remained a handful of Frankish strongholds on the coast that had to be mopped up over the next few years, and even after that, there was ongoing conflict, especially between the Mamluks and the Frankish rulers of Cyprus. For example, a particularly destructive raid on Alexandria, mounted by King Peter I (r. 1359–69) in October 1365, caused significant damage to the city and soured trade relations for several years. Nor was it only the Mamluks who were the targets of later crusades; conflicts in the Balkan Peninsula between the Hungarians and the Ottoman Turks in the early 1390s eventually led to the Crusade of Nikopolis (Nikopol) in 1396, the culmination of which was the complete rout of a coalition of European crusaders at the hands of the Ottoman armies.

Back in the Mamluk Sultanate, there were periodic political struggles; al-Ashraf Khalil was assassinated in 1293, and thereafter power passed, for the most part, into the hands of the senior Mamluk officers. Often a descendant of Qalawun might occupy the sultan's throne, but real power actually lay in the hands of his theoretical subordinates. The most important exception is the third reign of Qalawun's son al-Nasir Muhammad (r. 1293–94, 1299–1309 and 1310–1341), during which the sultan enjoyed firm control over a mostly peaceful realm, although as Levanoni has argued, he destroyed many of the traditional Mamluk power structures and ruined the economy of the state in order to achieve this (Levanoni, 1995: *passim*). The Qalawunid sultans thereafter were usually puppets of high-ranking Mamluk emirs, and in 1382, a Circassian *mamluk* called Barquq (r. 1382–89 and 1390–99) usurped the position of sultan. With the exception of a brief nominal restoration of a Qalawunid sultan in 1389–90, the title passed out of the hands of Turkic *mamluks* and into those of their Circassian counterparts. Circassian Mamluk sultans subsequently reigned in Egypt until 1517, when the country was conquered by the Ottomans.

Mamluk historiography

Mamluk studies (sometimes called Mamlukology) is a vibrant and dynamic field of study, encompassing a wide range of topics, including Mamluk reactions to the crusades. In their work, scholars of the Mamluk period have continued to make use of the same genres of sources that those studying earlier periods have used, such as historical chronicles, legal and religious texts, poetry, inscriptions, and archaeological remains (see our discussions in Chapters 1 and 3). However, as Carine Juvin has pointed out, scholars studying the Mamluks have access to what she describes as an 'unprecedented amount of written documents produced under the rule of this sultanate', including both

written texts and epigraphic inscriptions (Juvin, 2013: 211). The survival of such a plethora of materials may be ascribed to a number of factors, including the enthusiasm of the Mamluks for patronizing writers and producing documents and their eagerness in funding the creation of impressive buildings and artefacts that also witness to the history of this period; the result of these is the continued existence of a much greater volume of sources in comparison to those from earlier centuries. Scholars of the Mamluks have also been at the forefront of the study of documentary sources such as treaties, letters, and legal documents; these have generally been preserved in archives in original copies or recorded in later works such as historical chronicles or chancery manuals, of which the best-known example of the latter is *Subh al-A'sha fi Sina'at al-Insha'* (The Morning of the Night-blind on the Craft of Composition), by the chancery secretary at the Mamluk court, Shihab al-Din al-Qalqashandi (1355–1418; for selections from this work, see al-Qalqashandi, 2017). Thus, scholars of the Mamluk period have a much greater range of materials to work with in comparison to those studying the crusades of the 12th century, which Konrad Hirschler has described as, comparatively, 'the "dark century" of historical writing in the area' (Hirschler, 2013: 161).

The Mamluk experience

In this book, we have briefly mentioned *mamluks* in the context of their involvement in the Muslim armies, but here it is appropriate to discuss in more detail the 'system' that encompassed their recruitment and employment. Muslim rulers had been making use of significant numbers of *mamluk* troops, principally Turks from Central Asia, as early as the 9th century. By the end of the Ayyubid period, the majority of the *mamluks* in the sultanate's armies were Turks drawn from the Kipchak Steppe, north of the Black Sea, although other ethnic elements were also present; as we have seen, Circassians eventually rose to prominence in the Mamluk Sultanate. *Mamluks*, both male and female, were bought as slaves, while they were young children, on the fringes of the Muslim world by merchants, who then imported them into the major trade centres and capitals. There they were sold to the sultan or emirs. Girls would usually be directed to domestic service or the harems (Shajar al-Durr was originally one such slave), while boys would be taken to barracks or other quarters in preparation for training. Indeed, the Bahriyya and Burjiyya units were named for the barracks where they were originally quartered: on Rawda island, on the River (*bahr* [*nahr* in modern Egyptian Arabic]) Nile, in the case of the Bahriyya, and in a *burj* (tower) of the Citadel in Cairo, in the case of the Burjiyya. *Mamluk* regiments would normally receive names derived from the titles of their owners; al-Salih Ayyub's Bahriyya were part of

his wider *mamluk* regiment, known as the Salihiyya from his title of 'al-Malik al-Salih' (the Righteous King), while Baybars' personal *mamluk* regiment was called the Zahiriyya, after his title 'al-Malik al-Zahir' (the Victorious King).

However, before joining such a regiment, young *mamluk* boys had to go through extensive schooling, both religious and military. Their initial scholastic training would be in Arabic, learning to speak and write the language, though how well they mastered it varied; Qalawun, for example, is said to have never learned to speak Arabic fluently (Northrup, 1998: 67). A religious scholar would then teach them the *Qur'an* and Shari'a (Islamic law). As soon as they were old enough, the majority of their time would be spent on military training, which included horsemanship and fighting with a lance, sword, and composite bow, as well as a shield and other weapons. In establishing their training system for new recruits, the Mamluks drew on the Muslim tradition of *furusiyya*, military standards dating back to the 8th century that encompassed not only riding and the use of weapons, but also hunting; basic veterinary skills; sports such as wrestling and polo; and an expectation of noble, just, and pious behaviour. *Furusiyya* literature can also be seen as including the military manuals referred to in Chapter 6 (al-Sarraf, 2004: 144–52; Nicolle, 1994: 8–9). By the time that they completed this training, the best *mamluks*, then, were highly educated and skilled warriors, athletes, and military tacticians. For example, it was said that they could make sword cuts to precise depths and bodily locations, depending on their leaders' instructions. A *mamluk's* training naturally took years, so that he would be a fully grown adult by the time that he completed it. He would then graduate with his fellows in a group ceremony, being freed and normally joining the retinue of his former owner (Nicolle, 2014: 26–27, 40–50; al-Sarraf, 2004: *passim*; Rabie, 1975: *passim*; Ayalon, 1994: Vol. II: 11–13). A fully trained and armed *mamluk* was an intimidating figure, armed with a lance, sword, shield, bow, and mace; wearing mail and/or lamellar armour; and riding a warhorse.

Some *mamluks*, especially those of the sultan, could rise to high ranks within the army and state. As we have seen, even before the Mamluk takeover, they were senior figures in the military hierarchy and instrumental in the conduct of the resistance to Louis IX's crusade.

The Mamluk state

Naturally, the Mamluks inherited bureaucratic structures from their Fatimid and Ayyubid predecessors, but the state that they established in Egypt was much more centralized, with tighter control of its institutions by the sultan and his deputies. The state administration was divided into three parts: the Men of the Sword (the military), the Men of the Pen (the civil administration), and the

Men of the Turban (the religious hierarchy). The Men of the Turban were originally led by a Shafi'i chief *qadi*, but Baybars instead instituted the practice of having a chief *qadi* from each of the four major schools of Sunni Islamic law, thus preventing the Shafi'is from monopolizing this position and making it possible for subjects to appeal to whichever chief *qadi* represented the school of law that they followed; indeed, many *mamluks* followed the Hanafi school of law and hence appreciated the appointment of a Hanafi chief *qadi* to judge their cases (Irwin, 1986: 43). The Men of the Pen consisted for the most part, as before the Mamluk takeover, of Egyptian Coptic Christians or Muslims, with the latter becoming increasingly numerous as ever more Copts converted to Islam (Little, 1983: 179–80). Of the three divisions, however, the Men of the Sword were the most influential, and offices in the other parts of the state administration were subject to inspection by Mamluk officials with appropriate expertise. Meanwhile, the major centres in *Bilad al-Sham* became the capitals of provinces, ruled by representatives of the sultan who reported directly to him in Cairo (see Fig. 8).

Figure 9.1 Mamluk administration in Egypt and Syria, late 13th century

Source: Jonathan Riley-Smith (ed.), *The Atlas of the Crusades* (New York, 1991), pp. 110–111. Infobase.

As the class who controlled the state and drove its policies, the Men of the Sword merit further attention. At their head was the sultan, who was advised by a council of about 24 senior *mamluk* emirs, each known as *amir mi'a wa-muqaddam alf* (emir of 100 and commander of 1000), indicating that he had a retinue of 100 cavalrymen (*mamluks* and free-born) and led 1000 *halqa* troops (see subsequently) in battle. Ranged below these were the emirs of 40 (each having a retinue of 40 cavalry and also known as *amir al-tablakhana*, [emir of the military band, indicating his right to maintain one]), then the emirs of ten (with ten cavalry). All of these senior ranks were normally reserved for *mamluks*.

The majority of the free-born soldiers in the Mamluk army formed the greater part of the body of troops known as the *halqa* (circle); this division comprised soldiers of various origins, including Kurdish and Arab troops, Mongol refugees, some *mamluks* and in particular the *awlad al-nas* (sons of the people), the sons or descendants of *mamluks* who were not normally permitted to rise to the higher ranks in the military or state, although some clearly did (Irwin, 1986: 38–40, 50–51; Northrup, 1998: 189–200; Richards, 1998: *passim*). Of course, the major exception to this rule was the progeny of the sultan, since a number of sultans sought to establish a dynastic succession to their rule; indeed, Qalawun and his descendants reigned (in theory if not always in fact) for over a century. However, most *awlad al-nas* encountered a

firm limit on how far they could advance their status that resulted from their not having gone through the *mamluk* experiences of their forebears. The Mamluks also made use of additional auxiliary troops, including in particular Turkmen, Bedouin, and other free cavalry (Northrup, 1998: 199).

Of course, it is worth noting that the previous list of ranks and political relations is normative and that practice varied during the more than 250 years that the Mamluks were in power. The whole Mamluk military system was supported, as in earlier decades, by the distribution of *iqta'*s. This was something that was of particular importance for higher-ranking Mamluk emirs, who were after all required to keep retinues of significant sizes.

Legitimizing rule

As usurpers, the Mamluks felt under particular pressure to prove the legitimacy of their rule. Baybars' supporters sought to legitimize his rule in a number of ways, arguing that divine decree had placed him in the position of sultan, that his natural abilities qualified him to rule, that he was elected to the position by his peers, and that he loyally continued the pious traditions of his former master al-Salih Ayyub, including his efforts in the military *jihad* (Irwin, 1986: 42–44).

Both Baybars and his successors sought to place particular emphasis on their Islamic piety, articulating this in a number of ways. As indicated previously, in 1258, the Mongols took Baghdad, putting the 'Abbasid caliph to death. In 1261, Baybars resurrected the caliphate in Cairo, placing on the throne a relative of the deceased caliph, who took the regnal title of al-Mustansir (r. 1261). The caliph in turn invested the sultan with not only *Bilad al-Sham* and Egypt, but also western Arabia, including the holy cities, the Yemen, and any territory that he might conquer in the future, effectively authorizing Baybars to engage in expansion of Mamluk territory and appointing him the sultan of the Islamic world in the manner of the Great Seljuk sultans. Al-Mustansir, who seems not to have been as easy to manipulate as Baybars may have hoped, enjoyed only a brief reign; he was slain by the Mongols after being sent off to try and retake Baghdad with what may have been a deliberately inadequate force. His successors would reign, but never rule, until the Ottoman conquest of 1517, providing a veneer of caliphal approval for the Mamluk regime (Holt, 1986: 92–93; Irwin, 1986: 43–44).

In the meantime, the Mamluks capitalized on precedents set by their Ayyubid and Zangid forebears, seeking to promote their legitimacy through both official propaganda and acts of public piety, the latter including in particular endowments of religious or charitable buildings. As Robert Hillenbrand has noted, the Mamluks enthusiastically supported building

projects, competing with each other to endow the most impressive mosques, *madrasas*, and other buildings. The Mamluks' efforts were supported by an influx of skilled craftsmen and architects from the eastern Islamic world, who came as refugees from the Mongol conquests. Cairo soon became crowded with buildings, forcing architects to design vertically rather than horizontally, and the city became home to awe-inspiring structures that towered over the common folk, emphasizing the conspicuous amount of wealth that Mamluk patrons had spent on their construction and with it their piety and power. Naturally, such buildings bore inscriptions naming and exalting their patrons with titles that emphasized their pious support of the faith. Jerusalem also benefited greatly from Mamluk attention during this period. While it was no longer seen as being at risk from the Franks, its holiness attracted the patronage of Mamluk sultans and emirs keen to demonstrate their piety through the restoration or construction of religious buildings within its walls, especially on the Temple Mount (Hillenbrand, 1999b: 140–50; Little, 1997: 186–93).

Mamluk emirs also richly supplemented their endowments of buildings with salaries for their staffs; furnishings; and equipment, including ornate *Qur'an* manuscripts, lamps, and bookstands. In the process, the Mamluks also made widespread use of blazons, circular emblems bearing devices that identified particular emirs in a way similar to western heraldry. Such devices were used in both architectural decoration and, where possible, in the minor arts, in this way publicly proclaiming the piety and influence of the patrons in question; thus, the blazon of a Mamluk emir might, for example, appear on the stucco work of a building or on a glass lamp donated to a particular mosque (Hillenbrand, 1999b: 150–66). It is important not to underestimate the all-encompassing impact that this aimed to achieve. A visitor to a mosque endowed by a Mamluk emir, for example, would have been struck by the inscriptions that adorned the building, witnessing to the piety of the donor. There the visitor could then have read from beautifully decorated copies of the *Qur'an* provided by the patron, cradled on finely crafted wooden bookstands bearing his name, while overhead glass lamps like the one in Fig. 9 shone with his name and blazon. Thus, the Mamluks sought to surround their subjects with evidence of their piety and hence legitimacy as Muslim rulers, attested to through lavish spending on religious buildings and their accoutrements.

Baybars is especially well known for making enthusiastic use of the lion or panther found on his blazon, using this device even on objects as small as coins (see, for example, Fig. 10). A particularly striking example of Baybars' use of his blazon is on the Jisr Jindas, a bridge built by the sultan at Lydda (Lod) in 1273 and bearing on each side an inscription commemorating the date of its construction (Fig. 11). Each inscription is flanked on either side by a

depiction of a lion toying with a rat, probably intended to exalt the sultan in his superiority over his puny enemies; it has been suggested that the rat was a visual parody of the lion rampant heraldry of the Lusignan kings or possibly an Arabic linguistic pun on the words *far* (rat) and *kuffar* (blasphemers or infidels), and was intended to refer specifically to the Franks (Clermont-Ganneau, 1896: 110–18).

Figure 9.2 Mosque lamp for the mausoleum of the Emir Aydakin al-'Ala'i al-Bunduqdar

Source: Mosque lamp for the mausoleum of the emir Aydakin al-'Ala'i al-Bunduqdar, made in Egypt shortly after 1285. The blazon indicates that the emir held the office of *bunduqdar* (bow-holder). Artokoloro Quint Lox Limited/Alamy Stock Photo.

Baybars' particular use of the lion device at the Jisr Jindas reminds us that there was, of course, one more way in which the Mamluks could assert their pious credentials: the military *jihad* against the Franks and other enemies, which, as we have seen, a number of sultans pursued with considerable enthusiasm. We will consider this in more detail in the next section, but it is worth noting for the moment that a heightened atmosphere of hostility to non-Muslim external enemies may have had a collateral effect within Mamluk territory, in that religious minorities within the state, especially Christians, suffered increasingly harsh discriminatory measures at the time. The extent to which the two phenomena were actually linked is still debated, however (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 414–19).

Figure 9.3 Dinar of al-Malik al-Zahir Baybars

Source: *Dinar* of al-Malik al-Zahir Baybars. This gold *dinar* was struck in 1268. Note the use of Baybars' lion/panther blazon. © Trustees of the British Museum. All rights reserved.

Figure 9.4 Jisr Jindas, Lydda (Lod), Israel

Source: Jisr Jindas, Lydda (Lod), Israel. Built by Baybars in 1273, panels flanking the inscription on this bridge bear his lion/panther blazon. On each panel, the lion plays with a rat, possibly intended specifically to symbolize the sultan's Frankish enemies. Used with kind permission of Uri Zackhem.

As with Nur al-Din and Saladin, it is important to avoid being too cynical about the Mamluks' religious activities, as it can be tempting to write them off merely as attempts to make use of religious ideas for political gain. While it is more than likely that there were some sultans who sought to use Islam in this fashion, a number of sultans do seem to have been genuinely engaged with their faith in a real and personal way. Baybars, for example, is known to have been devoted to a Sufi *shaykh* named Khadir al-Mihrani (d. 1277), consulting him constantly, allowing him to persecute Christians and Jews, and sharing state secrets with him despite the opposition of his senior emirs (Thorau, 1992: 225–29). Whether this devotion stemmed from an acknowledgement of

Khadir's Islamic credentials or from an admiration of Khadir as a quasi-prophetic figure whose abilities might be useful remains an open question, but it still suggests that on *some* level, Baybars' religious sentiments were genuine, even if it does not prove that all his activities were undertaken for the good of Islam. It is likely that for many of the Mamluk sultans and their followers, the line between religious devotion and political ambition was extremely blurred.

The Mamluk *jihad*

As indicated previously, the Mamluks were enthusiastic proponents of the *jihad*, both in propaganda and in action. As with their predecessors, the buildings that they endowed bore inscriptions loudly attesting to their participation in the military *jihad*, and their panegyrists numbered their enthusiasm for the holy war among their virtues (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 227–37). However, the Mamluk period sees two major shifts in the way that the *jihad* was approached by the rulers of Egypt and *Bilad al-Sham*. First, as Humphreys has noted, the Mamluks placed a much greater emphasis on the military aspect of the *jihad*, something that is reflected in the sources from the time; as he states of one biography of Baybars, 'a reader [...] almost gets a headache from the throbbing drums and the glare of sunlight on armor' (Humphreys, 1998: 11–12). Second, the Mamluks fought a military *jihad* that was more multifaceted, having to deal with several enemies both outside and within their state, including the Franks, the Mongols, the Armenians, and the Nizaris. Of these, it was the Mongols who most occupied the Mamluks' attention; not only were they, as non-monotheists and pagans, the most obvious religious enemy, which allowed the Mamluks to reinforce their claims to be defenders of Islam, but unlike the other enemies, the Mongols actually posed a clear and present danger to the survival of the Mamluk regime. Consequently, it was the Mongol threat that dictated the course of Mamluk military activity, with expeditions against other enemies normally only undertaken when the frontier with the Mongols was secure (Amitai-Preiss, 1995: 114; Northrup, 1998: 100).

Thinking about the Franks in particular, we should not take this as an indication that the Mamluks saw them as a trivial concern. There were a number of reasons for the swift elimination of the Frankish states on the coast by the end of the 13th century. As we have seen, early Mamluk propaganda sought to emphasize the Mamluks' links with the previous regime, including their claims to be continuing the holy war against the Franks undertaken by such exalted figures as Saladin and al-Salih Ayyub, and so fighting the military *jihad* against them was an important means for the sultans and their followers to emphasize these links in a way that also helped to attest to their pious support of the faith. Being too comfortable with the presence of the Franks on

the coast would have belied the Mamluks' claims to be defenders of the Muslim lands, regardless of how many wars they fought with the Mongols, and alienated the religious classes upon whom the Mamluks relied for support. Instead, as Carole Hillenbrand has noted, the Mamluk sultans forged close links with the religious elite (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 238).

One of the most important religious scholars of the Mamluk era was Ahmad ibn Taymiyya, whom we have mentioned previously. Ibn Taymiyya was born into a family of Hanbali religious scholars in Harran in modern-day Turkey. His family fled the Mongols in 1268, moving to Damascus, where Ibn Taymiyya received an education in – and by the age of 19 mastered – the religious sciences, becoming a high-profile teacher and public scholar. As Donald Little has put it, 'It is Ibn Taymiyya's distinction that he opposed by word and deed almost every aspect of religion practiced in the Mamluk Empire', objecting to both popular practices and Mamluk policies, and he was imprisoned six times over the course of his career for his outspokenness (Little, 1983: 180–81). Yet at the same time, he was an influential figure who periodically served the Mamluks as a *jihad* propagandist. Ibn Taymiyya was an enthusiastic advocate for a vigorous *jihad* within the Muslim world, both in terms of personal engagement in the greater *jihad* and state-level correction of the errors of Muslim society, to the point that rulers who did not behave correctly could be legitimately rebelled against, since they were evidently heretics and hypocrites. At the same time, as we have seen, Ibn Taymiyya saw the external, military *jihad* as a defensive obligation, incumbent on all Muslims when their security was threatened. Ibn Taymiyya's ideas were influential in his own time, and, as we have noted, they have also had a great impact in the modern day (Bonney, 2004: 111–26); for more on this latter topic, see the next chapter.

With regard to the military *jihad* that Ibn Taymiyya was called upon to promote, it is clear that for the Mamluks, there were also serious strategic gains to be made through the liquidation of the Frankish states. When the Mongols had invaded *Bilad al-Sham* in the mid-13th century, they had received the submission and support of both the Principality of Antioch and the Kingdom of Lesser Armenia (Amitai-Preiss, 1995: 24–25, 54), an alliance that even briefly persisted after the Battle of 'Ayn Jalut. The Mamluks remained concerned that the Franks might form a grand alliance with the Mongols. History tells us that while there were embassies exchanged between various European, Levantine Frankish, and Mongol rulers, no such alliance materialized, but the Mamluks, of course, did not know that this was how such discussions would turn out (Amitai-Preiss, 1995: 94–105). Thus, when the opportunities presented themselves, they took action to remove the Franks from the equation, systematically destroying the coastal cities and fortresses

that they captured in order to make it more difficult for the European powers to re-establish a presence in the region.

Yet at the same time, practicalities dictated that the Mamluks could not pursue a uniformly hostile policy towards the Franks. It was important to come to terms with them from time to time, at least temporarily, especially when the Mongols threatened to launch new expeditions into the Mamluk state and the Mamluks had to direct their military resources elsewhere. Consequently, we see Mamluk sultans making peace agreements with the Franks, both of the Levant and of Europe, whenever it proved necessary or convenient (Humphreys, 1998: 14–15). One particularly important set of treaties was that made with the intention of guaranteeing ongoing supplies of slaves from the Kipchak Steppe, a vital resource for the Mamluks who, after all, based their power primarily on slaves from this region during this period. The securing of this supply required peace agreements not only with the rulers of the Golden Horde (the part of the former Mongol Empire north of the Black and Caspian Seas), the Byzantine Empire, and Lesser Armenia, through which the trade routes ran, but also with the Genoese, who controlled trade across the Black Sea (Northrup, 1998: 284–85). The Genoese, along with the other Italian cities, do not seem to have had strong objections to the destruction of the Latin states on the coast (Amitai-Preiss, 1995: 103), or if they did, such objections were subordinated to their own need for trade agreements with the Mamluks, who allowed them to continue to pursue hugely profitable trade through Alexandria and other ports on the Egyptian coast.

Conclusion

In this chapter, we have seen the Mamluks transform the Ayyubid confederation of Muslim Egypt and *Bilad al-Sham* into a centralized polity geared first and foremost for military activity. It is understandable that the Mamluks, themselves military men, sought to organize their state in this way, and given that they faced major threats to their territory's integrity from the start, it is not surprising that this conditioned the structure of the sultanate. There is, however, a striking tension between the old and the new that can be seen in how the Mamluk sultanate evolved; this was a state where those most qualified to rule rose to the top (sometimes in a brutal fashion), yet the Mamluks themselves seem to have felt that this was not enough. It is notable that the Mamluks also sought to emphasize their links to pre-existent precedents, in particular previous regimes and Islamic tradition; witness the number of sultans who claimed to be ruling as successors to, on behalf of, or as representatives of earlier sultans and caliphs. Such rationales were widely disseminated through official propaganda, public buildings, and examples set

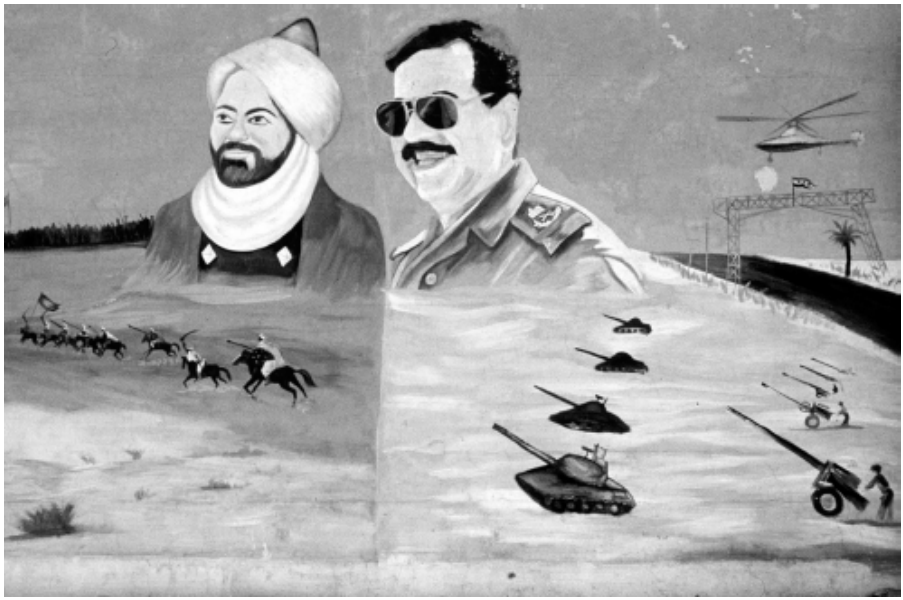
by the Mamluks themselves in their conduct. The Mamluk sultans also looked to the future, seeking themselves to establish dynasties on the sultan's throne and thus still showing a preference for hereditary rather than merit-based transmission of power.

Where did this leave the Franks? Arguably, the destruction of the Latin states in the Levant was more a collateral result of other concerns rather than something that had been seen as a major goal by the Mamluks. After the defeat of Louis IX's crusade, the Franks posed no direct threat to the existence of the Mamluk state; instead, their extirpation resulted principally from the potential danger posed by a European-Frankish-Mongol alliance and the Mamluks' own need to legitimize their rule through visible engagement in the military *jihad*. It is testimony to the secondary nature of the Frankish menace, in Mamluk eyes, that it took almost a half-century after the Mamluk takeover for the sultans to destroy the last of the Latin strongholds on the coast, and they were content both to make treaties with and to conduct commerce with the Franks in the meantime.

Further reading

For an effective introduction to the current state of Mamluk studies, see in the first instance the collected volume, *Ubi Sumus? Quo Vademus? Mamluk Studies – State of the Art* (2013), edited by Stephan Conermann. An excellent overview of the Bahri Mamluk Sultanate is Robert Irwin's *The Middle East in the Middle Ages* (1986). P.M. Holt's *The Age of the Crusades* also provides an account of the complex political developments that took place in the period. On a *mamluk's* education, see in the first instance Shihab al-Sarraf, 'Mamluk *Furusiyah* Literature and Its Antecedents' (2004), and Hassanein Rabie, 'The Training of the Mamluk Faris' (1975). For succinct overviews of the Mamluk military, see David Nicolle, *Mamluk 'Askari 1250–1517* (2014), and idem, *The Mamluks 1250–1517* (1993). The structure of the Mamluk army is the subject of a number of articles by David Ayalon; see his *Studies on the Mamluks of Egypt* (1977). Some of his conclusions have been questioned by other scholars; see, for example, Donald S. Richards, 'Mamluk Amirs and their Families and Households' (1998). A number of Mamluk sultans have been the subject of scholarly biographies. On Baybars, see Peter Thorau, *The Lion of Egypt: Sultan Baybars I and the Near East in the Thirteenth Century* (1992), and Abdul-Aziz Khowaiter, *Baibars the First: His Endeavours and Achievements* (1978). Qalawun is the subject of an important study by Linda S. Northrup: *From Slave to Sultan: The Career of al-Mansur Qalawun and the Consolidation of Mamluk Rule in Egypt and Syria (678–689 A.H./1279–1290 A.D.)* (1998). On al-Nasir Muhammad, see Amalia Levanoni, *A Turning Point in Mamluk History:*

The Third Reign of al-Nasir Muhammad Ibn Qalawun (1310–1341) (1995). For an excellent discussion of the last years of the Qalawunid sultans, see Jo van Steenbergen, *Order out of Chaos: Patronage, Conflict and Mamluk Socio-Political Culture, 1341–1382* (2006). The conflict between the Mamluks and the Mongols is addressed in Reuven Amitai-Preiss, *Mongols and Mamluks: The Mamluk-Ilkhanid War, 1260–1281* (1995), while the multiple challenges faced by the Mamluks are succinctly discussed in R. Stephen Humphries, 'Ayyubids, Mamluks and the Latin East in the Thirteenth Century'. On Mamluk practice of Islam, see Donald P. Little, 'Religion under the Mamluks' (1983). On Ibn Taymiyya, his teachings on *jihad*, and their impact, including in the modern day, see in the first instance Richard Bonney, *Jihad: From Qur'an to bin Laden* (2004). For the demise of the Nizari states in Persia and *Bilad al-Sham*, see in particular Daftary, *The Isma'ilis: Their History and Doctrines*.



10 Conclusion

In our Introduction, we noted that the crusades had an enormous impact on Europe, both on those who left their homes to come east and those who stayed behind, and it cannot be denied that they continue to loom large in popular memory today. Yet what was their legacy in the Middle East? As we conclude our exploration of Muslim responses to the crusades, we will consider their impact both at the time and in modern Muslim perceptions of the past. As part of this, we will see that the political rhetoric of modern extremists presents a distorted image of the crusades that represents it in simplistic terms as a conflict between Islam and Christianity and in the process disregards both the complexity of the political relationships of the time and the periods of co-existence and co-operation that we have highlighted in our own discussions of the topic.

The impact of the crusades on the medieval Middle East

As we have noted previously, the Muslims of the Levant felt the effects of the activities of the Franks in the region both on and off the battlefield. There were, of course, the battles themselves, traumatic affairs involving the death and injury of people on all sides. Then there were the events that came in their aftermath, including the looting and plundering of territory, the uncertain fates of prisoners, the sufferings of those who had lost loved ones in the fighting, and the negotiation of the terms of truces. Yet the impact of the crusades on the inhabitants of the region went even further. On the political level, there were the diplomatic dealings that took place between rulers. As we have seen, the Franks were quickly drawn into the *Realpolitik* of the region, becoming participants in the web of alliances, rivalries, and manoeuvrings for power that continued throughout the period, and their presence in the Levant also gave rulers such as Nur al-Din and Saladin new justifications for their own political and territorial ambitions, for the subjugation of Muslim rivals could now be justified on the grounds of the need for Muslim unity in the face of the Latin threat. We have also seen that there was an expansion in the diplomatic contact that took place between rulers in Europe and the Levant, bringing them more closely into contact with one another. Meanwhile, on a more personal level, Muslims and Franks in the Levant attended each others' festivals, visited each others' homes, and formed friendships, albeit ones that were restricted by limited intercultural understanding.

It was not only diplomacy that underwent an expansion; as we have noted, trade flourished as a result of the greater presence of European merchants in the east, despite condemnation by angry popes, with military conflict leading to only limited hiatuses in the exchange of goods and money. We have also seen the transfer of technological and practical innovations, although, with the possible exception of some aspects of military technology and maybe some medical knowledge, this seems largely to have been a one-way transfer from the Levant to Europe, and the Latin states were but one of the various channels through which such knowledge passed. Of course, there were also the physical remains that the Franks left behind, especially the fortresses that had not been demolished as part of the counter-crusade, and were now re-occupied, modified, and repurposed. Meanwhile, for the Muslim peasants, little on the whole seems to have changed. They continued to work their lands and pay their taxes, even though they might be paying them to different overlords. Only in a limited number of cases do they seem to have suffered at the hands of new masters or even chosen to flee their homes.

It is important to remind ourselves of the highly localized impact of the Frankish campaigns in the Levant. The Muslim world, after all, was vast, extending at this time from Iberia and North Africa in the west to Central Asia, northern India, and Indonesia in the east. While in the west, the Muslims

of Iberia and North Africa were also dealing with European attacks, their interactions with their Levantine co-religionists were limited. Meanwhile, the effects of the crusades in the Levant were little felt in the eastern Muslim world; as we have noted in our Introduction, a Muslim merchant in Samarkand, for example, probably neither knew nor cared about the activities of Europeans in lands further west, unless they disrupted his supplies of goods from that direction. Thus, the impact of the Levantine crusades, while significant for the inhabitants of the region itself, made relatively little impression on the inhabitants of the Muslim world as a whole.

This does not mean, however, that once the Franks had been driven from the area, they were then simply forgotten. This was until recently indeed the assumption of a number of scholars, who stated that the majority of Muslims essentially forgot about the crusades, and their interest therein was only re-awakened in the 19th century, as a result of increasing encounters with the European colonial powers (Abouali, 2011: 176–78). According to this Eurocentric narrative, two figures from the period did remain prominent after the demise of the Frankish states, Nur al-Din and al-Zahir Baybars; Nur al-Din was remembered by the religious classes as the *mujahid* par excellence, while Baybars became the hero of a hugely popular folk epic. Notably absent was Saladin, who was regarded by modern scholars as having been forgotten in the Middle East until he was re-introduced into the Muslim world as a result of the renown that he had achieved in the West, especially in the eyes of politicians such as Kaiser Wilhelm II (r. 1888–1918), who visited the sultan's tomb in 1898 and publicly described how famous the sultan was in Europe (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 592–94). However, in an important article, Diana Abouali has recently demonstrated that this narrative is seriously mistaken, and both the crusades and Saladin continued to have a significant presence in the consciousness of Muslims of the Levant for centuries after the Franks had been expelled from the region. This did not, however, mean that the Muslims felt insecure and that they needed to be constantly prepared for another attack from Europe, but the events remained part of their collective historical memory, and figures like Saladin became seen as models of ideal behaviour for others to follow (Abouali, 2011: 179–85). Meanwhile, the inhabitants of the region carried on with their lives, with their rulers continuing to pursue their military and political conflicts, their merchants continuing to engage in their commercial endeavours, their scholars continuing to expand and pass on their knowledge, and their peasants continuing to till their fields.

The impact of the crusades on the modern-day Muslim consciousness

On 16 September 2001, the U.S. president, George W. Bush, declared, as he promised to pursue the perpetrators of the terrorist attacks of 11 September, 'This crusade, this war on terrorism is going to take a while' (Bush, 2001). Both Muslims and scholars of the Muslim world were aghast, for his choice of wording showed an utter lack of sensitivity and cultural awareness. The word 'crusade', used so often in English simply to refer to a sustained effort to achieve something, has long been associated in the Muslim historical memory with European colonialism, interference in the Muslim world, and violent military action by Christians against Muslims, so in using the term, Bush raised a spectre of Christian-Muslim hostility that most had hoped to have left in the past (Esposito, 2003: 74–75). In response to the outcry that followed, Bush apologized for his remark, but the damage was done, and he had by then played directly into the hands of his enemies, as we shall see.

As Carole Hillenbrand has noted, the Arabic equivalent of the term 'crusade', *al-hurub al-salibiyya* (the cross wars), began to be used to refer to the crusading period in Muslim political discourse and historical writing in the 19th century. The Ottoman sultan Abdülhamid II (r. 1876–1909) repeatedly described European colonial efforts in the Middle East as a 'crusade', and his use of this concept was widely taken up and circulated in the pan-Islamic press of the region. The Egyptian historian Sayyid 'Ali al-Hariri, in his pioneering Arabic history of the crusades, *al-Akhbar al-Saniyya fi'l-Hurub al-Salibiyya* (The Splendid Accounts in the Crusading Wars, published in 1899), also reiterated the sultan's comments, stating, 'Our most glorious sultan, Abdülhamid II has rightly remarked that Europe is now carrying out a crusade against us in the form of a political campaign' (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 591–93).

The 20th century saw the crusades and the Muslim heroes who fought in them become frequently invoked in Muslim political discourse. The crusades have been presented by some as precursors to modern colonial activity and intervention in Muslim world, with Israel being seen as a modern crusader state, planted by western powers and used as a bridgehead for their activities in the region. Meanwhile, figures such as Saladin and Baybars have become seen as models for modern leaders to imitate or at least to associate themselves with to boost their legitimacy. A few examples will suffice to illustrate this.

An influential figure in the development of many of the ideas and rhetoric of modern Muslim radicals was the Egyptian Sayyid Qutb (1906–66), a member of the Muslim Brotherhood who was hanged for treason by the Egyptian authorities, and whom Esposito describes as 'a godfather to Muslim extremist movements around the globe' (Esposito, 2003: 56). Qutb saw the crusades as part of a wider sequence of conflicts between Muslims and non-Muslims that had begun with the Muslim conquests of the 7th and 8th centuries. He asserted that the term 'crusade' should be understood to mean all

Christian attacks on Muslims, even including Christian resistance to the early Muslim expansion. However, Qutb also expanded his view of what constituted crusading to encompass both Zionism and western imperialism. Thus, in modern times, it was acceptable to talk about Jewish crusading as well as Christian crusading, and he saw these as manifestations of an ongoing desire by Christians and Jews to exterminate Islam, a doctrinal aim that was disguised as conflicts over land or military or economic resources (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 600–1). Drawing selectively on the works of Ibn Taymiyya, Qutb divided the world into two sides, the good and the evil, arguing that since governments had failed to promote good, it was up to individuals to do so, through armed struggle (military *jihad*) if necessary, and any Muslims who refused to take up this duty were themselves apostates who also deserved to die (Esposito, 2003: 58–61). Qutb's writings were extremely influential in the development of later movements like **al-Qa'ida** (al-Qaeda) and **Hamas** (Bonney, 2004: 215–23).

Al-Qa'ida (al-Qaeda)Arabic: 'the base'. A multinational terrorist network that conducts operations against targets across the world, founded by Usama ibn Ladin (Osama bin Laden, d. 2011) in about 1988.

Hamas(*Harakat al-Muqawama al-Islamiyya* [Islamic Resistance Movement]). Politico-military organization dedicated to the Palestinian struggle against Israel.

The original 1988 charter of Hamas ('fervour', and also an acronym for *Harakat al-Muqawama al-Islamiyya* [Islamic Resistance Movement]), which currently runs the Gaza Strip, adopts a position that very much follows that laid out by Qutb. It sees Palestine as being occupied by the 'Zionist enemy', essentially meaning the Jews of Israel, and the movement was therefore originally dedicated to the destruction of that state. From the charter's perspective, the Jewish occupation is the latest episode in a sequence of western attacks on the Holy Land that include the crusades and, again like the crusades, will only be successfully repulsed through fighting for the cause of God in the military *jihad*. The charter also expresses a desire to establish an Islamic state in the area; militant sentiment and piety are seen as going hand in hand, and the religious impulse manifests in particular in the extensive social welfare programmes that the movement runs and the calls for increased piety among Muslims that it issues (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 602; Esposito, 2003: 94–97). After winning the Palestinian Authority elections in 2006, Hamas refused to sign peace agreements previously made by the Palestinian Authority with Israel and renounce violence, though it did offer a 10-year truce in exchange for the withdrawal of Israeli troops from the West Bank, Gaza Strip,

and East Jerusalem, an offer that was not taken up. Since then, there has been further conflict between Hamas and Israeli forces, including major wars in 2008–9 and 2014. However, in 2017, Hamas produced a new, much more moderate charter, which dispenses with the original objective of the destruction of Israel but still aims to promote both the liberation of Palestine from Israeli occupation and opposition to the 'colonial Zionist project'. At the same time, it also states, 'Hamas affirms that its conflict is with the Zionist project not with the Jews because of their religion', and contains no references to the crusades, thus framing the conflict as a political one rather than a religious one, even though the movement continues to promote an Islamic state ('Hamas in 2017', 2017).

Al-Qa'ida (the Base) was founded in the late 1980s by Usama ibn Ladin (Osama bin Laden, 1957–2011) with the initial objective of co-ordinating resistance to the Soviet occupation of Afghanistan but has since become dedicated to the removal of foreign presence and interference from the Muslim world as a whole. It is now a multinational network that uses terrorist operations as a means to achieve its aims. The United States became Ibn Ladin's primary target because, he maintained, it supported both Israel and other un-Islamic regimes in the Middle East and thus was propping up the first barriers to the establishment of true Islamic regimes (Bonney, 2004: 357–60). Like the 1988 charter of Hamas, al-Qaeda propaganda uses counter-crusading rhetoric. From as early as 1994, statements issued by Usama ibn Ladin and his followers used the language of crusade to describe the activities of western powers in the Middle East (Elliott, 2017: 110). For example, one statement that they issued in 1998, seven years after the Gulf War undertaken to eject Iraqi forces from Kuwait in 1990–91, asserts that the continuing American presence in the Middle East is evidence of an ongoing crusade intended to enable it to exploit the region's resources, to attack Islam, and to support Zionist efforts both to maintain their occupation of Palestine and to expand their holdings in the region [*Doc. 21*]. As Andrew Elliott has shown, Usama ibn Ladin was keen to depict the activities of western powers in the Middle East not as a new wave of crusades but rather as a *continuation* of the crusades of the middle ages. In doing so, Ibn Ladin aimed to justify al-Qa'ida's activities as the latest defensive efforts undertaken to protect the Muslim world, thus falling within the dictates of Ibn Taymiyya's military *jihad* teaching, at least as he and his followers sought to depict it (Elliott, 2017: 117–19). In the light of this, one can see why it was so unfortunate that President Bush used the word 'crusade' to refer to his planned war on terrorism; by using this word, he essentially confirmed the description that Usama ibn Ladin had been using to depict U.S. activities in the Muslim world and in the process provided support for the latter's interpretation and application of Islamic teachings; indeed, Ibn Ladin was

quick to seize upon Bush's comments and cited them repeatedly as proof of what he had been saying about the Americans for years (Elliott, 2017: 110–112).

Islamic State (*al-Dawla al-Islamiyya*; also known as ISIS [Islamic State of Iraq and Syria, or Islamic State of Iraq and *al-Sham*], ISIL [Islamic State of Iraq and the Levant], or *Da'ish* [its Arabic acronym]) split off from the Iraqi branch of al-Qa'ida in February of 2014 and over the following year established significant territorial control in both Iraq and Syria, while also receiving the allegiance of terrorist groups elsewhere. Since then, an international coalition has gradually retaken its territory; at the time of writing (April 2019), IS has just lost its last stronghold at al-Baghuz Fawqani in Syria and is in the process of transforming into an underground insurgency movement. In its self-depiction, Islamic State harks back above all to the Muslim community of the 7th and 8th centuries, but, as Jason Roche has noted, this does not prevent it from making widespread use of the terms 'crusade' and 'crusaders' in its propaganda, as is perhaps most evident in Issue 4 (Sep–Oct 2014) of its English-language propaganda magazine, *Dabiq* (Roche, 2017). Indeed, when one looks at the issue in question, one can see that it is positively riddled with these words, almost to the point of parody; the terms 'crusade' and 'crusader' (including the comment by George W. Bush mentioned previously) appear 67 times in a 56-page document and are used to refer to both Christians and Jews from various European countries, the United States, Australia, and Canada; as well as to the 'Romans' (meaning the Byzantines) and the Europeans involved in the establishment of the borders of modern Middle Eastern states in the 20th century. Thus for Islamic State, 'crusader' is essentially synonymous with 'Christian or Jewish enemy'. This stands in stark contrast to our medieval sources, who used a much more nuanced vocabulary in their discussions of the various factions active in the Levant at the time and for whom 'Frank' was not automatically a negative term. Incidentally, Islamic State's use of the term *jihad* is also somewhat loose; while they clearly acknowledge that there are multiple forms that *jihad* may take, most of the time that the term is used in *Dabiq*, it is clear that military *jihad* is what is intended (*Dabiq*, 2014: passim).

Islamic State A terrorist organization that split off from al-Qa'ida in 2014 and is currently active in Iraq and Syria, with affiliates elsewhere.

Rationalizing terrorism

We have mentioned that medieval Muslim religious scholars imposed a number of restrictions on the military *jihad*, including the forbidding of the killing of non-combatants and of deliberately killing oneself on the battlefield

(see Chapter 6). Violent extremists like Usama ibn Ladin and the leaders of Islamic State sidestep these restrictions by adopting a distorted view of how they should be understood. Here we will look at two examples: attacking non-military personnel and suicide attacks.

As we have seen, standard military *jihad* teaching has been generally understood to forbid the targeting of non-combatants. However, western democracies such as that of the United States, with their emphasis on the idea that their elected governments represent the will of the people, have through such self-depictions enabled extremists to regard the whole peoples of these countries as being combatants; because they participated in the elections that put their governments in place, the peoples of democratic countries are responsible for the military activities of their governments and thus seen as combatants (Bonney, 2004: 314–17; Esposito, 2003: 23). The issue of *Dabiq* magazine mentioned previously literally illustrates this point with a photograph of people on a British street subtitled 'Crusader "Civilians"', with the quotation marks clearly intended to suggest that the civilians are in fact combatants and hence valid targets, while on the same page informing readers, 'The best thing you can do is to strive to your best and kill any disbeliever, whether he be French, American, or from any of their allies' (*Dabiq*, 2014: 9). Working from a similar viewpoint, in one of his statements issued in 1998, Usama ibn Ladin comments, 'If their people do not wish to be harmed inside their very own countries, they should seek to elect governments that are truly representative of them and that can protect their interests'. Yet at the same time, he contradicts himself, for elsewhere in the same statement he comments, 'We, however, differentiate between the Western government and the people of the West. If the people have elected these governments in the latest elections, it is because they have fallen prey to the Western media, which portrays things contrary to what they really are' [*Doc. 21.i*]. Thus, Ibn Ladin seems on the one hand to have wanted to make the people of the West valid targets of al-Qa'ida's operations through their being responsible for the actions of their governments, but on the other hand, he also seems to have seen them as sheep who elect whichever governments the media tells them to. This internally inconsistent perspective defied logic for the sake of rhetoric.

With regard to suicide attacks, as we have indicated previously, suicide is strictly forbidden in Islam, and medieval Muslim scholars also generally felt that one should avoid engaging in warfare that seemed likely to lead to one's death, unless it was absolutely necessary. Given the lack of explicit support in the standard Islamic religious and judicial literature for suicide attacks, extremists have rationalized such operations using a mixture of selective deployment of Qur'anic verses and examples of what they have seen as successful suicide operations in history from both the time of the Prophet and

the modern day. Relevant verses include Qur'an 2: 249 ('How oft, by Allah's will, hath a small force vanquished a big one?'), understood as indicating the value of one or a few people killing more than their number, and 2: 207 ['And there is the type of man who gives his life to earn the pleasure of Allah; and Allah is full of kindness to (His) devotees.'], seen as demonstrating that one can deliberately sacrifice one's life to gain divine approval. Meanwhile, as David Cook has noted, the historical examples cited are decidedly questionable and are often simply examples of people who were killed fighting bravely in battle with the enemy rather than deliberately killing themselves (Cook, 2007: 40–42, 149–53). Yet groups such as al-Qa'ida and Hamas continue to abuse scripture and history to promote what they call 'martyrdom operations'.

Latter-day Saladins?

As mentioned previously, modern political leaders and activists in the Muslim world have also taken the Muslim heroes of the crusading period as models, or at least as figures with whom to associate themselves in propaganda. Since the 19th century, the most frequently recalled of these heroes is Saladin, and a number of modern political leaders have sought to emphasize links with the famous sultan. Perhaps the most striking example is the former Iraqi president Saddam Husayn (r. 1979–2003), who had himself portrayed as a latter-day Saladin, a Sunni leader opposing both the Shi'ites of Iran and the interference of the non-Muslim western powers (see Fig. 12). Children's books and newspaper articles depicted Husayn as the new Saladin; his birthplace was noted as being Tikrit, the same as that of the sultan, though he was actually more likely born in nearby 'Awja, and his official biographies listed his date of birth as 1937, exactly 800 years after Saladin's birth in 1137, rather than the 1939 listed in the population register of the ministry of the interior (Bengio, 1998: 82–84). An awful irony, of course, is that Saladin was a Kurd, and Saddam Husayn ordered the deaths of hundreds of thousands of Kurds during his presidency (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 595).

Figure 10.1 Propaganda picture of Saddam Husayn as the heir of Saladin

Source: This image was probably commissioned in the 1980s during the Iran-Iraq war and hence aims to depict Husayn as the defender of Sunni Islam against what he would have regarded as the Shi'ite heresy of the Iranians. ©Sipa Press/Rex Features Limited.

Of course, Saddam Husayn was not unique in trying to link himself to Saladin. In his propaganda, the Syrian president Hafiz al-Asad (r. 1971–2000) made frequent use of the image of Saladin to depict himself as a defender of the Muslim world, especially against the Israelis. This included having the sultan depicted on banknotes; erecting statues of the famous *mujahid*,

including one major one placed, in 1992, directly opposite a huge portrait of al-Asad himself that was hung from the gates of the citadel in Damascus; and keeping a painting of Saladin's victory at Hattin in 1187 behind his desk. Usama ibn Ladin also sought to draw on the sultan's legacy through claiming, in 2001, that he had a vision of Saladin that indicated to him that a time of great historical change was at hand (Hillenbrand, 1999a: 595–600; Elliott, 2017: 114–17). Thus, the memory of Saladin has been depicted in a range of ways to suit the agendas of the various individuals in question.

Final words

As we have noted, a number of modern Muslim individuals and organizations have drawn on the memory of the crusades to support their own political and religious agendas; of course, it is not just Muslims who have done this, but a full discussion of the use of crusades-related ideas by Christians, white supremacists, and others is beyond the scope of this book. It is important to highlight, of course, the fact that most Muslims see the crusades as events that happened long ago, which do not have immediate bearing on the present, and they see the rhetorical twisting of history by figures like Usama ibn Ladin and Saddam Husayn for what it is. However, the memory of the crusades in the Muslim world is one that still carries more negative connotations than it does in the West, something that is reinforced by such rhetoric, especially in countries where there is strict government control of the media and official state hostility to western governments. Even Muslims living in the West are nervous of the term 'crusade', particularly in political discourse; as we have mentioned previously, it conjures up negative images of Christian hostility against Muslims. In the wake of the terrible events of 9/11, Muslims living in western countries feared a backlash against them. In some cases, their fears were well founded, as they, as well as some non-Muslims who were mistaken for Muslims because of their skin colour, were hurt or killed in revenge attacks. They were also subject to racial or religious profiling that threatened their rights and liberties. Even now, some Muslims are nervous each time the anniversary of the 9/11 attacks comes around, as they fear further retribution. As Sumbul Ali-Karamili has noted, what is missed is that the majority of Muslims are as frightened of figures like Usama ibn Ladin as non-Muslims are, since most Muslims do not adhere to extremist, militant positions, and thus in the eyes of the violent extremists are also potential targets. This is worse for Muslims living in the Middle East, as they must also live with the danger of their governments being subverted by such extremists (Ali-Karamili, 2008: 215).

In conclusion, it is worth emphasizing two major points. First, the period of the crusades was one that, while we must acknowledge the bitter warfare and

bloodshed that took place, also saw Muslims and Franks living in neighbouring states and interacting on a tolerant, and sometimes even friendly, basis for extended periods of time. Second, the counter-crusading rhetoric that receives so much attention from some western media channels, with its representation of the crusades as a phase in an ongoing war of Judaism and Christianity against Islam, is a modern fabrication used by some figures for primarily political reasons, and it does not represent the views of the majority of Muslims living in the world today. It also falsely imposes a modern worldview on a period when people of all faiths saw the world very differently; the idea of colonialism, for example, would have been completely alien to a person living at the time. As we have seen, the modern rhetoric also ignores half the story; it focuses only on the wars that took place between the Muslims and the crusaders (in the process reducing these to a simple binary opposition, when the situation was much more complex), and it completely neglects the periods of peaceful interaction that we have examined.

The mixed nature of interactions between the Muslims and the Franks in the crusading period, then, has something important to teach us in the modern day. Even in a world where there was overwhelming pressure to see only the divisions between Christians and Muslims, people on both sides enjoyed amicable and collaborative relations in the spaces between the battles. We must acknowledge that they saw each other as religious inferiors and that their understanding of each other was limited, but this did not prevent them from meeting, trading, and enjoying each other's company. In the modern world, there are far more opportunities for Muslims and non-Muslims to interact on a friendly basis, people have far better access to information than did their forebears in the Middle Ages, and discriminating against someone on the basis of religion is forbidden by U.N. declaration. There is, then, no excuse for Muslims and non-Muslims not to create deep, meaningful relationships at home and abroad, despite the barriers that they encounter in the rhetoric of extremists and the distortions of some media outlets.

Further reading

For useful discussions of the impact of the crusades on both the medieval and modern Muslim world, see Carole Hillenbrand, *The Crusades: Islamic Perspectives*; Emmanuel Sivan, *Modern Arab Historiography of the Crusades* (1973); and John M. Chamberlin V, *Imagining Defeat: An Arabic Historiography of the Crusades* (2007). These works should, however, be read in tandem with Diana Abouali's recent valuable article, 'Saladin's Legacy in the Middle East before the Nineteenth Century' (2011). An excellent, if now slightly dated, introduction to the topic of modern terrorism conducted in the

name of Islam is John L. Esposito's *Unholy War: Terror in the Name of Islam* (2003), while a good starting point for studying al-Qa'ida, Islamic State, and more recent developments is Daniel Byman's *Al Qaeda, the Islamic State, and the Global Jihadist Movement: What Everyone Needs to Know* (2015). For a more detailed discussion of modern use of *jihad* ideology, see Richard Bonney, *Jihad: From Qur'an to bin Laden*. An excellent discussion of the questionable medievalism of al-Qa'ida and Islamic State can be found in the relevant chapters of Andrew Elliot's *Medievalism, Politics and Mass Media* (2017). For an American Muslim's response to modern Muslim terrorism in general and 9/11 in particular, see Sumbul Ali-Karamili, *The Muslim Next Door: The Qur'an, the Media and That Veil Thing* (2008).

Documents

Unless otherwise noted, all translations are by the author of this book.

1. Extracts from the *Qur'an* and *Hadith*

The following extracts from the Qur'an *and* hadith *demonstrate the sometimes mixed attitudes towards warfare and other faiths that are found in their pages.*

(i) *Qur'an*

The Muslim holy book is believed by Muslims to have been revealed to the Prophet Muhammad by God. Its arrangement may seem somewhat haphazard, and in fact a number of early Muslim scholars wrote works establishing a chronology for the revelation of its verses. The subsequent verses, however, are presented in the order in which they appear in the received text, rather than according to this chronology.

(a) 2: 62. Those who believe (in the *Qur'an*), and those who follow the Jewish (scriptures), and the Christians and the Sabians – any who believe in Allah and the Last Day, and work righteousness, shall have their reward with their Lord; on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.
(b) 2: 190. Fight in the cause of Allah those who fight you, but do not transgress limits, for Allah loveth not transgressors.
(c) 2: 256. Let there be no compulsion in religion: Truth stands out clear from Error: whoever rejects Evil and believes in Allah hath grasped the most trustworthy handhold, that never breaks. And Allah heareth and knoweth all things.
(d) 5: 32. On that account: We ordained for the Children of Israel that if anyone slew a person – unless it be for murder or spreading mischief in the land – it would be as if he slew the whole people. And if anyone saved a life, it would be as if he saved the life of the whole people. Then

although there came to them Our Messengers with Clear Signs, yet, even after that, many of them continued to commit excesses in the land.

(e) 5: 65–66. If only the People of the Book had believed and been righteous, we should indeed have blotted out their iniquities and admitted them to Gardens of Bliss. If only they had stood fast by the Law, the Gospel, and all the revelation that was sent to them from their Lord, they would have enjoyed happiness from every side. There is from among them a party on the right course: but many of them follow a course that is evil.

(f) 9: 5. But when the forbidden months are past, then fight and slay the Pagans wherever ye find them, and seize them, beleaguer them, and lie in wait for them in every stratagem (of war); but if they repent, and establish regular prayers, and practise regular charity, then open the way for them: for Allah is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.

(g) 9: 29. Fight those who believe not in Allah nor in the Last Day, nor hold that forbidden which hath been forbidden by Allah and his Messenger, nor acknowledge the Religion of Truth, from among the People of the Book, until they pay the *jizya* with willing submission, and feel themselves subdued.

(h) 15: 94–95. Therefore expound openly what thou art commanded, and turn away from those who join false Gods with Allah. For sufficient are We unto thee against those who scoff.

(i) 16: 125. Invite (all) to the Way of thy Lord with wisdom and beautiful preaching; and argue with them in ways that are best and most gracious: for thy Lord knoweth best, who have strayed from His Path, and who receive guidance.

(j) 22: 39–40. To those against whom war is made, permission is given (to fight), because they are wronged – and verily, Allah is Most Powerful for their aid – (They are) those who have been expelled from their homes in defiance of right – (for no cause) except that they say, 'Our Lord is Allah'. Had not Allah checked one set of people by means of another there would surely have been pulled down monasteries, churches, synagogues, and mosques, in which the name of Allah is commemorated in abundant measure. Allah will certainly aid those who aid His (cause) – for verily Allah is Full of Strength, Exalted in Might, (Able to enforce His Will).

The Meaning of the Holy Qur'an (2004) Ed. and trans. 'Abdullah Y. 'Ali. 11th ed. Beltsville, MD: Amana Publications, pp. 33–34, 76, 106–7, 257, 269, 438, 445, 635, 669 and 832–33.

(ii) *Hadith*

Used by Muslims to assist with their interpretation of the Qur'an, *the* hadith *are accounts of the sayings and actions of the Prophet and his Companions. The* hadith *presented subsequently are drawn from the* Sahih *of Muhammad ibn Isma'il al-Bukhari (d. 870), widely regarded among Muslims as one of the foremost compilers of reliable accounts. Each* hadith *begins with an* isnad *(chain of transmitters); we have retained the* isnad *of the first* hadith *presented here to demonstrate how it works but have omitted the isnads of the subsequent* hadiths *to conserve space.*

(a) Al-Hasan ibn Sabbah reported to us [that] Muhammad ibn Sabiq reported to us [that] Malik ibn Mighwal reported to us, saying [that he] heard al-Walid ibn al-'Ayzaz speak on the authority of Abu 'Amr al-Shaybani, who said [that] 'Abd Allah ibn Mas'ud, may God be pleased with him, narrated: 'I asked the Messenger of Allah, Allah's blessing and peace be upon him: "O Allah's Apostle! What is the best deed?" He replied: "To offer the prayers at their early stated fixed times." I asked: "What is next in goodness?" He replied, "To be good and dutiful to your parents." I further asked: "What is next in goodness?" He replied: "To take part in *jihad* in Allah's Cause." I did not ask the Messenger of Allah, Allah's blessing and peace be upon him, any more, and if I had asked him more, he would have told me more.'

(b) 'A'isha bint Talha narrated that 'A'isha [the wife of the Prophet], Allah be pleased with her, had said: 'O Allah's Apostle! We consider *jihad* as the best deed. Should we not fight in Allah's Cause?' He said: 'The best *jihad* (for women) is *hajj* which is accepted by Allah.'

(c) Abu Hurayra, Allah be pleased with him, narrated: 'I heard Allah's Apostle, Allah's blessing and peace be upon him, saying: "The example of a militant in Allah's Cause, and Allah knows better who really strives in His Cause, is like a person who fasts and prays continuously. Allah guarantees that He will admit the militant in His Cause into Paradise if he is killed, otherwise He will return him to his home safely with rewards and war booty." '

(d) Anas, Allah be pleased with him, narrated: 'The Prophet, Allah's blessing and peace be upon him, said: "A single endeavour (of fighting) in Allah's Cause in the afternoon or forenoon is better than the entire world and its contents. A place in Paradise (even though) as small as a bow or a lash of one of you is better than all of the world with its contents. If a woman with beautiful, big and lustrous eyes from Paradise appeared to the people of the earth, she would fill the space between Heaven and the Earth with light and pleasant scent; and her head cover is better than the world and whatever it contains." '

(e) Nafi‘ narrated from ‘Abd Allah ibn ‘Umar, Allah be pleased with both: ‘During some of the holy battles of the Prophet, Allah’s blessing and peace be upon him, a woman was found killed. Allah’s Apostle, Allah’s blessing and peace be upon him, forbade killing women and children.’

(f) ‘Amr ibn Maymun narrated: “Umar [caliph, 634–44] (after he was stabbed [by a Persian slave]) instructed (his would-be successor) saying: “I urge him (the new caliph) to take care of those non-Muslims who are under the protection of Allah and His Apostle. That is to observe the convention agreed upon with them, and fight on their behalf (to secure their safety). He also should not overtax them beyond their capability.” ’

Muhammad ibn Isma‘il al-Bukhari (2003) *Sahih al-Bukhari*. Ed. and trans. Muhammad M. al-Sharif. Beirut: Dar al-Kutub al-‘Ilmiyya, Vol. 2, pp. 217–18, 220, 275 and 285. At some points we have edited al-Sharif’s translation for clarity.

2. A depiction of the Fatimid Caliph al-Hakim bi-Amr Allah (r. 996–1021)

The Fatimid caliph al-Hakim bi-Amr Allah gained notoriety in western Europe after he ordered the destruction of the Church of the Holy Sepulchre in Jerusalem in 1009. This event is described by the Egyptian historian and teacher Taqi al-Din Ahmad ibn ‘Ali al-Maqrizi (1364–1442) in his Itti‘az al-Hunafa’ bi-Akhbar al-A’imma al-Fatimiyyin al-Khulafa’ *(Lesson for True Believers in the Stories of the Fatimid Imam-Caliphs).*

In [the year 1009] the Christians went out from Egypt to Jerusalem to celebrate Easter at the [Church of] Garbage [the Church of the Holy Sepulchre], as was their yearly custom, setting out in a great crowd just as the Muslims set out to perform the *hajj*. Al-Hakim questioned […] one of his leaders about that, asking what he knew about what happened at the church, and he said, ‘This is a place of worship that the Christians venerate, and to which they perform pilgrimage from all countries. Princes come there, and much money is brought to it, along with clothes, drapes, soft furnishings, lamps, crosses made of gold and silver, and other such things, so that there are large amounts of these things there. On Easter Day, when the Christians gather at the [Church of] Garbage, the crosses are set up, and the lamps are hung around the altar, and by an artifice with oil of balsam and oil of mercury they conduct fire toward it, which makes the altar glow with a bright light so that whoever sees it thinks that the light is fire that has descended from heaven.’ Al-Hakim disapproved of that […] and wrote to Ahmad ibn Ya‘qub, the missionary, telling him to head for Jerusalem, destroy the [Church of] Garbage

and let the people plunder it until all traces of it were obliterated, and that was done. Then he ordered the destruction of the synagogues and churches that were in the districts of his kingdom, but he became frightened that the Christians would destroy the Muslim mosques that were in their countries, so he stopped that.

Ahmad ibn ʻAli al-Maqrizi (1967–73) *Ittiʻaz al-Hunafa' bi-Akhbar al-A'imma al-Fatimiyyin al-Khulafa'*. Ed. Jamal al-Din al-Shayyal and Muhammad H.M. Ahmad. Cairo: Lajnat Ihya' al-Turath al-Islami, Vol. 2, pp. 74–75.

3. Al-Masʻudi on the Franks

ʻAli ibn al-Husayn al-Masʻudi (d. 956) was a Muslim traveller and geographer. He has left us two distinct depictions of the Franks in two different geographical works.

(i) From *Muruj al-Dhahab wa-Maʻadin al-Ǯawhar* (Meadows of Gold and Mines of Gemstone)

The Franks are the strongest of [the] races, the most fearsome and the most numerous. They have the most widespread power and the most numerous cities. They are the best-organised, the most obedient to their kings and the most compliant, except that the Galicians [who are a type of Frank] are stronger and more harmful than the [other] Franks. One Galician is a match for several Franks.

All of Ifranja [the land of the Franks] is unified in one kingdom. There is no competition between them about that, nor is there any factionalism. The name of the capital of their kingdom at this time is Paris. It is a great city.

Al-Masʻudi then draws the reader's attention to a book that he came upon in Fustat (now part of greater Cairo), which was originally presented to the Muslim ruler of Spain by the Bishop of Gerona. The book included this partial (and somewhat inexact) list of the Frankish kings:

The first of the kings of Ifranja was Clovis [r. 481–511]. He was a heathen, but his wife converted him to Christianity. Her name was Clotild. Then his son Theuderic [r. 511–24] ruled after him. Then Theuderic's son Dagobert ruled after him. Then Dagobert's son Theuderic ruled after him, then after him ruled his brother Carloman. Then his son Charles [probably Charles Martel, *major domo* of the Merovingian kings, 714–41] ruled after him. Then his son Pippin [III, *major domo*, 741–51; King of the Franks, 751–68] ruled after him. Then after him ruled his son Charles [Charlemagne, r. 768–814], who ruled for 26 years, and he was in the days of al-Hakam, the ruler of al-Andalus [r. 796–

822]. After him his children fought each other and fell into disputes until Ifranja was ruined because of them. Then Louis, the son of Charles [Louis the Pious, r. 814–40] became the ruler of their kingdom, and he ruled for 28 years and six months, and he was the one who advanced on Tortosa and besieged it.

Al-Masʿudi goes on to comment on the reigns of subsequent Carolingian kings up to the time that he read the book, the Muslim year 336 (947–48 CE).

ʿAli ibn al-Husayn al-Masʿudi (1965–79) *Muruj al-Dhahab wa-Maʿadin al-Jawhar*. Ed. Charles Pellat. Beirut: Manshurat al-Jamiʿa al-Lubnaniyya, Vol. 2, pp. 145–48.

(ii) From *Kitab al-Tanbih wa-l-Ishraf* (The Book of Admonition and Overseeing)

As for the peoples of the northern region […] like the *Saqaliba* [referring to a variety of northern peoples], the Franks and those nations next to them, the sun shines weakly upon them because of their distance from it, cold and damp have overcome their region, and snow and ice come upon them in uninterrupted succession. They have little warm temperament in them; their bodies have become enormous, their humour dry, their morals crude, their understanding blunted and their tongues sluggish. Their colour has become excessively white, to the point of becoming blue, their skins thin, their flesh coarse, their eyes blue in accordance with their colouring, and their hair lank and reddish-brown because of the preponderance of humid vapor. Their beliefs have no solidity, and this is because of the nature of the cold and the lack of warmth. The ones who are from further north have become overcome with ignorance, roughness, and brutishness. This increases in them the further north that they go.

ʿAli ibn al-Husayn al-Masʿudi (1894) *Kitâb at-Tanbîh wa'l-Ischrâf*. Ed. M. J. de Goeje. Bibliotheca Geographorum Arabicorum, Vol. 8. Leiden: E.J. Brill, pp. 23–24.

4. The fall of Jerusalem to the crusaders: two accounts

(i) Hamza ibn Asad ibn al-Qalanisi (d. 1160) was born into an important family in Damascus and occasionally held prominent positions in the city's administration. His best-known work, Dhayl Ta'rikh Dimashq *(The Continuation of the History of Damascus), is a continuation of an older chronicle and focuses on the history of Damascus during 1056–1160; as such, it forms part of the genre of so-called 'city chronicles.' Ibn al-Qalanisi's work was a major source for other historians who came after him, including Ibn al-Athir, subsequently.*

The Franks went to Jerusalem and fought its people and besieged them. They set up a siege tower and leaned it against the city wall. The news reached them that al-Afdal had set out from Egypt with an overwhelming army to pursue the *jihad* against them, engage them in combat, aid the city against them and protect it from them, so they pressed their attack, persevering until the end of that day. Then they withdrew from the city, threatening to renew their attack the next day, and the people descended from the walls at the time of the sunset prayer. Then the Franks returned to the attack, going up the tower and climbing onto the city wall. The people were put to flight, and they stormed the city and took control of it. Some of the people fled to the Tower of David, and many people were killed. The Jews gathered in the synagogue, and the Franks burned it down on their heads. The people in the Tower of David surrendered it in return for safe-conduct on 22 Sha'ban of that year [492, 14 July 1099]. Then the Franks destroyed the shrines and tomb of Abraham, may peace be upon him.

Hamza ibn Asad ibn al-Qalanisi (1983) *Ta'rikh Dimashq*. Ed. Suhayl Zakkar. Damascus: Dar Hassan li-l-Tiba'a wa-l-Nashr, p. 222.

(ii) 'Izz al-Din 'Ali ibn Muhammad ibn al-Athir (1160–1233) spent most of his life in Mosul working as a historian, though he also sometimes served as a diplomatic envoy of the rulers of the city. He is best known for his historical chronicle, al-Kamil fi'l-Ta'rikh *(The Complete History), from which the following extract is drawn. Ibn al-Athir's work is a so-called 'universal history', that is, a history of the world from its origins to the author's own time; indeed, Ibn al-Athir begins his work with the creation of Adam and ends it in the Muslim year 628 (1230–31). The* Kamil *is regarded by historians as being fairly reliable, though it is permeated with a bias in favour of the family of Zangi. This bias is more evident in another of Ibn al-Athir's works, as we will see later.*

The Egyptians appointed as deputy in Jerusalem a man called Iftikhar al-Dawla, who remained there until this present time, when the Franks attacked after they had besieged Acre but with no success. After their arrival they erected forty trebuchets or more and they constructed two towers, one on Mount Zion side but the Muslims burnt that one and killed all inside. After they had completely destroyed it by fire, their help was then called for, as the city defences had been overwhelmed on the other side. The Franks did indeed take the city from the north in the forenoon of Friday, seven days remaining of Sha'ban [492, 15 July 1099]. The inhabitants became prey for the sword. For a week the Franks continued to slaughter the Muslims. A group of Muslims took refuge in the Tower of David and defended themselves there. They resisted for

three days and then the Franks offered them safe-conduct, so they surrendered the place. The Franks kept faith with them and they departed at night for Ascalon, where they remained.

In the Aqsa Mosque the Franks killed more than 70,000, a large number of them being imams, ulema, righteous men and ascetics, Muslims who had left their native lands and come to live a holy life in this august spot. The Franks took forty or more silver candlesticks from the Dome of the Rock, each of which weighed 3,600 dirhams, and also a silver candelabrum weighing forty Syrian rotls. They removed 150 small candlesticks of silver and twenty or so of gold. The booty they took was beyond counting.

'Izz al-Din ibn al-Athir (2006) *The Chronicle of Ibn al-Athir for the Crusading Period from* al-Kamil fi'l-Ta'rikh*: Part 1: The Years 491–541/1097–1146: The Coming of the Franks and the Muslim Response*. Trans. D.S. Richards. Crusade Texts in Translation 13. Aldershot: Ashgate, pp. 21–22.

5. Muslim views of the crusaders and their motives

(i) A number of Muslim poets wrote emotionally charged works about the impact of the First Crusade, calling on their patrons to take up arms against the Franks. These include the Khurasani poet al-Abiwardi (d. 1113), whose call is quoted in the work of Ibn al-Athir (see Doc. 4.ii*); the Syrian Ibn al-Khayyat (d. 1120s); and an anonymous poet quoted by the Egyptian historian Ibn Taghri Birdi (c. 1410–70).*

(a) Al-Abiwardi. Note that the Muslims frequently conflated the ifranj *(Franks) and* rum *(Byzantines) in this period.*

We have mixed blood with flowing tears, and there are none of us left worth pitying.

The tears that a man sheds are the worst of weapons when sharp blades stir up the fires of war.

O sons of Islam, behind you are battles in which sons [of your enemies] fell at your feet.

Are you drowsing in the shade of safety, bliss and life, carefree like a flower in a luxuriant grove?

How can your eye sleep, filling its lids, in the face of sinful acts that wake every sleeper,

While the resting-places of your brothers in *al-Sham* become the backs of their warhorses or the bellies of lions?

The *rum* inflict humiliation upon them, while you drag behind you the coat-tail of a life of ease, acting like a peaceful man.

How much blood has been shed, and how many fair ladies have concealed, in shame, their beauty behind their hands,

When white swords have points that are stained red, and brown iron spearheads have become bloodied tips?

Between the seizing of an opportunity to stab and the impact itself is a blow, [for fear of] which children's hair turns as white as that of old men.

This is war, and whoever stays away from its adversities to keep himself safe will afterwards grind his teeth in regret.

Sharp swords are unsheathed in the hands of the polytheists, and will be sheathed again in necks and skulls.

In the face of them, the one who is veiled in goodness [the Prophet] all but calls at the top of his voice, 'O family of Hashim [the Prophet's clan],

'I see my community not pointing their spears at the enemy, and the faith on weak pillars!

'[The Muslims] avoid the fire [of war] for fear of destruction, not realising that disgrace is the inevitable consequence.

'Must the brave Arabs be content with the harm [that they suffer], while the valiant Persians close their eyes to their dishonour?'

'Izz al-Din ibn al-Athir (1966) *Al-Kamil fi'l-Ta'rikh*. Ed. C.J. Tornberg. Beirut: Dar Sadir, Vol. 10, pp. 284–85.

(b) Ibn al-Khayyat

How long [will this go on]? For the polytheists have swollen in a flood, of which the torrent [of the sea] is frightened by the extent.

Armies like mountains have stormed out of the land of *Ifranja*, to bring about our destruction.

They treat well whoever gives way to adversity, and they buy off whoever prepares for war.

…

The tribe of polytheism does not disapprove of evil-doing, and does not know any economy with injustice.

They do not prevent anyone from [taking part in] the killing, and do not spare any effort in destruction.

How many young women have started to beat their throats and cheeks in fear of them,

And mothers of young girls who never before knew the heat [of day] nor suffered cold at night?

They are almost wasting away from fear, and dying of sadness and painful agitation.

So protect your religion and your harem, defending them like someone who

does not see death as a loss.

…

The heads of the polytheists have ripened. Do not neglect them as a vintage and a harvest.

Their [sword] edge must be notched, and their cornerstone demolished.

For Alp-Arslan, in similar circumstances, went out [to fight], and he was sharper than the sword.

Ahmad ibn Muhammad ibn al-Khayyat (1994) *Diwan ibn al-Khayyat*. Ed. Kh. Mardam Bey. Beirut: Dar Sadir, pp. 184–86.

(c) Anonymous poet

Unbelief has made harm to Islam lawful, about which lamentation for the religion is prolonged.

What is right perishes and what is forbidden is permitted. The sword cuts and blood is shed.

How many Muslims have become spoils of war? [How many] Muslim women have [had] that which is forbidden stolen away?

How many a mosque have they made into a church, a cross set up in its *mihrab*?

Pig's blood in it is suitable for them, and the burning of *Qur'ans* in it as incense.

Do God and Islam not have a right whereby young men and old should be defended?

So say to those with insight, wherever they are, 'Respond to God and [what] He obliges [you to], respond!'

Jamal al-Din ibn Taghri Birdi (1963) *Al-Nujum al-Zahira fi Muluk Misr wa-l-Qahira*. Ed. M. ʿA. al-Q. Hatim. Cairo: Dar al-Kutub al-Misriyya, Vol. 5, pp. 151–52.

(ii) Muhammad ibn ʿAli al-ʿAzimi (d. after 1161) wrote a city chronicle about his hometown of Aleppo, Ta'rikh Halab *(The History of Aleppo). In it, he ascribed motives of revenge to the crusaders. Note that the reference to the pilgrims 'who escaped', subsequently, is intended to convey that some of them were killed.*

The people of the coastal ports prevented Frankish and Byzantine pilgrims from crossing to Jerusalem. News of what happened spread from those who escaped to their countries, and [the Franks] prepared to invade [the Levant].

Muhammad ibn ʿAli al-ʿAzimi (1984) *Ta'rikh Halab*. Ed. Ibrahim Zaʿrur. Damascus: n.p., p. 356.

(iii) Usama ibn Munqidh (1095–1188) was an Arab emir who travelled widely, often as a result of becoming embroiled in political conflicts and consequently having to move on. He is well known to modern historians for his 'memoirs', which contain entertaining tales of Frankish behaviour (see Doc. 14*). However, in his own time, he was actually more highly regarded for his poetic talents. The following is drawn from* Lubab al-Adab *(The Kernels of Refinement), an anthology on cultured behaviour that also includes historical anecdotes.*

When the Franks (God forsake them) came out in the year 490 [1096–97], conquered Antioch and defeated the people of Syria, greed insinuated itself into them, and their innermost feelings told them of the riches of Baghdad [or 'taking control of Baghdad'] and the country of the east. So they mobilised, gathered and set out, aiming for the country.

Usama ibn Munqidh (1987) *Lubab al-Adab*. Ed. Ahmad M. Shakir. Cairo: Dar al-Kutub al-Salafiyya, p. 132.

(iv) Ibn al-Athir (see Doc. 4.ii*) suggests two possible causes for the First Crusade.*

When it was the year 490 [1096–7] they invaded Syria. The reason for their invasion was that their ruler, Baldwin, a relative of Roger the Frank who had conquered Sicily, gathered a great host of Franks and sent to Roger, saying, 'I have gathered a great host and I am coming to you. I shall proceed to Ifriqiya [the eastern Maghrib] to take it and I shall be a neighbour of yours.' Roger assembled his men and consulted them about this. They said, 'By the truth of the Gospel, this is excellent for us and them. The lands will become Christian lands.' Roger raised his leg and gave a loud fart. 'By the truth of my religion,' he said, 'there is more use in that than in what you have to say!' 'How so?' they asked. 'If they come to me,' he replied, 'I shall require vast expenditure and ships to convey them to Ifriqiya and troops of mine also. If they take the territory it will be theirs and resources from Sicily will go to them. I shall be deprived of the money that comes in every year from agricultural revenues. If they do not succeed, they will return to my lands and I shall suffer from them. Tamim [the ruler of Ifriqiya] will say, "You have betrayed me and broken the agreement I have [with you]." Our mutual contacts and visits will be interrupted. The land of Ifriqiya will be waiting for us. Whenever we find the strength we will take it.'

He summoned Baldwin's envoy and said to him, 'If you are determined to wage holy war [*jihad*] on the Muslims, then the best way is to conquer Jerusalem. You will free it from their hands and have glory. Between me and

the people of Ifriqiya, however, are oaths and treaties.' They therefore made their preparations and marched forth to Syria.

It has been said that the Alid rulers of Egypt [the Fatimids] became fearful when they saw the strength and power of the Saljuq state, that it had gained control of Syrian lands as far as Gaza, leaving no buffer state between the Saljuqs and Egypt to protect them, and that Aqsis [Atsiz, a Turkmen chieftain] had entered Egypt and blockaded it [in 1077]. They therefore sent to the Franks to invite them to invade Syria, to conquer it and separate them and the [other] Muslims, but God knows best.

Ibn al-Athir (2006), *The Chronicle of Ibn al-Athir for the Crusading Period*, pp. 13–14. Richards' translation has been slightly modified.

6. Extracts from the *Book of the* Jihad of ʿAli ibn Tahir al-Sulami (d. 1106)

ʿAli ibn Tahir al-Sulami (1039 or 1040–1106) was a religious scholar who taught grammar in the Umayyad Great Mosque in Damascus. In 1105, over the course of several months, he publicly composed Kitab al-Jihad *(The Book of the* Jihad*), a treatise on the* jihad *that was intended to serve as a call to the inhabitants of the region and especially to its political leaders, exhorting them to respond to the Frankish offensive.*

A number of the enemy pounced on the island of Sicily while the Muslims disputed and competed, and they conquered in the same way one city after another in *al-Andalus* [Muslim Iberia]. When the reports confirmed for them that this country suffered from the disagreement of its masters and its rulers' meddling, with its consequent disorder and disarray, they confirmed their resolution to set out for it, and Jerusalem was their dearest wish.

They looked out from *al-Sham* on separated kingdoms, disunited hearts and differing views laced with hidden resentment, and with that their desires became stronger and extended to whatever their outstretched arms could desire. They did not stop, tireless in fighting the *jihad* against the Muslims. The Muslims were sluggish, avoiding fighting them and reluctant to engage in combat until the enemy had conquered more than their greatest hopes had conceived of the country and destroyed and humiliated many times the number of people than they had wished. Still now they are spreading further in their efforts, assiduous in seeking an increase in their achievements. Their desires are multiplying all the time because of what appears to them of the Muslims' abstinence from opposing them, and their hopes are invigorated by virtue of what they see of their enemies' contentedness with being unharmed by them, until they have become convinced that the whole country will become theirs and all its people will be prisoners in their hands. May God in His generosity frustrate their ideas by the bringing together of everyone and arranging the unity of the Muslim community. Truly, He is near and answers prayers.

…

The most astonishment is [what one feels] at a sultan who takes pleasure in life or remains where he is despite the appearance of this calamity, of which the outcome is conquest by these blasphemers, expulsion from the country by force and subjugation, or staying with them in degradation and servility, with the killing, capture, torture and torment by night and day that this involves. By

God! By God, you community of *sultans* of this country, and those aides, soldiers and others from the local militia, stalwart auxiliaries and lords recently acquired with wealth and passed as inheritance among yourselves, families and close friends, who follow them [meaning *mamluks*], go out, lightly or heavily armed, and fight the *jihad* with your wealth and your selves [*Qur'an* 9: 41]. O you who believe, if you aid God, he will aid you and make your footsteps firm [*Qur'an* 47: 7]. Do not fight one another or you will fail and expire [*Qur'an* 8: 46]. […] Know that God, be He praised, only sent this enemy to you as a trial, to test your steadfastness with it. He, be He blessed and exalted, said, 'We will test you so that We will know those of you who fight hard and are steadfast, and We will test your experiences' [*Qur'an* 47: 31].

…

Put the *jihad* against your souls ahead of the *jihad* against your enemies, for truly your souls are greater enemies to you than your human enemies. So prevent your souls from being disobedient to their Creator, be He praised. You may [hence] succeed in your hopes of victory over your human enemies. Make right what is between you and your Creator, and what is wrong with your current state of being will be made right for you, and your enmity [in your relationship with God] will be reconciled. Tear out your disobedience to God, be He praised, and follow your tearing it out with doing what is right in what you start afresh. It may be that your Lord will destroy your enemy and make you rulers over the world. He may observe how you act and how you conduct that which God, be He praised, ordered your Prophet, may God bless him, and his Companions regarding giving Him priority by carrying out the *jihad*, and they were endowed with seriousness in obedience to Him and being sincere in fighting hard in the *jihad*. Among His words, be He exalted, are: 'O you who believe! Bow and prostrate yourselves in prayer, worship your Lord and do good. Perhaps you will prosper' [*Qur'an* 22: 77].

…

In this way it is obligatory on our *sultans* and whomever God, be He praised, has appointed to rule us, may God make good their peace-making and guidance, that they emulate those like them who preceded them, according to what was said about that in their religion and what their Prophet, may God bless him, entrusted them with, about which his words, may God bless him, are approximately: 'Do not snub each other, oppose each other or envy each other. Be worshippers of God in a brotherhood as God, be He exalted, ordered you,' and other such words of instruction. Helping them and aiding them all that they can, applying their hands and abilities to the cause, and taking on all this burden and toil in targeting this group [of enemies], is obligatory on all the people, be they soldiers, citizens, peasants or all the rest of the people. Even

the smallest contribution will be appreciated. They will perform in their *jihad* many times what people did in their military expeditions to their lands and the lands of the *Rum*, to drive them from there and efface their traces. That is because there are associated with the duties of fighting hard against the enemy many requirements that make insignificant the great number of deeds involved and defy with them the greatness of the terrors that must be faced. Among them is defense of the country of the coast and support of its peoples, who are besieged and fighting with great efforts because they are currently keeping the enemy distracted from these countries, what is near them, Egypt and its environs. From them come our hopes of hastening a victory over the enemy because of what is true concerning [the enemy's] weakness, the paucity of their horses and equipment and the far distance of their reinforcements and support. That has happened with the help of God, be He praised, along with the calming of concerns about them by the uprooting of their cancerous consumption of worldly riches from what they have taken as booty, the deferred requital accompanying suitable behaviour towards them and liberation in this world from the shame of delaying in opposing them and from the disgrace of fearing them.

ʿAli ibn Tahir al-Sulami (2015) *The Book of the* Jihad *of ʿAli ibn Tahir al-Sulami (d. 1106): Text, Translation and Commentary*. Ed. and trans. Niall Christie. Aldershot: Ashgate, pp. 206–7, 211, 218–19 and 234–35.

7. The failure of the crusader attack on Damascus in 1148: two accounts

(i) *Ibn al-Qalanisi (See* Doc. 4.i*), in his city chronicle*, Dhayl Ta'rikh Dimashq *(The Continuation of the History of Damascus), gives the following description of the attack on Damascus made by crusading forces in 1148.*

In the first days [of the year] successive reports came from various directions about the arrival of ships of the aforementioned Franks on the coast of the sea [i.e. the Mediterranean], and their coming to the coastal strongholds of Tyre and Acre, where [the newly arrived Franks] joined with the Franks who were there. [… Some subsequently returned home, but] Alman, the greatest of their kings [Conrad III of Germany, r. 1138–52], and others of lesser rank, remained, and their views differed regarding which of the Islamic lands and districts of *al-Sham* they should seek to attack, until they settled on attacking Damascus. Their wicked souls reassured them of their conquest of it, so that they agreed on the division of its villages and districts. A series of reports arrived about that, and the governor of the city, the emir Muʿin al-Din Unur, began to make

preparations to fight them. [… The Franks] headed for Damascus […] in a host estimated, according to what was said, at 50,000 cavalry and infantry. […] The infidels overcame the Muslims with their superior numbers and equipment. They took control of the water-sources, spread throughout the orchards and camped in them. They approached the city and took over a part of it that no army had been able to hold in ancient or recent times.

…

[Three days later, after further fighting, the Muslims] made an early attack on them […] like hawks attacking mountain quail, and falcons descending on the nests of partridges. They surrounded them in their tents, encompassing their dwellings, where the Franks had fortified themselves among the olive trees. They destroyed them with volleys of arrows and showers of rocks. The Franks had refrained from coming out [to fight the Muslims]. They were fearful and faint of heart, and not one of them showed themselves.

…

Reports reached [the Franks] about the Muslim armies [from elsewhere] that were hastening to wage the *jihad* against them and rushing to exterminate them, and they became convinced that they would be destroyed and perish, and that ruin would overtake them. They consulted each other and did not find any deliverance for themselves from the net into which they had fallen and the abyss into which they had thrown themselves, except to depart in fright at dawn of the […] following day, and to run away forsaken and thwarted.

Ibn al-Qalanisi (1983), *Ta'rikh Dimashq*, pp. 462–66.

(ii) *Ibn al-Athir (see* Doc. 4.ii*) gives this account of the siege in his universal chronicle*, al-Kamil fi'l-Ta'rikh *(The Complete History).*

This year the king of the Germans came from his lands with a great host and large following of Franks, aiming to attack Islamic territory and not doubting that he would conquer it with the easiest of fighting because of the great multitude of his following and the abundance of his money and equipment. On his arrival in Syria, the Franks there sought him out and waited upon him, obeying his every command and prohibition. He ordered them to march with him to besiege and take Damascus, as he asserted. They duly set out with him, came to the city and put it under siege. […] The people were convinced that he would conquer the city. Muʿin al-Din sent to Sayf al-Din Ghazi, son of Atabeg Zanki [Zangi], calling on him to come to the aid of the Muslims and to drive the enemy from them. Accordingly he gathered his troops and set out for Syria, taking with him his brother, Nur al-Din Mahmud, from Aleppo. […] Muʿin al-Din wrote to the newly arrived Franks, 'The ruler of the East has come. If you do not withdraw, I shall surrender the city to him and then you

will be sorry.' On the other hand, he sent to the Franks of Syria, to say to them, 'By what reasoning do you aid these men against us? You know that, if they take Damascus, they will seize the coastal lands that you have in your hands. For myself, if I see that I am too weak to hold the city, I shall surrender it to Sayf al-Din, and you know that, if he controls Damascus, he will not allow you to retain any foothold in Syria.' They agreed with him to withdraw co-operation with the German emperor and Mu'in al-Din offered to hand over to them the castle of Banyas.

The Levantine Franks met with the German emperor and warned him against Sayf al-Din, his large forces and his constant supply of reinforcements. 'Possibly he would take Damascus and you will be too weak to resist him.' They continued to press him until he withdrew from the city. They then received the surrender of Banyas and the Germans returned to their own lands beyond Constantinople. Thus God saved the believers from their evil.

'Izz al-Din ibn al-Athir (2007) *The Chronicle of Ibn al-Athir for the Crusading Period from* al-Kamil fi'l-Ta'rikh*: Part 2: The Years 541–589/1146–1193: The Age of Nur al-Din and Saladin*. Trans. D.S. Richards. Crusade Texts in Translation 15. Aldershot: Ashgate, pp. 21–22.

8. Muhammad ibn Ahmad al-Wasiti (*fl.* 1019), Extracts from *The Merits of Jerusalem*

Although written nearly 80 years before the arrival of the First Crusade in the Levant, al-Wasiti's Fada'il al-Bayt al-Muqaddas *(Merits of Jerusalem) was a popular text among Muslim proponents of the* jihad *propaganda campaigns of the late 12th century. Both Ibn 'Asakir (1105–76) and Ibn al-Jawzi (1126–1200) made use of this work in their preaching and writings.*

The Messenger of God, may God bless him and grant him salvation, said, 'You should only travel to three mosques: the Mosque of the Haram [in Mecca], my mosque here [the Mosque of the Prophet in Medina] and the Aqsa Mosque [in Jerusalem].'

…

Maymuna asked the Messenger of God, may God bless him and grant him salvation, about Jerusalem. He said, 'How happy is the one who dwells in Jerusalem! Whoever performs one ritual prayer there performs the equivalent of 1,000 prayers elsewhere.' She asked, 'What about the person who is not able to do that?' He replied, 'Let him make a donation of oil to it [for the mosque lamps].'

…

The Messenger of God, may God bless him and grant him salvation, said,

'When I was taken by night to Jerusalem, Gabriel led me [first] to the tomb of Abraham [in Hebron], may God bless him and grant him salvation. Gabriel said, "Dismount [from al-Buraq, the Prophet's supernal steed] and pray two prayer-cycles here, for this is the tomb of your father Abraham." Then he led me to Bethlehem and said, "Dismount and pray two prayer-cycles here, for this is where your brother Jesus, may God bless him, was born." Then he brought me to the Rock [in Jerusalem] and said, "From here your Lord ascended to the heavens [after the creation]," and God, be He glorified and exalted, inspired me to say, "We are at the place from which my Lord ascended to the heavens." So I prayed with the prophets and then Gabriel took me up to the heavens.'

…

'Abdiyya reported to us on the authority of her father, who said, 'On the Day of Resurrection the Ka'ba will be brought to Jerusalem, in procession like a bride, with those who were performing the *hajj* there clinging to it. The Rock will say, "Welcome to the guest and the one who is visited [by pilgrims]." '

Muhammad ibn Ahmad al-Wasiti (1979) *Fada'il al-Bayt al-Muqaddas*. Ed. Isaac Hasson. Max Schloessinger Memorial Series 3. Jerusalem: The Hebrew University, pp. 4, 24–25, 72, and 93.

9. Ibn al-Athir on Nur al-Din and Saladin

In addition to his universal history, Ibn al-Athir (see Doc. 4.ii*) also wrote a rather partisan dynastic history of the Zangids*, al-Ta'rikh al-Bahir fi'l-Dawla al-Atabakiyya *(The Dazzling History of the Atabegid Regime). The following extracts from this work give some sense of the tensions that arose between Nur al-Din and Saladin after the destruction of the Fatimid caliphate of Egypt.*

Nur al-Din sent to Saladin, ordering him to gather the armies of Egypt and take them to the land of the Franks, and to descend upon Kerak and besiege it, so that Nur al-Din could also gather his armies and travel there, and they could join together to fight the Franks and take possession of their territory. So Saladin set out from Cairo on 20 Muharram [567 AH (22 September 1171)], and he wrote to Nur al-Din to inform him that his departure had not been delayed. Nur al-Din had gathered his armies and got them ready, and was awaiting the arrival of the news from Saladin that the latter had set out, so that he himself could [also] depart. When the news of that came to him, he set out from Damascus, resolved to make for Kerak. He arrived there and waited for the arrival of Saladin [who had forced the surrender of Shawbak and then withdrawn]. A letter from Saladin came to him, in which the former excused himself from coming to Nur al-Din because there were disturbances in the country [of Egypt], and he was afraid for the country because he was far from

it. Saladin returned to Egypt, but Nur al-Din did not accept his excuse.

The reason for Saladin's dilatoriness was that his companions and leading officials had made him afraid of joining with Nur al-Din, and when Saladin did not follow the order of Nur al-Din that grated on the latter, and he took it very much amiss and resolved to go down to Egypt and expel Saladin from it.

Ibn al-Athir goes on to describe how on this occasion Nur al-Din was mollified when Saladin, acting on the advice of his father Najm al-Din Ayyub, who was one of Nur al-Din's most trusted lieutenants, wrote to Nur al-Din re-affirming his loyalty to him. Later, Ibn al-Athir gives the following assessment of the reasons behind Saladin's reserve.

The thing that prevented Saladin from mounting an expedition [to fight the Franks] was fear of Nur al-Din, for he was convinced that when Nur al-Din had swept the Franks out of his way he would take the country [of Egypt] from him, so he was protecting himself with them and not undertaking their extermination. Nur al-Din did not approve [of any course of action] except seriously campaigning against them to the utmost of his exertion and ability, and when he saw Saladin failing in the campaign and learned the latter's [true] objective, he prepared to set out against him, but the order of God that cannot be resisted came to him [and he died].

Ibn al-Athir (1963) *Al-Ta'rikh al-Bahir fi'l-Dawla al-Atabakiyya.* Ed. 'Abd al-Qadir A. Tulaymat. Cairo: Dar al-Kutub al-Haditha, pp. 158 and 161.

10. 'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani on the battle of Hattin and Saladin's conquest of Jerusalem

Originally from Persia, 'Imad al-Din Muhammad ibn Muhammad al-Isfahani (1125–1201) studied jurisprudence in Baghdad, then held a variety of positions before eventually passing into the service of Nur al-Din. Soon after the latter died, he became the personal secretary and a close advisor of Saladin, a position that he occupied until the death of his employer. The following selections are drawn from al-Fath al-Qussi fi'l-Fath al-Qudsi *(Qussian Eloquence on the Conquest of Jerusalem), a chronicle covering the period from 1187 to 1193.*

On 2 July 1187, Saladin attacked Tiberias. The following day, the Franks marched out from Sepphoris, aiming to rescue the town. Saladin surrounded the Frankish army at the Horns of Hattin, cutting them off from sources of water. The following day, 4 July, battle was joined.

When morning broke and daylight shone, when dawn let flow the rivers of day and the host scared the raven of the dust, when sharp swords awoke in their sheaths and slender horses became enflamed with fiery eagerness, when

bowstrings were alert and fire wrathful, when weapons were drawn and stillness snatched away, the vanguard went out to burn with their arrows the people of Hellfire, bows twanged and bowstrings hummed, the rebels' supple spears danced in order to unveil the brides [swords] of the sword-fight, the gleaming blades came forth in numbers, naked in the crowd, and the brown [spears] feasted on their flourishing pasture of [the enemies'] kidneys.

The Franks hoped for a respite, and their troops sought a way out of their predicament, but whenever they set out they were injured, and the heat of war set out with them, so that they did not get away. They attacked, afflicted with thirst, for the only water that they had was the water of the swords in their hands. The fire of the arrows roasted them and injured their limbs, and the hard hearts of the bows seized on them and deafened them. They were paralysed and alarmed, hard-pressed and driven off. Whenever they attacked they were turned back and destroyed, and whenever they struck out and launched an assault, they were captured and bound. Not even an ant got away, and none of their attacks protected them. They were burned and agitated, lamenting and afire with thirst. Arrows struck them so that their lions returned as hedgehogs, and harassed them so that great holes appeared in their ranks. They sought refuge on the mountain of Hattin to defend them from the deluge of ruin, and lightning flashes of destruction surrounded Hattin. Blades sucked away [their lives] and scattered them on the heights. Bows shot them, fates flayed them, misfortunes ground them up and calamities afflicted them. They became known to ruin and targeted by fate. […] Satan and his armies were captured, and the king [Guy of Lusignan] and his counts were taken [prisoner].

The sultan sat to review the most important prisoners […] and when [Reynald of Châtillon] came before him, he made him sit beside the king, with the king next to him. He upbraided him for his treachery and reminded him of his sins, saying, 'How many times have you sworn oaths and violated them, agreed to treaties and infringed on them, made agreements and broken them, accepted covenants and rejected them?' He answered through the translator, saying 'I have followed the custom of kings in that, and I have only acted according to the usual practices.'

Meanwhile the king was dying of thirst, bent over by the greatness of his intoxicating terror. So the sultan treated him pleasantly and spoke to him, soothing the intensity of the dread that was besetting him, calming his fear and reassuring his heart. He gave him iced water to quench his thirst and drive away the lack of water that was distressing him. [The king] passed it to the Prince [Reynald] so that he might also quench his thirst, and he took it from his hand and drank it, but the sultan said to the king, 'You did not get my permission to give him a drink, so that does not oblige me to give him a

guarantee of safety.' Then he got on his horse and left them alone. […] When he went into his tent, he had the Prince brought there. He went up to him, took up his sword and cut through his shoulder. When [Reynald] fell down, he ordered him to be beheaded, and it was done. When [Reynald] was taken out he was dragged by the feet before the king, who became frightened and alarmed. The sultan realized that terror had overcome him, dismay had beset him, and anxiety had afflicted him, so he summoned him and made him come close, reassuring and soothing him, strengthening him with his presence and calming him by saying, 'This one's wickedness destroyed him, and his treachery betrayed him, as you see. He has perished from his sins and injustice.'

In the wake of the battle, Saladin and his generals conquered a number of important Frankish-held towns and cities, including Acre, Jaffa, Beirut, and Ascalon. Then, in September, he besieged Jerusalem, which was commanded by Balian of Ibelin. After some days of fighting, the Muslims broke through the city wall, and Balian asked for terms.

Ibn Barzan [Balian of Ibelin] came out, seeking safety through an agreement from the sultan, and asking for a guarantee of security for his people, but the sultan refused and asserted a higher obligation, saying, 'No safety for you, and no guarantee of security! Our only desire is that degradation will be your constant companion. Tomorrow we will master you by force and spread death and imprisonment among you. We will spill the blood of your men and take your women and children prisoner.' […] They replied, 'If we despair of your guarantee of safety, fear your power, are disappointed in our hopes for your favour […] we shall seek death, fighting to the last drop of blood. We shall oppose existence with non-existence, and we shall demonstrate the boldness of those who persist in evil. We shall hurl ourselves forward like those who rush to get away from harm, and we shall commit ourselves to the fire, but we shall not give ourselves up to ruin and dishonour. None of us shall be wounded until he has wounded ten [of your men], and the hand of perdition shall not close around us until our hands are seen spreading death [among you]. We shall burn the houses, demolish the Dome [of the Rock], and leave to you the shame of taking us prisoner. We shall extirpate the Rock and make you grieve for it. We shall kill all the Muslim prisoners that we hold, and there are thousands of them, for it has become known that each of us is averse to ignominy and devoted to honour. As for the riches [that we hold], we shall destroy them and not hand them over, and as for the children, we shall hasten to kill them and not be found slow to do so. What do you gain from this stinginess, when this gain will mean the loss of everything for you?' […] The sultan summoned a council meeting […] and said, 'In truth, the opportunity has presented itself, and we should aim to take advantage of it. Our share has fallen to us, and we

should seek God's right guidance in taking it. If it passes, it will not return, and if it slips away, we will not be able to seize it.' They said, 'God has especially favored you with bliss and elected you to this act of worship. Your view is rightly guided.' […] After goings back and forth, negotiations and delegations, entreaties from the people and intercessions, they settled on a tribute that would show prudence and bring about perfect happiness. With it they ransomed themselves and their possessions from us, liberating their men, women and children.

The ransoms were collected, and 'Imad al-Din notes that Saladin excused a large number of people from making the payments. 'Imad al-Din then gives the following portrait of the sultan in victory.

The date of the conquest of Jerusalem coincided with that of the night of the *mi'raj* [the Prophet's ascension to heaven], and the road to victory that had become apparent ended in rejoicing. Tongues multiplied their prayers, humble supplications and praises. The sultan sat to receive congratulations, meeting with the senior officers and *amirs*, Sufis and *'ulama'*. He sat with a bearing of humility and an appearance of dignity, among the jurisprudents and the savants, his devoted courtiers. His face shone with obvious joy, and his hope for the glory of success was abundant and victorious. His gate was open, his support given, his curtain raised, his speech heard, his enterprise auspicious, and his carpet kissed. His face was glowing and his perfume pleasant. His affection delighted and his dignity awakened admiration. His territory shone and his character exhaled a sweet fragrance. His hand overflowed with the waters of liberality and unsealed the fragrances of generosity; its back was the *qibla* [direction of prayer, towards Mecca] of kisses and its palm was the *Ka'ba* of hope.

'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani (1965) *Al-Fath al-Qussi fi'l-Fath al-Qudsi.* Ed. Muhammad M. Subh. Cairo: al-Dar al-Qawmiyya li-l-Tiba'a wa-l-Nashr, pp. 78–81, 126–27 and 130.

11. Baha' al-Din ibn Shaddad on Saladin's virtues

Baha' al-Din Yusuf ibn Shaddad (1145–1234) was born and educated in Mosul. He worked as a teacher and was also employed by the Zangid rulers of Mosul as an ambassador. Then, in 1188, he was appointed qadi *(judge) of the army by Saladin, in whose service he remained until Saladin's death. He continued to work as an ambassador for the Ayyubids until two years before his own death. The subsequent extracts are taken from his biography of Saladin*, al-Nawadir al-Sultaniyya wa-l-Mahasin al-Yusufiyya *(The Rare Qualities of the Sultan and the Merits of Yusuf [Saladin's given name, which Baha' al-Din shared]), coming from an opening section on Saladin's virtues.*

His creed was good and he was much mindful of God Almighty. He took his creed from proof by means of study with the leading men of religious learning and eminent jurisconsults [legal experts]. He understood of that what one needs to understand, such that, when disputation occurred in his presence, he could contribute excellent comments, even if they were not in the language of learned specialists. Consequently he gained a creed free from the defilement of anthropomorphism [ascribing human characteristics to God, an idea not accepted in Islam; the author may also be backhandedly criticizing Christianity here] but his studies did not dig too deep to the extent of denying the divine attributes or misrepresentation. His creed followed the straight path, agreed with the canon of true discernment and was approved by the greatest of the ulema.

…

Saladin was just, gentle and merciful, a supporter of the weak against the strong. Every Monday and Thursday he used to sit to dispense justice in public session, attended by the jurisconsults, the Qadis and the doctors of religion. The door would be opened to litigants so that everyone, great and small, senile women and old men, might have access to him. That was his practice both at home and abroad. However, at all times he would accept petitions presented to him, to discover what injustices were reported to him. Every day he collected the petitions, and then used to sit with his clerk for a while, either at night or during the daytime, and minute each petition with whatever God put into his heart.

…

Saladin's generosity was too public to need to be recorded and too famous to need to be recounted, and yet we will give an indication of it in general terms. He ruled all that he ruled and, when he died, in his treasure chest were found only forty-seven Nasiri dirhams of silver and a single Tyrian gold coin, the weight of which was unknown to me. He would give away whole provinces. […] In times of shortage he would be generous, just as he would in easy circumstances. The officials of the Royal Chest used to hide a certain amount of money from him, as a precaution in case some crisis surprised them, because they knew that, if he learnt of it, he would spend it.

…

Saladin was one of the great heroes, mighty in spirit, strong in courage and of great firmness, terrified of nothing […] I have never at all seen him consider the enemy too numerous nor exaggerate their strength. However, he was sometimes deep in thought and forward planning, dealing with all departments and arranging what was required for each without any onset of bad temper or anger.

…

Saladin was very diligent in and zealous for the Jihad. If anyone were to swear that, since his embarking on the Jihad, he had not expended a single dinar or dirham on anything but the Jihad or his support for it, he would be telling the truth and true in his oath. The Jihad, his love and passion for it, had taken a mighty hold on his heart and all his being, so much so that he talked of nothing else, thought of nothing but the means to pursue it, was concerned only with its manpower and had a fondness only for those who spoke of it and encouraged it. In his love for the Jihad on the path of God he shunned his womenfolk, his children, his homeland, his home and all his pleasures, and for this world he was content to dwell in the shade of his tent with the winds blowing through it left and right. […] We travelled in his service along the coast, making for Acre. […] He turned to me and said, 'Shall I tell you something?' 'Of course,' I said. He went on, 'I have it in mind that, when God Almighty has enabled me to conquer the rest of the coast, I shall divide up my lands, make my testament, take my leave and set sail on this sea to [the Franks'] islands to pursue them there until there no longer remain on the face of the earth any who deny God – or die [in the attempt].'

…

On the plain of Acre I saw Saladin overcome by an extremely poor state of health on account of numerous boils which had appeared on his body from his waist to his knees, so that he was unable to sit down. […] Despite all, he rode from early morning till the noonday prayer, going the rounds of his battalions, and also from late afternoon until the sunset prayer, enduring the intense pain and the throbbing of the boils, while I expressed my amazement at that. He would say, 'When I ride, the pain goes away, until I dismount.' This is divine solicitude.

…

He was forbearing, forgiving and rarely angry. I was in attendance on him at Marj 'Uyun before the Franks marched on Acre (may God facilitate its conquest). It was his custom to be out on horseback at the normal time for that, later to dismount for food to be served. He would eat with his staff, and then go to a personal tent to sleep. Later, when he awoke, he would pray and then relax in private, with me in attendance, when we would read a little Hadith or a little canon law.

…

One day I was on horseback in attendance on him face to face with the Franks when one of the forward pickets arrived with a woman in great distress, bitterly weeping and continually beating her breast. The man said, 'This woman has come out from the Frankish lines and asked to be brought to you, so we have done so.' The sultan ordered the dragoman to question her about her business. She said, 'Muslim thieves entered my tent yesterday and

stole my daughter. I spent all night until this morning pleading for help. I was told, "Their prince is a merciful man. We shall send you out to him to ask him for your daughter." So they sent me to you, and only from you will I learn of my daughter.' The sultan took pity on her. His tears flowed out and, prompted by his chivalry, he ordered someone to go to the army market to ask who had bought the little girl, to repay what had been given for her and bring her back, having heard something about her early that day. Hardly an hour had passed before the horseman arrived with the little girl over his shoulder. The moment the woman's eye lighted upon her, she fell to the ground, besmirching her face with earth, while all around wept for what she had suffered. She was lifting her eyes to heaven, although we did not know what she was saying. Her daughter was handed to her, then she was taken off and restored to their camp.

…

These are some random remarks on the excellencies of his character and his noble qualities which I have limited myself to for fear of prolixity and wearying [the reader]. I have only recorded what I witnessed or what trustworthy sources told me which I have checked. […] However, this amount will suffice an intelligent person as evidence of the purity of these morals and qualities of his.

Baha' al-Din ibn Shaddad (2001) *The Rare and Excellent History of Saladin.* Trans. D.S. Richards. Crusade Texts in Translation 7. Aldershot: Ashgate, pp. 18, 22–23, 25–30, 33 and 37–38. We have added some minor clarifications in brackets.

12. An exchange of letters during Richard the Lionheart's crusade

Baha' al-Din's work, described previously, also includes the following letters, exchanged between Saladin and Richard in October 1191. They provide a succinct summary of the issues at stake.

Richard to Saladin:

The Muslims and the Franks are done for. The land is ruined, utterly ruined at the hands of both sides. Property and lives on both sides are destroyed. This matter has received its due. All we have to talk about is Jerusalem, the Holy Cross and these lands. Now Jerusalem is the centre of our worship which we shall never renounce, even if there were only one of us left. As for these lands, let there be restored to us what is this side of the Jordan. The Holy Cross, that is a piece of wood that has no value for you, but is important for us. Let the

sultan bestow it upon us. Then we can make peace and have rest from this constant hardship.

Saladin's reply:

Jerusalem is ours just as much as it is yours. Indeed, for us it is greater than it is for you, for it is where our Prophet came on his Night Journey and the gathering place of the angels. Let not the king imagine that we shall give it up, for we are unable to breathe a word of that amongst the Muslims. As for the land, it is also ours originally. Your conquest of it was an unexpected accident due to the weakness of the Muslims there at that time. While the war continues God has not enabled you to build up one stone there. From the lands in our hands we, thanks be to God, feed on the produce and draw our benefit. The destruction of the Holy Cross would in our eyes be a great offering to God, but the only reason we are not permitted to go that far is that some more useful benefit might accrue to Islam.

Baha' al-Din, *The Rare and Excellent History of Saladin*, p. 186.

13. Extract from al-Harawi's treatise on Muslim military tactics

Abu'l-Hasan 'Ali al-Harawi (d. 1215) was a wandering ascetic and Sufi. He was the author of both a guide to pilgrimage sites and the work from which the following extract is drawn, al-Tadhkira al-Harawiyya fi'l-Hiyal al-Harbiyya *(The Memoir of al-Harawi on Stratagems of War). This second treatise, both a 'mirror for princes' and a guide to military tactics, was composed between 1192 and the author's death in 1215, probably for the Ayyubid prince al-Zahir Ghazi (d. 1216).*

If [the sultan] desires an encounter with the enemy and to arrange his army for battle, let him strive to ensure that the sun is in the eyes of his enemy and the wind against them. If the enemy has done that to him, and it is not possible for him to shift them from their position or dislodge them from where they have set up [their forces], let him march with his army to one side so that the situation will be to his advantage and to their detriment. […] Let him make his companions afraid of [enemy] stratagems and warn them about ruses, so that they will not busy themselves with plunder and be misled by [the prospect of] gain, for it may be that the enemy will turn back upon them, or concealed forces may come out at them, master them, take them prisoner and kill them.

Let [the sultan] terrify the hearts of the enemy by displaying banners,

beating *kusat* (small drums), and sounding *buqat* (trumpets), along with the noise of *tubul* (large drums) and *naqqarat* (kettle-drums). He [himself] should not fear the numbers of the [enemy] army, nor the foot-soldiers gathered together, nor the useless mass of common people (irregular volunteers), for they are easy to defeat, and it is rare that an army of this sort is victorious.

Let him allocate each unit himself, not depending on anyone else, and let him place his trust first of all in God, who is exalted. Let him build up the centre [of the army], placing many men there and picking elite troops, for it is possible that it will be targeted [by the enemy]. Let him place in the right wing those upon whom he can depend and rely, and treat likewise the left wing. Let him arrange both sides and set up both wings, and let him put in reserve, from his army, a contingent of troops and a unit of elites from those who have seen stratagems of war and tasted the sweetness of stabbing and striking.

Let him observe in which direction the attack from the enemy side is sent and which segment of the army it targets, and if the attack comes from the right wing, let him reinforce his left wing, and if it comes from the left wing, let him strengthen his right wing […] Let the infantry, slingers, archers, javelineers and sappers go in front of the cavalry, and let [the sultan] observe the vanguard of the enemy army and place opposite it excellent foot-soldiers and outstanding *fursan* (knights), each sufficient to face their match and like to oppose like. Let him know that the troops are depending upon them and are looking to them [for reassurance]. If they break, the rest of the army will not resist, but rather will do ill and be of no use.

Abu'l-Hasan 'Ali al-Harawi (1962) 'Les Conseils du Sayh al-Harawi à un Prince Ayyubide'. Ed. Janine Sourdel-Thomine. *Bulletin d'Études Orientales* 17, pp. 250–49 (17–18).

14. Usama ibn Munqidh on Frankish culture

As indicated previously (see Doc. 5.iii*), Usama ibn Munqidh is best known to historians for his* Kitab al-I'tibar *(Book of Contemplation), a lively work posing as a memoir but in reality a text on good conduct, the human condition, and the inevitability of divine decree, probably written for Saladin. The following extracts address aspects of Frankish culture and behaviour. Note the balance of good and bad examples that Usama uses.*

(i) Recently-Arrived and Acclimatized Franks

Anyone who is recently arrived from the Frankish lands is rougher in character than those who have become acclimated and have frequented the company of Muslims. Here is an instance of their rough character (may God

abominate them!):

Whenever I went to visit the holy sites in Jerusalem, I would go in and make my way up to the al-Aqsa Mosque, beside which stood a small mosque that the Franks had converted into a church. When I went into the al-Aqsa Mosque – where the Templars, who were my friends, were – they would clear out that little mosque so that I could pray in it. One day, I went into the little mosque, recited the opening formula 'God is great!' and stood up in prayer. At this, one of the Franks rushed at me and grabbed me and turned my face towards the east, saying, 'Pray like *this*!'

A group of Templars hurried towards him, took hold of the Frank and took him away from me. I then returned to my prayers. The Frank, that very same one, took advantage of their inattention and returned, rushing upon me and turning my face to the east, saying, 'Pray like *this*!'

So the Templars came in again, grabbed him and threw him out. They apologized to me, saying, 'This man is a stranger, just arrived from the Frankish lands sometime in the past few days. He has never before seen anyone who did not pray towards the east.'

'I think I've prayed quite enough,' I said and left. I used to marvel at that devil, the change of his expression, the way he trembled and what he must have made of seeing someone praying towards Mecca.

…

Among the Franks there are some who have become acclimatized and frequent the company of Muslims. They are much better than those recently arrived from their lands, but they are the exception and should not be considered representative.

Here is an example. I sent one of my men to Antioch on an errand. At the time, Chief Tadrus ibn al-Saffi was there, and his word had great influence in Antioch; there was a mutual bond of friendship between us. One day he said to my man, 'A Frankish friend of mine has invited me to his home. You should come along so you can observe their ways.' My man told me:

I went along with him and we came to the home of one of the old knights who came out in one of the first expeditions of the Franks. He was since removed from the stipend-registry and dismissed from service, but he had some property in Antioch off which he lived. He presented a very fine table, with food that was extremely clean and delicious. But seeing me holding back from eating, he said, 'Eat and be of good cheer! For I don't eat Frankish food: I have Egyptian cooking-women and never eat anything except what they cook. And pork never enters my house.' So I ate, though guardedly, and we left.

After passing through the market, a Frankish woman suddenly hung onto me while babbling at me in their language – I didn't understand what she was

saying. Then a group of Franks began to gather around me and I was certain that I was going to perish. But suddenly, who should turn up but that knight, who saw me and approached. He came and said to that woman, 'What's the matter with you and this Muslim?'

'This man killed my brother 'Urs.' This 'Urs was a knight in Apamea whom someone from the army of Hama had killed.

The knight shouted at her and said, 'This man is a *bourgeois* (i.e. a merchant), who neither fights nor attends battle.' And he yelled at the assembled crowd and they dispersed. He then took me by the hand and went away. Thus, the effect of that meal was my deliverance from death.

(ii) Frankish Justice

The Franks (may God confound them) have none of the human virtues except for courage. They have neither precedence nor high rank except that of the knights, and have no men worthy of the name except the knights – it is they who are the masters of legal reasoning, judgment and sentencing. I once brought a case before them concerning some flocks of sheep that the lord of Banias had seized from the woods while there existed a truce between us. At the time, I was based in Damascus.

I said to the king, Fulk, son of Fulk, 'This man has encroached upon our rights and seized our flocks right at the time of lambing. But they gave birth and the lambs died, so he returned them to us after so many lambs were lost.'

Then the king turned to six or seven knights: 'Arise and render a judgment for him.'

So they left his audience-chamber, sequestering themselves and deliberating until their minds were all agreed upon one decision, and then they returned to the king's audience-chamber.

'We have passed judgment,' they said, 'to the effect that the lord of Banias should pay compensation equal to the value of the lambs that were lost from their flock of sheep.'

And so the king ordered him to pay compensation.

…

On one occasion, I went with the amir Mu'in al-Din [Unur] (may God have mercy upon him) to Jerusalem, and we stopped at Nablus. While there, a blind man – a young man wearing fine clothes, a Muslim – came out to the amir with some fruit and asked him for permission to be admitted into his service in Damascus. The amir did so. I asked about him and I was told that his mother had been married to a Frank, whom she had killed. Her son used to attempt various ruses on their pilgrims, and he and his mother used to work together to kill them. They finally brought charges against him for that and made him

subject to the legal procedure of the Franks, to wit:

They set up a huge cask and filled it with water and stretched a plank of wood across it. Then they bound the arms of the accused, tied a rope around his shoulders and threw him into the cask. If he were innocent, then he would sink in the water and they would then pull him up by that rope so he wouldn't die in the water; if he were guilty, then he would not sink in the water. That man tried eagerly to sink into the water when they threw him in, but he couldn't do it. So he had to submit to their judgment – may God curse them – and they did some work on his eyes [blinding him].

(iii) Frankish Medicine

The first of these two accounts was related to Usama by a native Christian physician from Shayzar who had visited a Frankish court. The following are the physician's words:

They brought before me a knight in whose leg an abscess had formed and a woman who was stricken with a dryness of the humours. So I made a small poultice for the knight and the abscess opened up and he was healed. For the woman, I prescribed a special diet and increased the wetness of her humours. Then a Frankish physician came to them and said, 'This fellow don't know how to treat them.' He then said to the knight, 'Which would you like better: living with one leg or dying with both?' 'Living with one leg,' replied the knight. The physician then said, 'Bring me a strong knight and a sharp axe.' A knight appeared with an axe – indeed, I was just there – and the physician laid the leg of the patient on a block of wood and said to the knight with the axe, 'Strike his leg with the axe and cut it off with one blow.' So he struck him – I'm telling you I watched him do it – with one blow, but it didn't chop the leg all the way off. So he struck him a second time, but the marrow flowed out of the leg, and he died instantly.

He then examined the woman and said, 'This woman, there is a demon inside her head that has possessed her. Shave off her hair.' So they shaved her head. The woman then returned to eating their usual diet – garlic and mustard. As a result, her dryness of humours increased. So the physician said, 'That demon has entered further into her head.' So he took a razor and made a cut in her head in the shape of a cross. He then peeled back the skin so that the skull was exposed and rubbed it with salt. The woman died instantaneously. So I asked them, 'Do you need anything else from me?' 'No,' they said. And so I left, having learned about their medicine things I had never known before.

…

Usama himself then recounts the following:

Here is another wondrous example of their medicine. We had at Shayzar an

artisan called Abu al-Fath, who had a son on whose neck scrofula sores had formed. Every time one would close in one place, another would open up in another place. Once Abu al-Fath went to Antioch on an errand and his son accompanied him. A Frankish man noticed him and asked him about the boy. 'He is my son,' Abu al-Fath said.

The Franks said to him, 'Do you swear to me by your religion that, if I prescribe for you some medicine that will cure your boy, you will not charge money from anyone else whom you yourself treat with it?'

Our man swore to that effect. The Frank then said, 'Take him some uncrushed leaves of glasswort, burn them, then soak the ashes in olive oil and strong vinegar. Treat him with this until it eats up the pustules in the affected area. Then take some fire-softened lead and soak it in butter. Then treat the boy with this and he will get well.

So our man treated the boy as he was told and the boy got well. The wounds closed up and he returned to his previous state of health. I have myself treated people afflicted by this ailment with this remedy, and it was beneficial and removed all of their complaints.

(iv) Frankish Sexual Morality

The Franks possess nothing in the way of regard for honour or propriety [...] Here is an example that I myself witnessed. Whenever I went to Nablus, I used to stay at the home of a man called Mu'izz, whose home was a lodging house for Muslims. The house had windows that opened onto the road and, across from it on the other side of the road, there was a house belonging to a Frankish man who sold wine for the merchants. He would take some wine in a bottle and go around advertising it, saying, 'So-and-So the merchant has just opened a cask of this wine. Whoever wishes to buy some can find it at such-and-such a place.' And the fee he charged for making that announcement was the wine in the bottle. So one day, he came back home and discovered a man in bed with his wife. The Frank said to the man, 'What business brings you here to my wife?'

'I got tired,' the man replied, 'so I came in to rest.'

'But how did you get into my bed?' asked the Frank.

'I found a bed that was all made up, so I went to sleep in it,' he replied.

'While my wife was sleeping there with you?' the Frank pursued.

'Well, it's her bed,' the man offered, 'Who am I to keep her out of it?'

'By the truth of my religion,' the Frank said, 'if you do this again, we'll have an argument, you and I!'

And that was all the disapproval he would muster and the extent of his sense of propriety!

…

I once went to the baths in the city of Tyre and took a seat in a secluded room there. While I was there, one of my attendants in the bath said to me, 'There are women in here with us!' When I went outside, I sat down on the benches and, sure enough, the woman who was in the bath had come out and was standing with her father directly across from me, having put her garments on again. But I couldn't be sure if she was a woman. So I said to one of my companions, 'By God, go have a look at this one – is she a woman?' What I meant was for him to go and ask about her. But instead he went – as I watched – and lifted her hem and pulled it up. At this, her father turned to me and explained, 'This is my daughter. Her mother died, and so she has no one who will wash her hair. I brought her into the bath with me so that I might wash her hair.'

'That's a kind thing you're doing,' I assured him. 'This will bring you heavenly reward.'

Usama ibn Munqidh (2008) *The Book of Contemplation: Islam and the Crusades*. Trans. Paul M. Cobb. Penguin Classics. London: Penguin Books, pp. 147, 153–54, 76–77, 152, 145–46 and 148–50.

15. Ibn al-Qaysarani and 'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani on Frankish women

(i) When he was not writing poems lauding the virtues of Zangi and Nur al-Din, the court poet Ibn al-Qaysarani (1085–1154) wrote a number of poems on Frankish women. Here are two examples.

By your religion, O priest of [the church of] Barbara, and that which you continued to recite in the dark night,

Protect me from the eloquent figures whenever they stand around you in the church.

When they draw near at the time of prayer, in every colour of satin,

With girdles encircling their waists, and vestments of silk brocade burdening them,

And the burdensomeness of their chaperones make them sit (and the gathering [for Mass] protects them from that).

Were it not for refraining from sin against the requirements of my religion, I would go up to them in a chasuble,

And stand up to chant their Mass, without stupidity or muteness.

Their knights did not engage [anyone] braver or more perceptive than me in battle.

Truly, how lovely is that which passion stirs up in the coverts* of these retiring antelopes.

You see every charming woman, her face bare of a veil in the morning sun,

Because of the beauty of [the sight], the icons almost boil over with eloquence of the soul.

A Frankish woman, her necklace silent, but her girdle restless in its place,

When she kisses an image, draws near to it with her imperious eye.

Oh if only I were an effigy to her, she would see me, and there is no doubt that some part of me would be touched.

I swear, if I was able I would be changed into an image of Saint George.

*A pun on the Arabic root *k-n-s*, which includes both a church and a covert for animals. Women are often likened to gazelles or antelopes in Arabic poetry from the period.

…

A gentle Frankish woman has charmed me. The fragrance of her lingers.

In her garment are soft limbs, and in her crown is a radiant moon.

If there is blueness in her eye, then truly the head of a spear is blue.

Muhammad ibn Nasr ibn al-Qaysarani (1991) *Shi'r Ibn al-Qaysarani*. Ed. 'Adil J.S. Muhammad. Al-Zarqa': al-Wakalat al-'Arabiyya li-l-Nashr wa-l-Tawzi', pp. 254–55 and 310.

(ii) Meanwhile, Saladin's advisor, 'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani (see Doc. 10*), took a radically different view. In his chronicle of Saladin's conquests, he provides the following description of the arrival of Frankish women at Acre in 1189.*

There arrived in a ship 300 Frankish women who were considered attractive, endowed with youth and adorned with beauty. They had gathered from the islands and devoted themselves to sin. They had travelled into foreign lands in order to provide succour to the wayfarers, dedicated themselves to cheering the wretched, sustained themselves to provide help and support, and were burning for fornication and intercourse. […] Each trailed her head cloth on the ground behind her and bewitched her observer with her gracefulness. She swayed like a tree branch, revealed herself like a castle [waiting to be stormed], swung her hips like a switch and counterfeited her religion with a cross on her breast. […] They said that they intended by their coming out [to the east] to dedicate their privates [to the cause], that they would not refrain from any unmarried man, and that they were of the opinion that they would not receive a better Eucharist that this.

Al-Isfahani then provides an extended and lurid description of the activities that the women apparently engaged in, ending with the following:

According to the Franks there is no sin imputed to an unmarried man if a woman gives herself to him, and how pure is she in the eyes of the priests if sexually pent-up celibates find relief from her privates!

There also arrived by sea a woman who had great power and abundant wealth. In her country she was a woman of great influence. In her entourage were 500 knights with their horses, followers, servants and adherents, to whom she gave all the provisions that they needed, exceeding the necessary level of support in what she spent on them. They rode at her side, attacking when she attacked, rushing [into battle] when she did, and standing firm as long as she did.

Among the Franks were women knights, with armour and helmets, dressed like men, who distinguished themselves in the thick of battle and did acts of intelligent men while being gentlewomen. They considered these all to be acts of worship, and they believed that they would gain happiness through them and made them their customary practice. Praise be to the One who led them astray and made them slip off the path of restraint! […] They wore no clothing except ample coats of mail, and they were not known [to be women] until they were stripped of their arms and undressed. A number of them were found out and sold [as slaves], and as for the old women, the town centres were full of them! At times they were a reinforcement and at others a source of weakness. They goaded and incited [others to action], saying that the cross would only find pleasure in disdain [of the enemy], and that there would be no [eternal] life for it except through annihilation [in battle], and that the grave of the one whom they worshipped was under enemy occupation. Observe the agreement in error of their men and women!

ʻImad al-Din al-Isfahani, *Al-Fath al-Qussi fi'l-Fath al-Qudsi*, pp. 347–49.

16. Al-Kamil Muhammad and the crusade against Damietta in 1218–21

Ahmad ibn Muhammad ibn Khallikan (d. 1282) was an Iraqi jurist. He worked as a qadi *in both Cairo and Damascus, in the second of which he twice attained the rank of chief justice (1261–71 and 1278–82). He is best known for his biographical dictionary*, Wafayat al-Aʻyan wa-Anba' Abna' al-Zaman *(The Deaths of Notables and Information on the Sons of the Age). The following extracts are from his entry in this work on al-Malik al-Kamil.*

Abu'l-Maʻali Muhammad, the son of al-Malik al-ʻAdil, mentioned previously, called by the titles al-Malik al-Kamil Nasir al-Din (The Perfect

King, Supporter of the Faith): some information about him has already been given in the biography of his father. When the Franks arrived at Damietta, as we have mentioned previously, al-Malik al-Kamil had just begun to rule independently as sultan.

Ibn Khallikan then gives a detailed account of a failed attempt by one of al-Kamil's brothers and a senior emir to depose the sultan. His account of the so-called Fifth Crusade, on the other hand, is somewhat briefer:

Concerning the issue of Damietta, what is well known took place, and there is no need to elaborate on it here. After the Franks took control of Damietta, and it fell into their hands, they set out from there aiming [to take] Cairo [in particular] and Egypt [in general]. They encamped on the tip of the island on which Damietta lies, with the Muslims opposite them in the village known as al-Mansura and the river, which was the River Ushmum, forming a barrier between them. God, be He exalted, through His grace and the beauty of His benevolence, gave victory over them to the Muslims, as is well known, and the Franks departed from their position on the eve of Friday 7 Rajab 618 (26 August 1221). Peace was concluded between them and the Muslims on the 11th of the month mentioned (30 August 1221), and the Franks departed from the country in Sha'ban (September-October) of the same year. They had spent 40 months and 17 days in the lands of Islam, partly in *al-Sham* and partly in Egypt, but God protected [us from] their evil. Praise be to God for that! That [event] has been set forth in detail in the biography of Yahya ibn Jarrah, and may be examined there (*in fact, the biography referred to provides little more detail*).

When al-Malik al-Kamil's mind was eased with regard to this enemy, he occupied himself with the emirs who had taken sides against him, and he banished them from the country, dispersed their unity and drove them out. He entered Cairo, where he made arrangements to restore the prosperity of the country and to gather the taxes from its various districts. He was a sultan mighty in power and fine in reputation, having affection for the '*ulama*' and holding closely to the Prophetic Sunna, correct in his belief, on intimate terms with eminent men and judicious in his affairs, never resolving any matter in a way that was either extravagant or stingy. Every Thursday night a group of learned men would spend the evening with him, and he would take part in their discussions, asking them about difficult topics of all sorts, behaving with them as if he were [merely] one of them.

The author goes on to describe al-Kamil's campaigns to extend his territory, including those against his relatives, up to the sultan's death, and then gives a brief synopsis of the reigns of the other major Ayyubids up to the Mamluk takeover. It is striking that Ibn Khallikan completely omits any mention of Frederick II's crusade and the handover to him of Jerusalem by al-Kamil.

Ahmad ibn Muhammad ibn Khallikan (1968–94) *Wafayat al-A'yan wa-Anba' Abna' al-Zaman*. Ed. Ihsan 'Abbas. Beirut: Dar Sadir, Vol. 5, pp. 79–81.

17. Two sources on the handover of Jerusalem to Frederick II

(i) *Al-Kamil's handover of Jerusalem to Frederick II, and the latter's subsequent visit to the Temple Mount, are described in* Mufarrij al-Kurub fi Akhbar Bani Ayyub *(The Dispeller of Sorrows concerning the Account of the Scions of Ayyub), a history of the Ayyubids by the qadi and historian Jamal al-Din Muhammad ibn Wasil (d. 1298).*

Al-Malik al-Kamil was of the opinion that if he broke [his agreement] with the emperor and did not satisfy him with everything [that had been promised], he would open up an episode of war with the Franks, disruption would spread, and everything that he had gone campaigning for would elude him. He believed that he should satisfy the Franks with the city of Jerusalem in ruins, and make peace with them for a time, and then he would be able to seize it from them whenever he wished. The emir Fakhr al-Din ibn al-Shaykh carried the messages between him and al-Malik al-Imperator [i.e. Frederick II], and between them there were discussions on various topics. During these the emperor sent al-Malik al-Kamil difficult philosophical, geometrical and mathematical questions, in order to put the excellent men who were with him to the test. Al-Malik al-Kamil showed the mathematical questions that had come to him to the *shaykh* 'Alam al-Din Qaysar ibn Abi'l-Qasim, who was a leader in the field, and showed the remainder to a group of excellent men, and they answered the lot. Then the sultan al-Malik al-Kamil swore to abide by what they had agreed on, as did the emperor, and they concluded a truce for a fixed term. The matter was arranged between them, and each side felt secure with the other. It reached me that the emperor said to Fakhr al-Din, 'Had I not feared that my reputation among the Franks would collapse, I would not have imposed any of this on him. I have no desire to take Jerusalem or anywhere else, and only really want to preserve my honour among them.'

…

When it was proclaimed in Jerusalem that the Muslims were to leave, and [the city] was to be surrendered to the Franks, tumult and weeping broke out among the people of Jerusalem. It was distressing for the Muslims. They grieved for Jerusalem's passing out of their possession and disapproved of al-Malik al-Kamil for this act […] but al-Malik al-Kamil, may God have mercy on him, knew that the Franks would not be able to defend themselves in Jerusalem, given the demolition of its walls, and that if he achieved his

objective and the situation stabilised for him, he would be able [later] to purify it of the Franks and expel them from it.

…

When the matter of the truce was concluded, the emperor asked the sultan for permission to conduct a pilgrimage to Jerusalem, and he gave it to him. The sultan commissioned the *qadi* Shams al-Din, the *qadi* of Nablus, may God have mercy on him, who was highly regarded in the regime and given precedence by the rulers of the Ayyubid family, to provide service to the emperor until he had visited Jerusalem and returned to Acre. Shams al-Din, may God have mercy on him, related to me, 'When the emperor came to Jerusalem, I accompanied him as the sultan al-Malik al-Kamil commanded me. I entered the Noble Sanctuary with him, and he looked at the shrines in it. Then I entered the Aqsa Mosque with him, and the building greatly pleased him, as did that of the sanctified Dome of the Rock. When he reached the *mihrab* of the Aqsa [Mosque] its beauty, and the beauty of the *minbar*, delighted him, and he went up the steps [of the *minbar*] to its top. Then he descended and took my hand, and we went out of the Aqsa [Mosque]. He saw a priest, with the Gospel in his hand, who was intending to enter the Aqsa [Mosque], and he shouted an objection at him, saying, "What has brought you here? By God! If any of you comes in here again without my permission, I shall certainly pluck his eyes out! We are the slaves and servants of this sultan al-Malik al-Kamil, and he has donated this church to me and you as a way of granting favour, so let not one of you exceed his limits." The priest went away, trembling with fear of him, and the emperor passed on to the house that had been assigned for him to dwell in, and stayed there.'

The *qadi* Shams al-Din, the *qadi* of Nablus, said, 'I ordered the muezzins not to give the call to prayer that night, out of esteem for him, and when we got up in the morning and I went in to see him, he asked me, "O *qadi*, why did the muezzins not utter the call to prayer from the *minbars* according to their custom?" I answered him, "This slave forbade it to them out of respect for the king and esteem for him." He said, "You committed an error in what you did. By God, the greatest of my aims in staying overnight in Jerusalem was to hear the muezzins making the call to prayer and glorifying God in the night." Then he departed for Acre.'

Jamal al-Din Muhammad ibn Wasil (1953–75) *Mufarrij al-Kurub fi Akhbar Bani Ayyub*. Ed. Jamal al-Din al-Shayyal et al. Cairo: Al-Matbaʿa al-Amiriyya, Vol. 4, pp. 242–45.

(ii) *The famous religious scholar Yusuf ibn Qizughli, known as Sibt ibn al-Jawzi (d. 1257), was initially brought up by his equally famous grandfather, 'Abd al-Rahman ibn al-Jawzi, then moved to Damascus in*

about 1204 after the latter's death. There he taught and preached, as well as serving a number of the Ayyubid rulers, including al-Mu'azzam 'Isa and al-Nasir Dawud. The following account of the same events is drawn from his universal history, Mir'at al-Zaman fi Ta'rikh al-A'yan *(The Mirror of Time concerning the History of Important People).*

In [the year 626 AH/1229 CE] al-Kamil gave the emperor Jerusalem […] This grieved [al-Ashraf], and he reproached al-Kamil, who said, 'I only did this because I was obliged to by al-Mu'azzam' and stated that al-Mu'azzam had given the emperor [the lands] from the Jordan to the [Mediterranean] Sea, and the estates from the gate of Jerusalem to Jaffa, and others. When al-Ashraf and al-Kamil joined together they agreed to besiege Damascus. The news of the surrender of Jerusalem to the Franks arrived, and turmoil erupted in all the lands of Islam. The misfortunes [associated with the events] were so distressing that ceremonies of mourning were held. Al-Malik al-Nasir Dawud asked me to host a meeting in the [Umayyad] Great Mosque of Damascus and speak about what had happened to Jerusalem. I could not refuse him, seeing conformity with his desires as part of the religious duties that defend Islam. So I sat in the Great Mosque of Damascus, in the presence of al-Nasir Dawud, at the Gate of the Mashhad of 'Ali. It was a memorable day, with not one of the people of Damascus being absent. Among the words [that I spoke] were: 'Parties of pilgrims have been cut off from Jerusalem! O, for the desolation of those who live around it! How many prayer-cycles have they performed in those places? How many tears have they shed in those dwellings? By God, if their eyes became springs, they would not shed sufficient tears [for such a calamity], and if their hearts were rent by sorrow, they would not ease it. May God grant consolation to the believers. Shame upon the rulers of the Muslims! At such events tears are poured out. At such [events] hearts break from sighs. At such [events] sorrows increase.'

…

The emperor entered Jerusalem, while Damascus was being besieged, and remarkable things happened [during his visit]. Among them was that when he entered the [Dome of the] Rock he saw a priest sitting at the Foot[print of the Prophet Muhammad], taking pieces of paper from the Franks. He came up as if he wanted a blessing from [the priest], but [the emperor] struck him and threw him to the ground, saying, 'You pig! The sultan has honoured us with a visit to this place, and you do such deeds here? If any of you comes back and starts behaving in such a way again, I will surely kill him!'

The custodians of the [Dome of the] Rock described this situation, and they said, '[The emperor] looked at the inscription in the Dome, which said, "Salah al-Din has purified Jerusalem of the polytheists," and asked, "Who are the

polytheists?" He asked the custodians, "What is the purpose of these nets on the doors of the [Dome of the] Rock?" They answered, "So that little birds do not come in." He responded, "God has brought you giants." '

They added, 'When it was time for the midday prayer, and the muezzin uttered the call to prayer, all those who were with him got up, his attendants and pages, and his teacher, who was from Sicily and with whom he was reading [Aristotle's] *Logic* chapter-by-chapter, and performed the *salat*, for they were Muslims.' [The custodians] said, 'The emperor was light-skinned, with weak eyes. If he were a slave he would not be worth 200 dirhams,' and they added, 'What was apparent from his words was that he was a materialist, and that he was only play-acting at being a Christian.'

Sibt ibn al-Jawzi follows this passage with an account, similar to that of Ibn Wasil, in which Frederick II demonstrates great respect for the muezzins of Jerusalem.

Sibt ibn al-Jawzi (1951–52) *Mir'at al-Zaman fi Ta'rikh al-A'yan.* Hyderabad-Deccan: Dairatu'l-Maarifil-Osmania, Vol. 2, pp. 653–56.

18. Ibn al-Dawadari on the battle of 'Ayn Jalut

Abu Bakr ibn al-Dawadari was the son of a Mamluk military and administrative official and himself served in the military, although as a member of the awlad al-nas, *he is unlikely to have risen to a high rank. He also wrote several historical works. The following account of the Battle of 'Ayn Jalut is drawn from his abridged universal chronicle*, Kanz al-Durar wa-Jami' al-Ghurar *(The Treasure of Pearls and the Collector of the Best Parts), which he wrote between 1309 and 1336. Ibn al-Dawadari's claim that Baybars lured the Mongols to 'Ayn Jalut is probably a fabrication (Amitai-Preiss, 1995: 40–41).*

The departure of the sultan al-Malik al-Muzaffar [Qutuz] with his army from the lands of Egypt to face the Tatars [Mongols] took place on Monday 15 Sha'ban (658, 26 July 1260). Hülegü had prepared the armies of the Mongols, who were led by Ket-Buqa Noyan. The latter descended on Homs, and when it reached him that the sultan al-Muzaffar had arrived at Marj 'Akka he rode away from Homs and turned so that he would come to the Jordan Valley. Al-Muzaffar sent the emir Rukn al-Din Baybars al-Bunduqdari with a number of seasoned cavalry as an advance guard to stab and strike [at the enemy]. When [Baybars'] eyes fell upon [the Mongols] he sent word to the sultan. Then he seized the opportunity to engage in a skirmish with them, so that he could be credited with good deeds by God (be He exalted) and Islam, and so that the impact [of the enemy] might be reduced in the eyes of the troops coming upon them. He met them anew and lured them to destruction, he turned to attack them and advanced ahead of them, until they reached 'Ayn Jalut. On Friday 25

Ramadan the Sublime (3 September) the two armies met in battle, and swords and spearheads engaged in striking and stabbing. The brave stood firm and the cowardly fled, the misfortune of calamity came upon the blaspheming idol-worshippers, and God gave victory to the bearers of the *Qur'an*. The infidel Tatars were put to flight, sharp blades severed their necks, and they were scattered throughout the land. The Muslims rode in hot pursuit, capturing and killing, until that satisfied [the carrion-eating appetites of] the wild beasts of the waterless deserts. Their cursed leader, Ket-Buqa Noyan, was killed, and the evil-doing people were eradicated. Praise be to God, Lord of the Worlds!

Abu Bakr ibn ʿAbd Allah ibn al-Dawadari (1971) *Kanz al-Durar wa-Jami' al-Ghurar*. Vol. 8. Ed. Ulrich Haarmann. Cairo: al-Maʿhad al-Almani li-l-Athar, pp. 49–50.

19. Qalawun's treaty with the lady of Tyre, 1285

As indicated previously, despite their vigorous prosecution of the military jihad *against the Franks, the Mamluks also made periodic treaties and peace agreements with them as circumstances dictated. The following extracts are drawn from a treaty made by Qalawun with Margaret, the Lady of Tyre, in 1285. The text of the treaty is found in a biography of Qalawun written by the head of his royal chancery, Ibn ʿAbd al-Zahir (d. 1293), entitled* Tashrif al-Ayyam wa-l-ʿUsur fi Sirat al-Malik al-Mansur *(The Honouring of Days and Ages Concerning the Biography of al-Malik al-Mansur [Qalawun's regnal title: the King Aided by God]). For a fuller discussion of this treaty, including a translation of the complete text, see P.M. Holt,* Early Mamluk Diplomacy *(1995), pp. 106–17.*

In the Name of God, the Merciful, the Compassionate: The blessed peace agreement has been established between our lord, the sultan al-Malik al-Mansur [Qalawun], Sayf al-Dunya wa-l-Din (Sword of the World and the Faith), sultan of Islam and the Muslims, partner of the Commander of the Faithful [the caliph], [two of Qalawun's sons are then specified], and the sublime ruler, Dame Margaret, daughter of Sir Henry, son of Prince Bohemond, ruler of Tyre during the period of the establishment of this truce [Lady Margaret's representative is also named], for a period of ten years, complete, uninterrupted and consecutive, of which the start is Thursday, 14 Jumada I 684 (18 July 1285) […] and the end is 14 Jumada I 694 (1 April 1295).

…

Regarding all the Islamic lands within the sovereignty of the lands of our lord the sultan, al-Malik al-Mansur [the precise geographical areas are then specified]: their fortresses, citadels, ports, cities, villages, coasts, harbours and inland areas, both close and distant, plains and mountains, cultivated and

abandoned, lowlands and highlands, east and west, Yemen and Hijaz, *Bilad al-Sham* and Egypt, and the villages, cultivated lands, rivers, mills, towers and gardens included therein, and those people included in these territories, including troops, soldiers and civilians [...], staying in them, resident or travelling to, from or within them, merchants and travellers, shall be safe and secure, [in the case of the people] with respect to their selves, goods and livestock.

...

With regard to the territory of the ruler, Dame Margaret, daughter of Sir Henry, son of Prince Bohemond, specified as being hers in particular and shared in this peace agreement, which is the city of Tyre and the walls and suburbs that surround it as its property [...] these suburbs mentioned shall be the property of Tyre [...] on the condition that Rashmun, Ma'shuqa and the garden of al-'Awja remain lands in the suburbs of Tyre without dwellings or villages.

The treaty then goes on to specify at length which lands around Tyre shall belong to Qalawun, which shall belong to Lady Margaret, and which shall have their incomes shared between them. The treaty then indicates the obligations of each ruler to both the other and their subjects, including the following clauses.

This territory belonging to the ruler of Tyre shall be safe and secure, along with those [living] within it, be they troops, cavalry, infantry, civilians or merchants, with respect to their selves, goods, children and livestock.

...

When someone from either side is killed, and the killer is found, if the killer is Muslim, the representatives of our lord, the sultan al-Malik al-Mansur (may God aid him), shall judge him according to the requirements of the noble, pure usages of the sultanate, and if he is a Christian from the people of Tyre, the ruler, Dame Margaret, the ruler of Tyre, shall judge him. Each party shall carry out the judgement, in the presence of a representative from the other side, according to what the laws of both sides require.

...

And on the condition that the ruler, Dame Margaret, the ruler of Tyre, does not begin anew the construction of the citadel, nor the restoration of the wall, nor the digging of a moat, nor anything that will fortify [Tyre], protecting or defending [it]:

And on the condition that our lord the sultan does not give leeway for any of his troops or soldiers, or any of the people of his lands, to seek to gain access into the territory of Tyre specified in this peace agreement to cause injury, damage, theft, hostile action, or treachery on land or sea, nor that any of the troops, soldiers or allies of our lord the sultan undertakes action against the ruler, Dame Margaret, the ruler of Tyre, either against herself, her cavalry or

her associates, with the exception of the Isma'ilis who are under the jurisdiction of our lord the sultan; the sultan has the right to send whomever of them that he wishes to the ruler of Tyre to carry out evil and damage whenever he wishes *(this refers to the remnants of the Nizaris, who had come under Mamluk control; as Holt notes, Qalawun backs up the agreement with a threat [Holt, 1995: 116])*:

And on the condition that the ruler, Dame Margaret, the ruler of Tyre, shall take on the duty of defending the territory of our lord the sultan, from her side, from any criminal, troublemaker, foreign intruder and the rest of the Franks who seek to gain access from her territory into the lands of our lord the sultan to carry out injury, attack, wickedness or hostile action:

And on the condition that the ruler, Dame Margaret, the ruler of Tyre, does not agree with any of the rest of the Franks on any matter that might cause harm to the territory of our lord the sultan, or damage his territories, people or whomever or whatever is therein, nor aids anyone in that with any sign, written word, advice or message, until the time of the termination of this truce:

She shall have the right to similar treatment from our lord the sultan.

The treaty closes with an indication that it will remain in force for the ten-year period specified even if one of the two parties dies or is deposed.

Muhyi'l-Din ibn 'Abd al-Zahir (1961) *Tashrif al-Ayyam wa-l-'Usur fi Sirat al-Malik al-Mansur*. Ed. Murad Kamil and Muhammad 'A. al-Najjar. Cairo: al-Sharika al-'Arabiyya li-l-Tiba'a wa-l-Nashr, pp. 103–10.

20. Abu'l-Fida' on the Conquest of Acre, 1291

'Imad al-Din Isma'il, best known by his kunya *of Abu'l-Fida' (1273–1331), was a descendent of Saladin's nephew Taqi al-Din 'Umar and one of the last Ayyubid rulers to be tolerated by the Mamluk sultans. In 1310, he was appointed governor of his ancestral home of Hamah by the sultan al-Nasir Muhammad; in 1320, he was granted the title of Sultan of Hamah, and he continued to rule there until his death. The following account is from his* Mukhtasar fi Akhbar al-Bashar *(Short Account of Human Affairs), a universal history starting with Adam and continuing to his own time. Here he describes the Muslim conquest of Acre in 1291, which he witnessed himself, aged 17, as an emir of ten in the* halqa.

The descent of the Islamic armies upon [Acre] occurred in the first days of Jumada I of this year (690 A.H., May 1291). The fighting became fierce; the Franks had not closed most of their gates, but rather they were open, with [the Franks] fighting in them. The location of the troops from Hamah was at the head of the right wing, according to their custom. We were beside the sea, with the sea on our right as we faced Acre. Ships bearing wooden vaulting

covered with ox hides would come at us, shooting at us with arrows and [crossbow] bolts, so that there was fighting [coming] from in front of us, from the direction of the city, and from our right, from the sea. They brought up a ship upon which was a mangonel that shot at us and our tents from the direction of the sea, and we suffered hardship until one night strong gale-force winds arose, the ship was caught up and sank because of the waves, and the mangonel that was in it was broken in such a way that it was shattered and was not set up [again] after that.

During the time of the siege, the Franks came out by night and took the army by surprise. They routed the sentries and reached the tents, getting entangled in the guy-ropes. One of their knights fell into the latrine of one of the emirs and was killed there. The [Muslim] troops came to outnumber them, and the Franks fled, defeated, to the city. The troops of Hamah killed a number of them, and when morning came al-Malik al-Muzaffar, the lord of Hamah, hung a number of the Franks' heads on the necks of the horses that the soldiers had taken from them and took them to the sultan al-Malik al-Ashraf [Khalil].

The [Muslim] troops' attack on Acre became more aggressive until God, be He exalted, gave them its conquest by the sword on Friday, 17 Jumada II (17 June). When the Muslims stormed into [the city], some of its people fled in ships. Within the city were a number of towers that were resisting like citadels, which a large number of Franks entered and fortified themselves within. The Muslims killed [many people] and took in Acre a quantity of plunder greater than can be reckoned. Then the sultan called for the surrender of all who were resisting in the towers, and not one person hesitated. Then he issued orders regarding them, and they were beheaded, to the last man, around Acre. Then he gave orders regarding the city of Acre, and it was torn down to the ground and completely demolished.

A wondrous thing is the coincidence that the Franks took control of Acre, taking it from Salah al-Din (Saladin) at noon on Friday, 17 Jumada II 587 (12 July 1191), capturing the Muslims who were in it and then killing them, and God, be He glorified and exalted, with His advance knowledge decreed that it should be conquered in this year (690/1291) on Friday, 17 Jumada II, at the hand of the sultan al-Malik al-Ashraf Salah al-Din; its conquest was similar to the day that the Franks took possession of it, and likewise the *laqabs* of the sultans.

'Imad al-Din Isma'il ibn 'Ali, known as Abu'l-Fida'. (1998–99) *Al-Mukhtasar fi Akhbar al-Bashar*. Ed. Muhammad Z.M. 'Azab et al. Cairo: Dar al-Ma'arif, Vol. 4, pp. 34–35.

21. Statements of Usama ibn Ladin (Osama bin Laden,

1957–2011), 1998

Usama ibn Ladin was born into an extremely wealthy family in Saudi Arabia and enjoyed a privileged upbringing. At university, he met the Islamist thinker 'Abd Allah Azzam (1941–89), under whose influence he became convinced of the need to liberate the Muslim world from foreign intervention. Ibn Ladin participated in the Afghan resistance to the occupation of the country by Soviet forces in the 1980s, during which period he founded al-Qa'ida (al-Qaeda, *'the Base'), an organization that initially operated in Afghanistan but later expanded its operations to other venues. When the Americans were invited to station troops in Saudi Arabia in the wake of the Iraqi invasion of Kuwait in 1990, Ibn Ladin was outraged and publicly denounced the move. Disowned by his family and banished from Saudi Arabia, he began orchestrating attacks on American targets, issuing a public declaration of war against America itself in 1996. The following statements, made in 1998 and thus before the events of 11 September 2001, outline his views.*

(i) From an Interview with his Followers:

The call to wage war against America was made because America has spearheaded the crusade against the Islamic nation, sending tens of thousands of its troops to the land of the two Holy Mosques [Saudi Arabia], over and above its meddling in its affairs and its politics and its support of the oppressive, corrupt, and tyrannical regime that is in control [the Saudi monarchy]. These are the reasons behind the singling out of America as a target. And not exempt from responsibility are those Western regimes whose presence in the region offers support to the American troops there. We know at least one reason behind the symbolic participation of the Western forces and that is to support the Jewish and Zionist plans for expansion of what is called the Great Israel. Surely, their presence is not out of concern over their interests in the region […] Their presence has no meaning save one and that is to offer support to the Jews in Palestine who are in need of their Christian brothers to achieve full control over the Arab Peninsula, which they intend to make an important part of the so-called Great Israel.

…

The terrorism we practice is of the commendable kind, for it is directed at the tyrants and the aggressors and the enemies of Allah, the tyrants, the traitors who commit acts of treason against their own countries and their own faith and their own prophet and their own nation. Terrorizing those and punishing them are necessary measures to straighten things and to make them right. Tyrants and oppressors who subject the Arab nation to aggression ought to be punished. The wrongs and the crimes committed against the Muslim

nation are far greater than can be covered by this interview. America heads the list of aggressors against the Muslims. The recurrence of aggression against Muslims everywhere is proof enough. For over half a century, Muslims in Palestine have been slaughtered and assaulted and robbed of their honour and of their property. Their houses have been blasted, their crops destroyed. And the strange thing is that any act by them to avenge themselves or to lift the injustice befalling them causes great agitation in the United Nations, which hastens to call for an emergency meeting only to convict the victims and to censure the wronged and the tyrannized whose children have been killed and whose crops have been destroyed and whose farms have been pulverized. […] In today's wars, there are no morals, and it is clear that mankind has descended to the lowest degrees of decadence and oppression. They rip us of our wealth and of our resources and of our oil. Our religion is under attack. They kill and murder our brothers. They compromise our honour and our dignity and if we dare to utter a single word of protest against their injustice, we are called terrorists.

…

What prompted us to address the American government in particular is the fact that it is on the head of the Western and crusading forces in their fight against Islam and the Muslims. […] We, however, differentiate between the Western government and the people of the West. If the people have elected these governments in the latest elections, it is because they have fallen prey to the Western media, which portrays things contrary to what they really are. And while the slogans raised by these regimes call for humanity, justice and peace, the behavior of their governments is completely the opposite. It is not enough for their people to show pain when they see our children being killed in Israeli raids launched by American planes, nor does this serve the purpose. What they ought to do is change their governments that attack our countries. The hostility that America continues to express against the Muslim people has given rise to feelings of animosity on the part of Muslims against America and against the West in general. Those feelings of animosity have produced a change in the behavior of some crushed and subdued groups, who, instead of fighting the Americans inside the Muslim countries, went on to fight them inside the United States of America itself.

The Western regimes and the government of the United States of America bear the blame for what might happen. If their people do not wish to be harmed inside their very own countries, they should seek to elect governments that are truly representative of them and that can protect their interests.

'Interview with Usama bin Laden [sic] by His Followers, 1998.' (2004) Trans. Akram Fouad Khater, in Akram Fouad Khater (ed.), *Sources in the History of the Modern Middle East.* Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, pp. 360–62. ©

2004 South-Western, a part of Cengage, Inc. Reproduced by permission. www.cengage.com/permissions.

(ii) Comments on the Jihad against Jews and Crusaders:

No-one argues today about three facts that are known to everyone; we will list them, in order to remind everyone:

First, over seven years the United States has been occupying the lands of Islam in the holiest of places, the Arabian Peninsula, plundering its riches, dictating to its rulers, humiliating its people, terrorizing its neighbors, and turning its bases in the peninsula into a spearhead through which to fight the neighboring Muslim peoples.

If some people have in the past argued about the fact of the occupation, all the people of the peninsula have now acknowledged it. The best proof of this is the Americans' continuing aggression against the Iraqi people using the peninsula as a staging post, even though all its rulers are against their territories being used to that end, but they are helpless.

Second, despite the great devastation inflicted on the Iraqi people by the crusader-Zionist alliance, and despite the huge number of those killed, which has exceeded 1 million [...] despite all this, the Americans are once again trying to repeat the horrific massacres, as though they are not content with the protracted blockade imposed after the ferocious war or the fragmentation and devastation.

So here they come to annihilate what is left of its people and to humiliate their Muslim neighbors.

Third, if the Americans' aims behind these wars are religious and economic, the aim is also to serve the Jews' petty state and divert attention from its occupation of Jerusalem and murder of Muslims there. The best proof of this is their eagerness to destroy Iraq, the strongest neighboring Arab state, and their endeavor to fragment all the states of the region – such as Iraq, Saudi Arabia, Egypt and Sudan – into paper statelets and through their disunion and weakness to guarantee Israel's survival and the continuation of the brutal crusade occupation of the peninsula.

All these crimes and sins committed by the Americans are a clear declaration of war on God, His Messenger, and Muslims.

...

The ruling to kill the Americans and their allies – civilians and military – is an individual duty for every Muslim who can do it in any country in which it is possible to do it, in order to liberate the al-Aqsa Mosque and the holy mosque [Mecca] from their grip, and in order for their armies to move out of all the lands of Islam, defeated and unable to threaten any Muslim. This is in

accordance with the words of Almighty God, 'and fight the pagans all together as they fight you all together' [*Qur'an* 9: 36], and 'fight them until there is no more tumult or oppression, and there prevail justice and faith in God' [*Qur'an* 8: 39].

'Jihad Against Jews and Crusaders: World Islamic Front Statement.' (2004) Trans. Akram Fouad Khater, in Akram Fouad Khater (ed.), *Sources in the History of the Modern Middle East*, pp. 364–65.

Select bibliography

Primary sources

This list includes both primary sources cited in this book and, where judged appropriate, additional primary texts, either in Arabic or in translation, that may be of interest to readers or have been helpful in the preparation of this work.

Abu'l-Fida', 'Imad al-Din Isma'il. (1983) *The Memoirs of a Syrian Prince: Abu'l-Fida', Sultan of Hamah (672–732/1273–1331)*. Trans. P.M. Holt. Freiburger Islamstudien, 9. Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner Verlag GMBH.

———. (1998–99) *Al-Mukhtasar fi Akhbar al-Bashar*. Ed. Muhammad Z.M. 'Azab et al. 4 vols. Cairo: Dar al-Ma'arif.

Arab Historians of the Crusades. (1984) Trans. Francesco Gabrieli and E.J. Costello. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.

Al-'Azimi, Muhammad ibn 'Ali. (1984) *Ta'rikh Halab*. Ed. Ibrahim Za'rur. Damascus: n.p.

Al-Bukhari, Muhammad ibn Isma'il. (2003) *Sahih al-Bukhari*. Ed. and trans. Muhammad M. al-Sharif. 4 vols. Beirut: Dar al-Kutub al-'Ilmiyya.

Chronicles of the Crusades: Eyewitness Accounts of the Wars between Christianity and Islam. (2000) Ed. Elizabeth Hallam. New York, NY: Welcome Rain.

Dabiq. (2014) Issue 4, Dhu'l-Hijja 1435/Sep-Oct 2014.

'Hamas in 2017: The Document in Full'. (2017) *Middle East Eye*. Posted 1 May 2017. Accessed 1 April 2019. <www.middleeasteye.net/news/hamas-2017-document-full>.

Al-Harawi, Abu'l-Hasan 'Ali. (1962) 'Les Conseils du Sayh al-Harawi à un Prince Ayyubide'. Ed. and trans. Janine Sourdel-Thomine. *Bulletin d'Études Orientales* 17, pp. 205–68.

Ibn 'Abd al-Zahir, Muhyi'l-Din. (1961) *Tashrif al-Ayyam wa-l-'Usur fi Sirat al-Malik al-Mansur*. Ed. Murad Kamil and Muhammad 'A. al-Najjar. Cairo: al-

Sharika al-ʻArabiyya li-l-Tibaʻa wa-l-Nashr.
Ibn al-ʻAdim, Kamal al-Din. (1951–68) *Zubdat al-Halab min Ta'rikh Halab*. Ed. Sami Dahan. 3 vols. Damascus: al-Maʻhad al-Firansi.
Ibn al-Athir, ʻIzz al-Din. (1963) *Al-Ta'rikh al-Bahir fi'l-Dawla al-Atabakiyya*. Ed. ʻAbd al-Qadir A. Tulaymat. Cairo: Dar al-Kutub al-Haditha.
———. (1966) *Al-Kamil fi'l-Ta'rikh*. Ed. C.J. Tornberg. 13 vols. Beirut: Dar Sadir.
———. (2006) *The Chronicle of Ibn al-Athir for the Crusading Period from* al-Kamil fi'l-Ta'rikh*: Part 1: The Years 491–541/1097–1146: The Coming of the Franks and the Muslim Response*. Trans. D.S. Richards. Crusade Texts in Translation, 13. Aldershot: Ashgate.
———. (2007) *The Chronicle of Ibn al-Athir for the Crusading Period from* al-Kamil fi'l-Ta'rikh*: Part 2: The Years 541–589/1146–1193: The Age of Nur al-Din and Saladin*. Trans. D.S. Richards. Crusade Texts in Translation, 15. Aldershot: Ashgate.
———. (2008) *The Chronicle of Ibn al-Athir for the Crusading Period from* al-Kamil fi'l-Ta'rikh*: Part 3: The Years 589–629/1193–1231: The Ayyubids after Saladin and the Mongol Menace*. Trans. D.S. Richards. Crusade Texts in Translation 17. Aldershot: Ashgate.
Ibn al-Dawadari, Abu Bakr ibn ʻAbd Allah. (1971) *Kanz al-Durar wa-Jami' al-Ghurar*. Vol. 8. Ed. Ulrich Haarmann. Cairo: al-Maʻhad al-Almani li-l-Athar.
Ibn al-Jawzi, ʻAbd al-Rahman ibn ʻAli. (1992) *Al-Muntazam fi Ta'rikh al-Muluk wa-l-Umam*. Ed. Muhammad ʻA. al-Q. ʻAta and Mustafa ʻA. al-Q. ʻAta. 19 vols. Beirut: Dar al-Kutub al-ʻIlmiyya.
Ibn al-Khayyat, Ahmad ibn Muhammad. (1994) *Diwan ibn al-Khayyat*. Ed. Kh. Mardam Bey. Beirut: Dar Sadir.
Ibn al-Qalanisi, Hamza ibn Asad. (1932) *The Damascus Chronicle of the Crusades*. Trans. H.A.R. Gibb. London: Luzac and Co.
———. (1983) *Ta'rikh Dimashq*. Ed. Suhayl Zakkar. Damascus: Dar Hassan li-l-Tibaʻa wa-l-Nashr.
Ibn al-Qaysarani, Muhammad ibn Nasr. (1991) *Shi'r Ibn al-Qaysarani*. Ed. ʻAdil J.S. Muhammad. Al-Zarqa': al-Wakalat al-ʻArabiyya li-l-Nashr wa-l-Tawziʻ.
Ibn Jubayr, Muhammad ibn Ahmad. (1907) *The Travels of Ibn Jubayr*. Ed. William Wright and M.J. de Goeje. E.J.W. Gibb Memorial Series, Vol. 5. 2nd ed. Leiden: E.J. Brill.
———. (2001) *The Travels of Ibn Jubayr*. Trans. R.J.C. Broadhurst. New Delhi: Goodword Books.
Ibn Khallikan, Ahmad ibn Muhammad. (1961) *Ibn Khallikan's Biographical Dictionary*. Trans. Baron Mac Guckin de Slane. 4 vols. New York, NY: Johnson Reprint Corporation.
———. (1968–94) *Wafayat al-Aʻyan wa-Anba' Abna' al-Zaman*. Ed. Ihsan

ʿAbbas. 8 vols. Beirut: Dar Sadir.
Ibn Shaddad, Baha' al-Din. (1964) *Al-Nawadir al-Sultaniyya wa-l-Mahasin al-Yusufiyya: Sirat Salah al-Din*. Ed. Jamal al-Din al-Shayyal. Cairo: al-Dar al-Misriyya li-l-Ta'lif wa-l-Tarjama.
———. (2001) *The Rare and Excellent History of Saladin*. Trans. D.S. Richards. Crusade Texts in Translation, 7. Aldershot: Ashgate.
Ibn Taghri Birdi, Jamal al-Din. (1963) *Al-Nujum al-Zahira fi Muluk Misr wa-l-Qahira*. Ed. M. ʿA. al-Q. Hatim. 12 vols. Cairo: Dar al-Kutub al-Misriyya.
Ibn Wasil, Jamal al-Din Muhammad. (1953–75) *Mufarrij al-Kurub fi Akhbar Bani Ayyub*. Ed. Jamal al-Din al-Shayyal et al. 5 vols. Cairo: Al-Matbaʿa al-Amiriyya.
'Interview with Usama bin Laden by His Followers, 1998.' (2004) Trans. Akram Fouad Khater, in Akram Fouad Khater (ed.), *Sources in the History of the Modern Middle East*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, pp. 360–63.
Al-Isfahani, ʿImad al-Din. (1965) *Al-Fath al-Qussi fi'l-Fath al-Qudsi*. Ed. Muhammad M. Subh. Cairo: al-Dar al-Qawmiyya li-l-Tibaʿa wa-l-Nashr.
———. (1972) *Conquête de la Syrie et de la Palestine par Saladin (al-Fath al-Qussi fi l-Fath al-Qudsi)*. Trans. Henri Massé. Paris: Librairie Orientaliste Paul Geuthner.
'Jihad against Jews and Crusaders: World Islamic Front Statement.' (2004) Trans. Akram Fouad Khater, in Akram Fouad Khater (ed.), *Sources in the History of the Modern Middle East*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, pp. 363–65.
Al-Maqrizi, Ahmad ibn ʿAli. (1967–73) *Ittiʿaz al-Hunafa' bi-Akhbar al-A'imma al-Fatimiyyin al-Khulafa'*. Ed. Jamal al-Din al-Shayyal and Muhammad H.M. Ahmad. 3 vols. Cairo: Lajnat Ihya' al-Turath al-Islami.
Al-Masʿudi, ʿAli ibn al-Husayn. (1894) *Kitâb at-Tanbîh wa'l-Ischrâf*. Ed. M. J. de Goeje. Bibliotheca Geographorum Arabicorum, Vol. 8. Leiden: E.J. Brill.
———. (1965–79) *Muruj al-Dhahab wa-Maʿadin al-Jawhar*. Ed. Charles Pellat. 7 vols. Beirut: Manshurat al-Jamiʿa al-Lubnaniyya.
Matériaux pour un Corpus Inscriptionum Arabicarum: Deuxième Partie – Syrie du Sud – Jérusalem – 'Haram': Tome Deuxième. (1925) Ed. Max van Berchem. Mémoires Publiés par les Membres de l'Institut Français d'Archéologie Orientale du Caire 44. Cairo: Institut Français d'Archéologie Orientale.
The Meaning of the Holy Qur'an. (2004) Ed. and trans. ʿAbdullah Y. ʿAli. 11th ed. Beltsville, MD: Amana Publications.
Al-Qalqashandi, Shihab al-Din Ahmad. (2017) *Selections from* Subh al-Aʿsha *by al-Qalqashandi, Clerk of the Mamluk Court*. Ed. and trans. Heba El-Toudy and Tarek Galal Abdelhamid. Routledge Medieval Translations. Abingdon: Routledge.

The Sea of Precious Virtues (Bahr al-Fava'id): A Medieval Islamic Mirror for Princes. (1991) Trans. Julie Scott Meisami. Salt Lake City, UT: University of Utah Press.

Semeonis, Symon. (1960) *Itinerarium Symonis Semeonis ab Hybernia ad Terram Sanctam*. Ed. and trans. Mario Esposito. Scriptores Latini Hiberniae, 4. Dublin: Dublin Institute for Advanced Studies.

Sibt ibn al-Jawzi, Yusuf ibn Qizughli. (1951–52) *Mir'at al-Zaman fi Ta'rikh al-A'yan*. 2 vols. Hyderabad-Deccan: Dairatu'l-Maarifil-Osmania.

Al-Sulami, 'Ali ibn Tahir. (2015) *The Book of the* Jihad *of 'Ali ibn Tahir al-Sulami (d. 1106): Text, Translation and Commentary*. Ed. and trans. Niall Christie. Aldershot: Ashgate.

Usama ibn Munqidh. (1930) *Usamah's Memoirs Entitled* Kitab al-I'tibar. Ed. Philip K. Hitti. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.

———. (1987) *Lubab al-Adab*. Ed. Ahmad M. Shakir. Cairo: Dar al-Kutub al-Salafiyya.

———. (2000) *An Arab-Syrian Gentleman & Warrior in the Period of the Crusades: Memoirs of Usamah ibn-Munqidh* (Kitab al-I'tibar). Trans. Philip K. Hitti. Records of Western Civilization. New York, NY: Columbia University Press.

———. (2008) *The Book of Contemplation: Islam and the Crusades*. Trans. Paul M. Cobb. Penguin Classics. London: Penguin Books.

Al-Wasiti, Muhammad ibn Ahmad. (1979) *Fada'il al-Bayt al-Muqaddas*. Ed. Isaac Hasson. Max Schloessinger Memorial Series, 3. Jerusalem: The Hebrew University.

Secondary sources

Note that this is a list of scholarly works cited in this book rather than a comprehensive list of secondary sources about the subject. Interested readers are encouraged to consult the bibliographies and notes of the works listed subsequently for further reading on the topic.

Abouali, Diana. (2011) 'Saladin's Legacy in the Middle East before the Nineteenth Century', *Crusades* 10, pp. 175–89.

Abulafia, David. (1994) 'The Role of Trade in Muslim-Christian Contact during the Middle Ages', in Dionisius A. Agius and Richard Hitchcock (eds.), *The Arab Influence in Medieval Europe*. Middle East Cultures Series, 18. Reading: Ithaca Press, pp. 1–24.

———. (1995) 'Trade and Crusade 1050–1250', in Michael Goodich et al. (eds.), *Cross-Cultural Convergences in the Crusader Period: Essays Presented to Aryeh Grabois on His Sixty-Fifth Birthday*. New York, NY: Peter Lang, pp.

1–20.
Abu-Lughod, Janet. (1987) 'The Islamic City: Historic Myth, Islamic Essence, and Contemporary Relevance', *International Journal of Middle East Studies* 19, pp. 155–76.
Afsaruddin, Asma. (2013) *Striving in the Path of God:* Jihad *and Martyrdom in Islamic Thought*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
Ali-Karamili, Sumbul. (2008) *The Muslim Next Door: The Qur'an, the Media and That Veil Thing*. Ashland, OR: White Cloud Press.
Amitai-Preiss, Reuven. (1995) *Mongols and Mamluks: The Mamluk-Ilkhanid War, 1260–1281*. Cambridge Studies in Islamic Civilization. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Atiya, Aziz S. (1962) *Crusade, Commerce and Culture*. Bloomington, IN: Indiana University Press.
The Atlas of the Crusades. (1991) Ed. Jonathan Riley-Smith. New York, NY: Facts on File.
Atrache, Laila. (1996) *Die Politik der Ayyubiden: Die Fränkisch-Islamischen Beziehungen in der Ersten Hälfte des 7/13. Jahrhunderts unter Besonderer Berücksichtigung des Feindbildes*. Arabica Rhema 1. Münster: Rhema.
Ayalon, David. (1977) *Studies on the Mamluks of Egypt (1250–1517)*. London: Variorum Reprints.
———. (1994) *Islam and the Abode of War: Military Slaves and Islamic Adversaries*. Variorum Collected Studies Series. Aldershot: Variorum.
Bachrach, Jere L. (1984) *A Middle East Studies Handbook*. Seattle: University of Washington Press.
Bengio, Ofra. (1998) *Saddam's Word: Political Discourse in Iraq*. Studies in Middle Eastern History. New York, NY: Oxford University Press.
Bennison, Amira K. (2016) *The Almoravid and Almohad Empires*. The Edinburgh History of the Islamic Empires. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.
Berkey, Jonathan P. (2003) *The Formation of Islam: Religion and Society in the Near East, 600–1800*. Themes in Islamic History. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Bonner, Michael. (1996) *Aristocratic Violence and Holy War: Studies in the Jihad and the Arab-Byzantine Frontier*. American Oriental Series, 81. New Haven, CT: American Oriental Society.
———. (2006) *Jihad in Islamic History: Doctrines and Practice*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
Bonney, Richard. (2004) *Jihad: From Qur'an to bin Laden*. London: Palgrave Macmillan.
Bosworth, Clifford E. (1996) *The New Islamic Dynasties: A Chronological and Genealogical Manual*. New York, NY: Columbia University Press.

Brett, Michael. (2017) *The Fatimid Empire*. The Edinburgh History of the Islamic Empires. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.

Bush, George W. (2001) 'Remarks by the President upon Arrival', *The White House: President George W. Bush*. Posted 16 September 2001. Accessed 24 June 2013. <http://georgewbush-whitehouse.archives.gov/news/releases/2001/09/20010916-2.html>.

Byman, Daniel. (2015) *Al Qaeda, the Islamic State, and the Global Jihadist Movement: What Everyone Needs to Know*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press.

Catlos, Brian A. (2014) *Infidel Kings and Unholy Warriors: Faith, Power and Violence in the Age of Crusade and Jihad*. New York, NY: Farrar, Straus and Giroux.

Chamberlin V, John M. (2007) *Imagining Defeat: An Arabic Historiography of the Crusades*. MA thesis, Naval Postgraduate School, Monterey, CA. Posted 1 March 2007. Accessed 13 September 2013. <http://handle.dtic.mil/100.2/ADA467268>.

Chevedden, Paul E. (2008) 'The Islamic View and the Christian View of the Crusades: A New Synthesis', *History: The Journal of the Historical Association* 93, pp. 181–200.

Christie, Niall. (1999) *Levantine Attitudes towards the Franks during the Early Crusades (490/1096–564/1169)*. Ph.D. thesis, University of St Andrews. Posted 12 June 2012. Accessed 24 June 2013. <http://hdl.handle.net/10023/2741>.

———. (2004) 'Just a Bunch of Dirty Stories? Women in the "Memoirs" of Usamah Ibn Munqidh', in Rosamund Allen (ed.), *Eastward Bound: Travel and Travellers, 1050–1550*. Manchester: Manchester University Press, pp. 71–87.

———. (2006) 'Religious Campaign or War of Conquest? Muslim Views of the Motives of the First Crusade', in Niall Christie and Maya Yazigi (eds.), *Noble Ideals and Bloody Realities: Warfare in the Middle Ages*. History of Warfare, 37. Leiden: E.J. Brill, pp. 57–72.

———. (2007a) 'Jerusalem in the *Kitab al-Jihad* of 'Ali ibn Tahir al-Sulami', *Medieval Encounters* 13, pp. 209–21.

———. (2007b) 'Motivating Listeners in the *Kitab al-Jihad* of 'Ali ibn Tahir al-Sulami (d. 1106)', *Crusades* 6, pp. 1–14.

———. (2016) 'An Illusion of Ignorance? The Muslims of the Middle East and the Franks before the Crusades', in Adrian J. Boas (ed.), *The Crusader World*. Abingdon: Routledge, pp. 311–23.

———. (2019) 'Fighting Women in the Crusading Period through Muslim Eyes: Transgressing Expectations and Facing Realities?', in Natasha R. Hodgson, Katherine J. Lewis and Matthew M. Mesley (eds.), *Crusading and Masculinities*. Crusades – Subsidia 13. Abingdon: Routledge, pp. 183–95.

Christie, Niall and Deborah Gerish. (2003) 'Parallel Preachings: Urban II and al-Sulami', *Al-Masaq: Islam and the Medieval Mediterranean* 15, pp. 139–48.
Clermont-Ganneau, Charles. (1896) *Archaeological Researches in Palestine during the Years 1873–1874*. Vol. 2. Trans. John MacFarlane. London: Palestine Exploration Fund.
Cobb, Paul M. (2005) *Usama ibn Munqidh: Warrior Poet of the Age of the Crusades*. Makers of the Muslim World. Oxford: Oneworld.
———. (2014) *The Race for Paradise: An Islamic History of the Crusades*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
Constable, Olivia Remie. (2003) *Housing the Stranger in the Mediterranean World: Lodging, Trade, and Travel in Late Antiquity and the Middle Ages*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Cook, David. (2005) *Understanding Jihad*. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.
———. (2007) *Martyrdom in Islam*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
The Crusader World. (2016) Ed. Adrian J. Boas. Abingdon: Routledge.
The Crusades: An Encyclopedia. (2006) Ed. Alan V. Murray. 4 vols. Santa Barbara, CA: ABC-CLIO.
Daftary, Farhad. (1994) *The Assassin Legends: Myths of the Isma'ilis*. London: I.B. Tauris.
———. (2007) *The Isma'ilis: Their History and Doctrines*. 2nd ed. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
Dahlmanns, Franz-Josef. (1975) *Al-Malik al-'Adil: Ägypten und der Vordere Orient in den Jahren 589/1193 bis 615/1218*. Ph.D. diss., Universität Gießen.
Dajani-Shakeel, Hadia. (1976) '*Jihad* in Twelfth-Century Arabic Poetry: A Moral and Religious Force to Counter the Crusades', *The Muslim World* 66, pp. 96–113.
———. (1986) 'Al-Quds: Jerusalem in the Consciousness of the Counter-Crusader', in Vladimir P. Goss and Christine Verzár Bornstein (eds.), *The Meeting of Two Worlds: Cultural Exchange between East and West during the Period of the Crusades*. Studies in Medieval Culture, 21. Kalamazoo, MI: Medieval Institute Publications, pp. 201–21.
———. (1993) 'Diplomatic Relations between Muslim and Frankish Rulers 1097–1153 A.D.', in Maya Shatzmiller (ed.), *Crusaders and Muslims in Twelfth-Century Syria*. The Medieval Mediterranean: Peoples, Economies and Cultures, 400–1453, Vol. 1. Leiden: E.J. Brill, pp. 190–215.
———. (1995) 'Some Aspects of Muslim-Frankish Christian Relations in the *Sham* Region in the Twelfth Century', in Yvonne Y. Haddad and Wadi Z. Haddad (eds.), *Christian-Muslim Encounters*. Gainesville, FL: University Press of Florida, pp. 193–209.
Drory, Joseph. (1988) 'Hanbalis of the Nablus Region in the Eleventh and

Twelfth Centuries', *Asian and African Studies* 22, pp. 93–112.
———. (2003) 'Al-Nasir Dawud: A Much Frustrated Ayyubid Prince', *Al-Masaq: Islam and the Medieval Mediterranean* 15, pp. 161–87.
Ducène, Jean-Charles. (2018) *L'Europe et les Géographes Arabes du Moyen Âge (IXe-XVe Siècle): La Grande Terre et ses Peuples: Conceptualisation d'un Espace Ethnique et Politique*. Paris: CNRS Éditions.
Eddé, Anne-Marie. (1996) 'Saint Louis et la Septième Croisade vus par les Auteurs Arabes', *Cahiers de Recherches Médiévales (XIIIe-XVe s.)* 1 (*Croisades et Idée de Croisade à la Fin du Moyen Âge*), pp. 65–92.
———. (1999) *La Principauté Ayyoubide d'Alep (579/1183–658/1260)*. Freiburger Islamstudien 21. Stuttgart: Franz Steiner Verlag.
———. (2011) *Saladin*. Trans. Jane Marie Todd. Cambridge, MA: Belknap Press of Harvard University Press.
Egger, Vernon O. (2004) *A History of the Muslim World to 1405*. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Pearson Prentice Hall.
Ehrenkreutz, Andrew S. (1972) *Saladin*. Albany, NY: State University of New York Press.
El-Azhari, Taef K. (1997) *The Saljuqs of Syria during the Crusades, 463–549 A.H./1070–1154 A.D.* Islamkundliche Untersuchungen, 211. Berlin: Klaus Schwarz Verlag.
———. (2016) *Zengi and the Muslim Response to the Crusades: The Politics of Jihad*. Routledge Studies in the History of Iran and Turkey. Abingdon: Routledge.
Elisséeff, Nikita. (1967) *Nur ad-Din: Un Grand Prince Musulman de Syrie au Temps des Croisades (511–569 H./1118–1174)*. 3 vols. Damascus: Institut Français de Damas.
Ellenblum, Ronnie. (2012) *The Collapse of the Eastern Mediterranean: Climate Change and the Decline of the East, 950–1072*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Elliott, Andrew B.R. (2017) *Medievalism, Politics and Mass Media: Appropriating the Middle Ages in the Twenty-First Century*. Medievalism, 10. Cambridge: D.S. Brewer.
The Encyclopaedia of Islam. (1960–2004) Ed. H.A.R. Gibb et al. 2nd ed. 11 vols. plus supplements. Leiden: E.J. Brill.
Esposito, John L. (2003) *Unholy War: Terror in the Name of Islam*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press.
Ettinghausen, Richard and Oleg Grabar. (1994) *The Art and Architecture of Islam, 650–1250*. New Haven, NJ: Yale University Press.
Firestone, Reuven. (1999) *Jihad: The Origin of Holy War in Islam*. New York, NY: Oxford University Press.
France, John. (1997) 'Technology and the Success of the First Crusade', in

Yaacov Lev (ed.), *War and Society in the Eastern Mediterranean, 7th–15th Centuries*. The Medieval Mediterranean: Peoples, Economies and Cultures, 400–1453, Vol. 9. Leiden: E.J. Brill, pp. 163–76.

———. (2015) *Hattin*. Great Battles. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Frenkel, Yehoshua. (1997) 'The Impact of the Crusades on Rural Society and Religious Endowments: The Case of Medieval Syria (*Bilad al-Sham*)', in Yaacov Lev (ed.), *War and Society in the Eastern Mediterranean, 7th–15th Centuries*. The Medieval Mediterranean: Peoples, Economies and Cultures, 400–1453, Vol. 9. Leiden: E.J. Brill, pp. 237–48.

———. (2011) 'Muslim Responses to the Frankish Dominion in the Near East, 1098–1291', in Conor Kostick (ed.), *The Crusades and the Near East: Cultural Histories*. London: Routledge, pp. 27–54.

Friedman, Yvonne. (1995) 'Women in Captivity and Their Ransom during the Crusader Period', in Michael Goodich et al. (eds.), *Cross Cultural Convergences in the Crusader Period: Essays Presented to Aryeh Grabois on his Sixty-Fifth Birthday*. New York, NY: Peter Lang, pp. 75–87.

———. (2011) 'Peacemaking: Perceptions and Practices in the Medieval Latin East', in Conor Kostick (ed.), *The Crusades and the Near East: Cultural Histories*. London: Routledge, pp. 229–57.

Fulton, Michael S. (2018) *Artillery in the Era of the Crusades: Siege Warfare and the Development of Trebuchet Technology*. History of Warfare, 122. Leiden: E.J. Brill.

———. (forthcoming) *Siege Warfare during the Crusades*. London: Pen & Sword.

Gibb, Sir Hamilton A.R. (1973) *The Life of Saladin*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.

Gottschalk, Hans L. (1958) *Al-Malik al-Kamil von Egypten und seine Zeit: Eine Studie zur Geschichte Vorderasiens und Egyptens in der Ersten Hälfte des 7/13. Jahrhunderts*. Wiesbaden: Otto Harrassowitz.

Goudie, Kenneth A. (2019) *Reinventing Jihad: Jihad Ideology from the Conquest of Jerusalem to the end of the Ayyubids (c. 492/1099–647/1249)*. The Muslim World in the Age of the Crusades, 4. Leiden: E.J. Brill.

Halm, Heinz. (1992) *Shiism*. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.

———. (2018) *Kalifen und Assassinen: Ägypten und der Vordere Orient zur Zeit der Ersten Kreuzzüge 1074–1171*. Historische Bibliothek der Gerda-Henkel-Stiftung. München: Verlag C.H. Beck.

Hamblin, William. (1986) 'The Fatimid Navy During the Early Crusades: 1099–1124', *American Neptune* 46, pp. 77–83.

Hermes, Nizar F. (2012) *The [European] Other in Medieval Arabic Literature and Culture, Ninth-Twelfth Century AD*. New York, NY: Palgrave Macmillan.

Hillenbrand, Carole. (1994) '*Jihad* Propaganda in Syria from the Time of the

First Crusade until the Death of Zengi: The Evidence of Monumental Inscriptions', in Khalil Athaminah and Roger Heacock (eds.), *The Frankish Wars and their Influence on Palestine: Selected Papers presented at Birzeit University's International Academic Conference held in Jerusalem, March 13–15, 1992*. Birzeit: Birzeit University Publications, pp. 60–69.

———. (1999a) *The Crusades: Islamic Perspectives*. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.

———. (2001) '"Abominable Acts": The Career of Zengi', in Jonathan Phillips and Martin Hoch (eds.), *The Second Crusade: Scope and Consequences*. Manchester: Manchester University Press, pp. 111–32.

———. (2010) '*Jihad* Poetry in the Age of the Crusades', in Thomas F. Madden et al. (eds.), *Crusades: Medieval Worlds in Conflict*. Farnham: Ashgate, pp. 9–23.

———. (2011) 'What's in a Name? Tughtegin – "The Minister of the Antichrist"?', in Omar Alí-de-Unzaga (ed.), *Fortresses of the Intellect: Ismaili and Other Islamic Studies in Honour of Farhad Daftary*. London: I.B. Tauris and the Institute of Ismaili Studies, pp. 459–71.

Hillenbrand, Robert. (1999b) *Islamic Art and Architecture*. World of Art. London: Thames and Hudson.

Hirschler, Konrad. (2013) 'Studying Mamluk Historiography. From Source-Criticism to the Cultural Turn', in Stephan Conermann (ed.), *Ubi Sumus? Quo Vademus? Mamluk Studies – State of the Art*. Mamluk Studies, 3. Göttingen: V&R unipress/Bonn University Press, pp. 159–86.

Holt, P.M. (1986) *The Age of the Crusades: The Near East from the Eleventh Century to 1517*. London: Longman.

———. (1995) *Early Mamluk Diplomacy (1260–1290): Treaties of Baybars and Qalawun with Christian Rulers*. Islamic History and Civilization: Studies and Texts, 12. Leiden: E.J. Brill.

Housley, Norman. (2006) *Contesting the Crusades*. Contesting the Past. Malden, MA: Blackwell Publishing.

Humphreys, R. Stephen. (1977) *From Saladin to the Mongols: The Ayyubids of Damascus, 1193–1260*. Albany, NY: State University of New York Press.

———. (1998) 'Ayyubids, Mamluks and the Latin East in the Thirteenth Century', *Mamluk Studies Review* 2, pp. 1–17.

Humphries, Mark. (2016) 'Review of *The Collapse of the Eastern Mediterranean: Climate Change and the Decline of the East, 950–1072*, by Ronnie Ellenblum', *Early Medieval Europe* 24, pp. 238–41.

Ibn 'Asakir and Early Islamic History. (2001) Ed. James E. Lindsay. Studies in Late Antiquity and Early Islam, 20. Princeton, NJ: Darwin Press.

Irwin, Robert. (1986) *The Middle East in the Middle Ages: The Early Mamluk Sultanate 1250–1382*. Carbondale, IL: Southern Illinois University Press.

———. (1995) ‘Islam and the Crusades, 1096–1699’, in Jonathan Riley-Smith (ed.), *The Oxford Illustrated History of the Crusades*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, pp. 217–59.

———. (1998) ‘Usamah ibn Munqidh, an Arab-Syrian Gentleman at the Time of the Crusades Reconsidered’, in J. France and William G. Zajac (eds.), *The Crusades and their Sources: Essays presented to Bernard Hamilton*. Aldershot: Ashgate, pp. 71–87.

Juvin, Carine. (2013) ‘Mamluk Inscriptions’, in Stephan Conermann (ed.), *Ubi Sumus? Quo Vademus? Mamluk Studies – State of the Art*. Mamluk Studies 3. Göttingen: V&R unipress/Bonn University Press, pp. 211–29.

Kedar, Benjamin Z. (1990) ‘The Subjected Muslims of the Frankish Levant’, in James M. Powell (ed.), *Muslims under Latin Rule, 1100–1300*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press, pp. 135–74.

———. (1992) ‘The Battle of Hattin Revisited’, in B.Z. Kedar (ed.), *The Horns of Hattin: Proceedings of the Second Conference of the Society of the Crusades and the Latin East*. Jerusalem: Yad Izhak Ben-Zvi, pp. 190–207.

———. (1996) ‘Croisade et *Jihad* vus par l’Ennemi’, in Michel Balard (ed.), *Autour de la Première Croisade: Actes du Colloque de la Society for the Study of the Crusades and the Latin East (Clermont-Ferrand, 22–25 Juin 1995)*. Byzantina Sorbonensia, 14. Paris: Publications de la Sorbonne, pp. 345–55.

———. (1997a) ‘Multidirectional Conversion in the Frankish Levant’, in J. Muldoon (ed.), *Varieties of Religious Conversion in the Middle Ages*. Gainesville, FL: University Press of Florida, pp. 190–99.

———. (1997b) ‘Some New Sources on Palestinian Muslims before and during the Crusades’, in H.E. Mayer (ed.), *Die Kreuzfahrerstaaten als Multikulturelle Gesellschaft*. Schriften des Historischen Kollegs, Kolloquien, 37. Munich: Oldenbourg, pp. 129–40.

Kennedy, Hugh. (1994) *Crusader Castles*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.

———. (1996) *Muslim Spain and Portugal: A Political History of Al-Andalus*. Harlow: Pearson.

———. (2004) *The Prophet and the Age of the Caliphates: The Islamic Near East from the Sixth to the Eleventh Century*. 2nd ed. Harlow: Pearson.

Khadduri, Majid. (1955) *War and Peace in the Law of Islam*. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins Press.

Khowaiter, Abdul-Aziz. (1978) *Baibars the First: His Endeavours and Achievements*. London: Green Mountain Press.

Koch, Bettina. (2015) *Patterns Legitimizing Political Violence in Transcultural Perspectives: Islamic and Christian Traditions and Legacies*. Judaism, Christianity, and Islam – Tension, Transmission, Transformation, 1. Boston/

Berlin: Walter de Gruyter.
Köhler, Michael A. (1991) *Allianzen und Verträge zwischen Fränkischen und Islamischen Herrschern im Vorderen Orient: Eine Studie über das Zwischenstaatliche Zusammenleben vom 12. bis ins 13. Jahrhundert*. Studien zur Sprache, Geschichte und Kultur des Islamischen Orients, 12. Berlin: Walter de Gruyter.
———. (2013) *Alliances and Treaties between Frankish and Muslim Rulers in the Middle East: Cross-Cultural Diplomacy in the Period of the Crusades*. Trans. Peter M. Holt and Konrad Hirschler. The Muslim World in the Age of the Crusades: Studies and Texts, 1. Leiden: E.J. Brill.
König, Daniel G. (2015) *Arabic-Islamic Views of the Latin West: Tracing the Emergence of Medieval Europe*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
———. (2016) 'Charlemagne's ›Jihad‹ Revisited: Debating the Islamic Contribution to an Epochal Change in the History of Christianization', *Medieval Worlds* 3, pp. 3–40.
Kruk, Remke. (2014) *The Warrior Women of Islam: Female Empowerment in Arabic Popular Literature*. London: I.B. Tauris and Co. Ltd.
Landau-Tasseron, Ella. (2001–6) 'Jihad', in Jane Dammen McAuliffe et al. (eds.), *The Encyclopedia of the Qur'an*. 6 vols. Leiden: E.J. Brill.
Latiff, Osman. (2018) *The Cutting Edge of the Poet's Sword: Muslim Poetic Responses to the Crusades*. The Muslim World in the Age of the Crusades, 3. Leiden: E.J. Brill.
Lawrence, T.E. (1988) *Crusader Castles*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
Lev, Yaacov. (1991) *State and Society in Fatimid Egypt*. Arab History and Civilization, 1. Leiden: E.J. Brill.
———. (1997) 'Regime, Army and Society in Medieval Egypt, 9th–12th Centuries', in Yaacov Lev (ed.), *War and Society in the Eastern Mediterranean, 7th–15th Centuries*. The Medieval Mediterranean: Peoples, Economies and Cultures, 400–1453, Vol. 9. Leiden: E.J. Brill, pp. 115–52.
———. (1999) *Saladin in Egypt*. The Medieval Mediterranean, 21. Leiden: E.J. Brill.
———. (2007) 'Saladin's Economic Policies and the Economy of Ayyubid Egypt', in U. Vermeulen and K. D'Hulster (eds.), *Egypt and Syria in the Fatimid, Ayyubid and Mamluk Eras V*. Orientalia Lovaniensia Analecta, 169. Leuven: Uitgeverij Peeters, pp. 307–48.
———. (2008) 'The *Jihad* of Sultan Nur al-Din of Syria (1146–1174): History and Discourse', *Jerusalem Studies in Arabic and Islam* 35, pp. 227–84.
Levanoni, Amalia. (1995) *A Turning Point in Mamluk History: The Third Reign of al-Nasir Muhammad Ibn Qalawun (1310–1341)*. Islamic History and Civilization: Studies and Texts, 10. Leiden: E.J. Brill.
Little, Donald P. (1983) 'Religion under the Mamluks', *The Muslim World* 73,

pp. 165–81.
———. (1997) 'Jerusalem under the Ayyubids and Mamluks 1187–1516 AD', in Kamil J. Asali (ed.), *Jerusalem in History: 3000 BC to the Present Day*. Revised ed. London: Kegan Paul International, pp. 177–99.
Lyons, Malcolm Cameron and David E.P. Jackson. (1984) *Saladin: The Politics of the Holy War*. University of Cambridge Oriental Publications, 30. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Maalouf, Amin. (1984) *The Crusades through Arab Eyes*. Trans. Jon Rothschild. London: Al Saqi Books.
MacEvitt, Christopher H. (2008) *The Crusades and the Christian World of the East: Rough Tolerance*. The Middle Ages. Philadelphia, PA: University of Pennsylvania Press.
Maier, Christoph T. (2004) 'The Roles of Women in the Crusade Movement: A Survey', *Journal of Medieval History* 30, pp. 61–82.
Mallett, Alex. (2014) *Popular Muslim Reactions to the Franks in the Levant, 1097–1291*. Aldershot: Ashgate.
Mecit, Songül. (2014) *The Rum Seljuqs: Evolution of a Dynasty*. Routledge Studies in the History of Iran and Turkey. Abingdon: Routledge.
Medieval Muslim Historians and the Franks in the Levant, 1097–1291. (2014) Ed. Alex Mallett. The Muslim World in the Age of the Crusades, 2. Leiden: E.J. Brill.
Metcalfe, Alex. (2009) *The Muslims of Medieval Italy*. The New Edinburgh Islamic Surveys. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.
Möhring, Hannes. (1980) *Saladin und der Dritte Kreuzzug: Aiyubidische Strategie und Diplomatie im Vergleich vornehmlich der Arabischen mit den Lateinischen Quellen*. Frankfurter Historische Abhandlungen, 21. Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner Verlag.
Momen, Moojan. (1985) *An Introduction to Shi'i Islam: The History and Doctrines of Twelver Shi'ism*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.
Morabia, Alfred. (1993) *Le Gihâd dans l'Islam Médiéval: Le 'Combat Sacré' des Origines au XIIe Siècle*. Paris: Albin Michel.
Morgan, David. (1988) *Medieval Persia, 1040–1797*. London: Longman.
Morton, Nicholas. (2015) 'The Saljuq Turks' Conversion to Islam: The Crusading Sources', *Al-Masaq: Journal of the Medieval Mediterranean* 27, pp. 109–18.
———. (2016) *Encountering Islam on the First Crusade*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
———. (2018) *The Field of Blood: The Battle for Aleppo and the Remaking of the Medieval Middle East*. New York, NY: Basic Books.
Mourad, Suleiman A. and James E. Lindsay. (2007) 'Rescuing Syria from the Infidels: The Contribution of Ibn 'Asakir of Damascus to the *Jihad*

Campaign of Sultan Nur al-Din', *Crusades,* 6, pp. 37–55.
———. (2013) *The Intensification and Reorientation of Sunni Jihad Ideology in the Crusader Period: Ibn 'Asakir of Damascus (1105–1176) and His Age, with an Edition and Translation of Ibn 'Asakir's* The Forty Hadiths for Inciting Jihad. Islamic History and Civilization: Studies and Texts, 99. Leiden: E.J. Brill.
Munir, Fareed Z. (2008) 'Sultan al-Malik Muhammad al-Kamil and Saint Francis: Interreligious Dialogue and the Meeting at Damietta', *Journal of Islamic Law and Culture* 10, pp. 305–14.
Nicolle, David. (1986) *Saladin and the Saracens.* Men-at-Arms, 171. Oxford: Osprey Publishing Ltd.
———. (1993) *The Mamluks 1250–1517.* Men-at-Arms, 259. Oxford: Osprey Publishing Ltd.
———. (1994) *Saracen Faris, AD 1050–1250.* Warrior, 10. Oxford: Osprey Publishing Ltd.
———. (1999) *Arms and Armour of the Crusading Era, 1050–1350: Islam, Eastern Europe and Asia.* London: Greenhill Books.
———. (2007) *Crusader Warfare.* 2 vols. London: Hambledon Continuum.
———. (2014) *Mamluk 'Askari 1250–1517.* Warrior, 173. Oxford: Osprey Publishing Ltd.
Northrup, Linda S. (1998) *From Slave to Sultan: The Career of al-Mansur Qalawun and the Consolidation of Mamluk Rule in Egypt and Syria (678–689 A.H./1279–1290 A.D.).* Freiburger Islamstudien, 18. Stuttgart: Franz Steiner Verlag.
Noth, Albrecht. (1966) *Heiliger Krieg und Heiliger Kampf in Islam und Christentum: Beiträge zur Vorgeschichte und Geschichte der Kreuzzüge.* Bonner Historische Forschungen, 28. Bonn: Ludwig Röhrscheid.
Peacock, A.C.S. (2015) *The Great Seljuk Empire.* The Edinburgh History of the Islamic Empires. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.
Peters, Rudolph. (2016) *Jihad*: A History in Documents. 3rd ed. Princeton Series on the Middle East. Princeton, NJ: Markus Wiener Publishers.
Phillips, Jonathan. (2014) *The Crusades, 1095–1204.* 2nd ed. Abingdon: Routledge.
Prawer, Joshua. (1964) 'La Bataille de Hattin', *Israel Exploration Journal* 14, pp. 160–79.
———. (1988) *The History of the Jews in the Latin Kingdom of Jerusalem.* Oxford: Clarendon Press.
———. (2001) *The Crusaders' Kingdom: European Colonialism in the Middle Ages.* London: Phoenix Press.
Rabie, Hassanein. (1975) 'The Training of the Mamluk Faris', in V.J. Parry and M.E. Yapp (eds.), *War, Technology and Society in the Middle East.* London:

Oxford University Press, pp. 153–63.
Raphael, Kate. (2011) *Muslim Fortresses in the Levant: Between Crusaders and Mongols*. Culture and Civilization in the Middle East. London: Routledge.
Richards, Donald S. (1998) 'Mamluk Amirs and Their Families and Households', in Thomas Philipp and Ulrich Haarmann (eds.), *The Mamluks in Egyptian Politics and Society*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, pp. 32–54.
Richter-Bernburg, Lutz. (2014) 'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani', in Alex Mallett (ed.), *Medieval Muslim Historians and the Franks in the Levant, 1097–1291*. The Muslim World in the Age of the Crusades, 2. Leiden: E.J. Brill, pp. 29–51.
Riley-Smith, Jonathan. (1987) *The Crusades: A Short History*. New Haven, CT: Yale University Press.
Riley-Smith, Jonathan and Susanna A. Throop. (forthcoming) *The Crusades: A History*. 4th ed. London: Bloomsbury.
Rippin, Andrew. (2011) *Muslims: Their Religious Beliefs and Practices*. 4th ed. London: Routledge.
Roche, Jason T. (2017) 'Islamic State and the Appropriation of the Crusades – A Medieval Historian's Take', *The Conversation*. Posted 12 July 2017. Accessed 2 April 2019. <http://theconversation.com/islamic-state-and-the-appropriation-of-the-crusades-a-medieval-historians-take-75319>.
Runciman, Steven. (1965) *A History of the Crusades*. 3 vols. New York, NY: Harper & Rowe.
Sivan, Emmanuel. (1968) *L'Islam et la Croisade: Idéologie et Propagande dans les Réactions Musulmanes aux Croisades*. Paris: Librairie d'Amérique et d'Orient.
———. (1973) *Modern Arab Historiography of the Crusades*. Occasional Papers (Mekhon Shiloah le-Heker ha-Mizrah ha-Tikhon ve-Afrikah). Tel Aviv: Tel-Aviv University, Shiloah Center for Middle Eastern and African Studies.
Sizgorich, Thomas. (2009) *Violence and Belief in Late Antiquity: Militant Devotion in Christianity and Islam*. Divinations: Rereading Late Ancient Religion. Philadelphia, PA: University of Pennsylvania Press.
Smail, R.C. (1995) *Crusading Warfare, 1097–1193*. 2nd ed. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
Squatriti, Paolo. (2013) 'Review of *The Collapse of the Eastern Mediterranean: Climate Change and the Decline of the East, 950–1072*, by Ronnie Ellenblum', *Speculum* 88, pp. 1086–87.
Tabbaa, Yasser. (1986) 'Monuments with a Message: Propagation of *Jihad* under Nur al-Din (1146–74)', in Vladimir P. Goss and Christine Verzár Bornstein (eds.), *The Meeting of Two Worlds: Cultural Exchange between East and West during the Period of the Crusades*. Studies in Medieval Culture, 21. Kalamazoo, MI: Medieval Institute Publications, pp. 223–40.

———. (2001) *The Transformation of Islamic Art during the Sunni Revival*. Seattle: University of Washington Press.

Talmon-Heller, Daniella (2007a) *Islamic Piety in Medieval Syria: Mosques, Cemeteries and Sermons under the Zangids and Ayyubids (1146–1260)*. Jerusalem Studies in Religion and Culture, 7. Leiden: E.J. Brill.

———. (2007b) 'Islamic Preaching in Syria during the Counter-Crusade (Twelfth-Thirteenth Centuries)', in Iris Shagrir, Ronnie Ellenblum and Jonathan Riley-Smith (eds.), *In Laudem Hierosolymitani: Studies in Crusades and Medieval Culture in Honour of Benjamin Z. Kedar*. Crusades – Subsidia 1. Aldershot: Ashgate, pp. 61–75.

Thorau, Peter. (1992) *The Lion of Egypt: Sultan Baybars I and the Near East in the Thirteenth Century*. Trans. P.M. Holt. London: Longman.

Throop, Susanna A. (2018) *The Crusades: An Epitome*. Epitomes. Leeds: Kismet Press.

Tolan, John. (2009) *Saint Francis and the Sultan: The Curious History of a Christian-Muslim Encounter*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Ubi Sumus? Quo Vademus? Mamluk Studies – State of the Art. (2013) Ed. Stephan Conermann. Mamluk Studies, 3. Göttingen: V&R unipress/Bonn University Press.

Van Steenbergen, Jo. (2006) *Order out of Chaos: Patronage, Conflict and Mamluk Socio-Political Culture, 1341–1382*. Leiden: E.J. Brill.

Walker, Paul E. (2002) *Exploring an Islamic Empire: Fatimid History and Its Sources*. Ismaili Heritage Series, 7. London: I.B. Tauris/Institute of Ismaili Studies.

Weigert, Gideon. (1997) 'A Note on Hudna: Peace Making in Islam', in Yaacov Lev (ed.), *War and Society in the Eastern Mediterranean, 7th–15th Centuries*. The Medieval Mediterranean: Peoples, Economies and Cultures, 400–1453, Vol. 9. Leiden: E.J. Brill, pp. 399–405.

White Jr, Lynn. (1975) 'The Crusades and the Technological Thrust of the West Faris', in V.J. Parry and M.E. Yapp (eds.), *War, Technology and Society in the Middle East*. London: Oxford University Press, pp. 97–112.

Wise, Terence. (1978) *Armies of the Crusades*. Men-at-Arms, 75. Oxford: Osprey Publishing Ltd.

Yildiz, Sara Nur. (2019) *The Seljuk Empire of Anatolia*. The Edinburgh History of the Islamic Empires. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.

Yovitchitch, Cyril. (2011) *Forteresses du Proche-Orient: L'Architecture Militaire des Ayyoubides*. Paris: Presses de l'Université Paris-Sorbonne.

Zouache, Abbès. (2008) *Armées et Combats en Syrie de 491/1098 à 569/1174: Analyse Comparée des Chroniques Médiévales Latines et Arabes*. Damascus: Institut Français du Proche-Orient.

Index

Note: Page numbers in *italic* indicate a figure on the corresponding page.

9/11 attack, World Trade Center 167–9

ʿAbbasids xli, 9, 21–2, 44–5, 54
ʿAbd Allah (ʿUbayd Allah, Fatimid caliph) 15
Abdülhamid II ,Sultan 161
al-Abiwardi, document extracts 177
Abouali, Diana 160, 169
Abraham 7, 10, 57, 176, 186
Abu al-Jaysh (Shayzari soldier) 110
Acre 177, 184, 190, 193, 202, 206–7, 212–13; making peace in the Levant 113, 116, 121–2; Mamluks 142; post-Saladin 128; victory and stalemate 68–9, 74, 76
al-ʿAdil II Abu Bakr (Ayyubid sultan) 129
al-ʿAdil Muhammad (al-Malik al-ʿAdil Muhammad ibn Ayyub) xxviii, 68, 73, 78, 95, 99; the successors of Saladin 126–7, 138
al-Afdal ʿAli (Ayyubid sultan) 74, 126–7
al-Afdal Shahanshah (Fatimid vizier) xxviii, 16, 23, 37, 91
Age of the Crusades, The (Holt) 2, 157
Ager Sanguinis 28
ahl al-dhimma 12
Ahmad ibn Qudama (religious scholar) 109
Ajlun castle 95–7, *98*
al-Akhbar al-Saniyya fi'l-Hurub al-Salibiyya (*The Splendid Accounts in the Crusading Wars*) 160–1
ʿAli ibn Abi Talib 8, 13–14
Allah xli, 7, 12, 165, 170–2
Aleppo 14, 63–4, 72, 92, 179, 185; First Crusade 28–9, 36–9; Mamluks 141; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 43, 58; post- Saladin 126–32, 138
Alexandria 47, 113, 142, 156
Alexios Komnenos 26
alliances xxviii, 50–1, 70, 105, 124, 216; First Crusade 27, 35–8; Mamluks 155–6; post-Saladin period 128–9, 137; *see also* treaties; truces
Almohads *see al-muwahhidun*
Almoravids *see al-murabitun*

Alp-Arslan (Great Seljuk sultan) xxviii, 9, 23, 29, 39, 179
Amalric, King of Jerusalem 47–8
amir al-tablakhana 148
al-Andalus xli, 175, 181
anecdotal evidence 82
annalistic chronicles 4
Antioch 27–8, 38, 68, 180, 197, 200; Mamluks 142, 155
Aqsa Mosque, Jerusalem 177, 186, 197, 206, 216; making peace in the Levant 108, 117; making war in the Levant 83; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 55–7, *56*; victory and stalemate 72, 75
Arabic language 8, 112, 123
Arabic script 54
architecture 61, 95
arrogance, Frankish 50–1
Arsuf 69, 77
Ascalon 27, 45–6, 69–70, 177, 190
asceticism, Sufis xlix, 118, 136, 195
al-Ashraf Khalil (al-Malik al-Ashraf Khalil ibn Qalawun) xxviii, 142, 143
al-Ashraf Musa (Ayyubid sultan) 127, 132, 136
assassination, political xlvii, 14–16; al-Afdal Shahanshah xxviii, 44; al-Ashraf Khalil 142; Malik-Shah 23; Nizam al-Mulk 23; Qutuz xxix, xxxvi; Zangi 29
Assassins (Nizari Assassins) xlvii, 15–16, 29, 45, 64
atabegs 23, 27, 29, 39, 140
Atrache, Laila 133–4
autobiographical works 4
awlad al-nas xli, 148, 209
Aybak (ʻIzz al-Din Aybak al-Turkumani) xxix, 140–1
Ayyubid family xli, **lxiii**, 127–9, 131–2, 140, 191, 195
al-ʻAzimi (Muhammad ibn ʻAli al-ʻAzimi) 26, 31, 34–5, 179–80
al-ʻAziz ʻUthman (Ayyubid sultan) 74, 126–7

Bab al-Futuh, Cairo 95–6, *97*
Badr al-Jamali (Fatimid vizier) 23, 91, 95
Baghdad 5, 8–9, 20–1, 71, 78; First Crusade 34, 36; post-Saladin period 132; Mamluks 141, 149
Baha' al-Din ibn Shaddad xxix, 67, 71, 191–4
Bahr al-Fava'id (*The Sea of Precious Virtues*) (anon) 58, 115–18
Bahri (Turkish) Mamluk Sultanate 43, 139–42
Bahriyya xlii, 139, 144
Balak, tomb at Aleppo 39
Baldwin of Boulogne xxix, 27
Balian of Ibelin 52, 190
Barquq (Mamluk sultan) 142
bath-house, behaviour in 117, 121
Battle of Balat xxxii, 28, 38
Battle of Hattin xxxvii, 76, 80, 84, 92–4, 188–92
Baybars al-Bunduqdari (al-Malik al-Zahir Baybars al-Bunduqdari) xxix, 141
Bayt al-Ahzan 65
Bedouin Arabs 16, 91–2
Beirut 65, 70, 127, 190

beliefs and practices, Islamic, in the Levant before the Crusades 10–12
Bertrand, grandson of Raymond of Poitiers 50
Bilad al-Sham lii, liii, lv, xlii, 211; First Crusade 29, 32, 36–41; making peace in the Levant 114; making war in the Levant 82, 92, 100; Mamluks 139–41, 148–9, 153–5, 157; Muslim world before the crusades 21, 23; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 43–6, 53, 60–1; post-Saladin period 127, 132, 135; victory and stalemate 63–4, 70–1
biographical works 4, 204; on Ayyubids 138; of Baybars 153; of Saladin xxix, 71, 191; of Yahya ibn Jarrah 205; of Qalawun 210
blazons 150–2
Bohemond of Taranto 27
buildings: Jerusalem 76, 107; Mamluks 143, 149–50, 153, 157; *see also* architecture
burj xlii, 145
Burji (Circassian) Mamluk Sultanate xlii, 140
Burjiyya xlii, 144
Bush, George W. 160, 164
Busra al-Sham 37, 95–6, *96*
Buyids (Buwayhids) xlii, 8–9, 19, 51
Byzantine Empire 9, 20, 155

Cairo xlii, 15, 23, 187, 204–5; making war in the Levant 95–8, *97*; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 47, 60, 64–5, *65*; Mamluks 141, 145, 148–9; post-Saladin period 126–7
caliphs xlii, 8–9
cannibalism 27
castle of Banyas 50, 106, 185
Catholics 5, 11, 30, 131
cavalry 91–4, 101, 148, 184, 196, 209–11
Charlemagne, empire of 5, 20
Chevedden, Paul E. 33
Chingiz Khan (Genghis Khan) xxx, 141
Christian buildings, Jerusalem 76, 107
Christianity 5, 20, 158, 168, 175, 192; First Crusade 34; making peace in the Levant 108, 114–18, 121; making war in the Levant 84; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 54, 58
chronicles, annalistic 4
chronologies xix–xxviii, 26–31, 43–8, 63–9, 126–31, 139–43, 170
Church of Garbage (Church of the Holy Sepulchre) 76, 117, 173, 174
Circassian Mamluk Sultanate xlii, 140–3
citadels 129, 167, 211, 213; of Cairo *65*, 97, 144; at Busra al-Sham 64, 66, 95–6, *96*
city militias 17, 29, 92
Cobb, Paul 2, 119
conduct of war, Muslim–Frankish interactions 73
Conrad III xxx, 50, 83, 183
Conrad of Montferrat 84
Constantinople xxx, 1, 26, 34, 186
Contesting the Crusades (Housley) 3
counter-crusades 2, 12, 26, 31–2, 35–9, 42, 159
cross symbol 116; *see also* relic of the True Cross
cross-wars 161; *see also* Crusades
crucifixion 115
Crusade of Nikopolis (Nikopol) 143

crusade on terrorism, George W. Bush 160, 164
Crusades: medieval impact 158–60; modern-day impact 160–4; Muslim resistance xxx, 12, 161–4; *see also* First/Second/Third/Fifth Crusades; perspectives
Crusades, The (C. Hillenbrand) 2
Crusades through Arab Eyes, The (Maalouf) 2
cuckolding 120
cultural barriers, Muslim–Frankish 123–4
Cyprus xxxi, xxxvii, 142

Da'ish see Islamic State
Damascus l, 167, 181, 184–7, 198, 204, 207–8; First Crusade 28–31, 36–9; making peace in the Levant 106–9, 118–19; making war in the Levant 83, 93; Mamluks 141, 154; Muslim world before the crusades 8; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 43–8, 54, 59–61; post-Saladin period 126–31, 136–7; victory and stalemate 63–4, 70–1, 80
dar al-'adl xlii, 46, 54, 59
dar al-'ahd (*dar al-sulh*) xlii, 89
dar al-harb xliii, 89
dar al-Islam xliii, 89
dar al-sulh xliii, 89
Darum (Dayr al-Balah) 69–70
Day of Judgement 19, 88
dhimmis (*ahl al-dhimma*) 12, 19
diplomacy 85, 135, 142, 159, 210
Dome of the Rock 57–8, *58*, 75, 108, 116–17, 177, 206
Dorylaeum (Eskishehir) 27
dynastic histories 4

economic issues 110
Edessa (Urfa) 27–8, 31, 39–40, 43–4, 126
Egypt/Egyptians 161, 216; document extracts 173–6, 181–3, 187–8, 197, 204–5, 209–10; First Crusade 35, 42; making war in the Levant 82–4, 92, *97*, 99–100; Mamluks 139–49, *146*, 153–6; Muslim world before the crusades 15, 18–19, 23; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 43–8, 51, 59–61; post-Saladin period 126–31, 135; victory and stalemate 63–6, *65*, 69, 71, 72
Egyptian-Frankish coalition 47
El-Azhari, Taef 59
epigraphic evidence 38, 41; *see also* inscriptions
extremism 87, 158, 161, 164–5, 167, 168; *see also* terrorism; Usama ibn Ladin

fada'il xliii, 4, 37, 57
Fada'il al-Bayt al-Muqaddas (*The Merits of Jerusalem*) 57, 186–7
family politics 130–1
fard 'ayn 36, 87
fard kifaya 36, 87
Fatimids/Fatimid caliphate xliii, lvi–lvii, 13–14, 19–23; document extracts 173, 181, 187; First Crusade 27–30, 35–7, 42; making war in the Levant 82, 91, 95–6, 100; Mamluks 145; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 43–8, 51, 54, 60
fatwas 4
al-Fazari (Ibrahim ibn Muhammad al-Fazari) 38
Field of Blood 28

Fifth Crusade xxviii, xxxiv, 127, 204
First Crusade 14, 21, 26, 42, 90, 100; chronological overview 26–31; document extracts 177, 180, 186; first signs of counter-crusade 35–9; making peace in the Levant 107, 110–12; Muslim views of the crusaders' motives 33–5; the problem of sources 31–2; and Zangi 39–41
folktales 5, 120, 123
France 5, 8; Louis IX xxxiv, 84, 130, 135, 145, 156
France, John 101
Francis of Assisi, St. 135
Franks *see Ifranj*
Frederick I Barbarossa xxx, 68, 85, 135
Frederick II xxx, 84, 205, 208; post-Saladin period 128, 130, 133, 135–6
friendships, Muslim–Frankish 123, 159, 197; Muslim–non-Muslim, modern-day 168
funduq xliii, 112–13, 125, 134
Funun (Shayzari woman warrior) 122
furusiyya 145

Gate of Conquests, Cairo 95–6, *97*
Gaza 69, 162, 181
genealogies lvi–lxii
Genghis Khan *see* Chingiz Khan (Genghis Khan)
geographical extent, Muslim world 5
geographies/travel literature, Muslim sources xxxiv, 4, 20, 173–5
Gerard of Ridefort 67
Gervase of Basoches 52, 112
al-Ghazali (Abu Hamid Muhammad ibn Muhammad al-Ghazali) 36
gifts, Muslim–Frankish 135
glass production 114
Golden Horde 155
greater *jihad* xlv, 36, 90, 154
Greek Orthodoxy xlviii, 5, 12, 19, 30
Guy of Lusignan xxxi, 66–9, 74, 76

hadith xliii, 5, 32, 37; document extracts 172–3, 194; making war in the Levant 88, 90–1; Muslim world before the crusades 10, 12–13; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 55–7
al-Hafiz 44–5
hajj xliii, 11, 108, 172–3, 187
al-Hakim bi-Amr Allah (Fatimid caliph) 15, 173
halqa xliii, 148, 212
Hamas (*Harakat al-Muqawama al-Islamiyya*) xliv, 162–3, 165
Hanafis xliv, 10
Hanbalis xliv, 10, 109
Harakat al-Muqawama al-Islamiyya see Hamas
al-Harawi (Abu'l-Hasan 'Ali al-Harawi) 195–6
Harbiyya (La Forbie) 130
Hasan-i Sabbah (Nizari chief missionary) 15–16
hashishiyya 15
Hattin, Battle of xxxvii, 77, 80, 84, 92–4, 188–92
Hell 10, 33, 46, 89
Heraclea (Ereğli) 27

Hillenbrand, Carole 2; First Crusade 35; making peace in the Levant 116–17, 120, 124; making war in the Levant 96–8; Mamluks 154; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 52; post-Saladin period 133–4, 137; victory and stalemate 71–2, 79–80
Holt, P.M. 140–2
Holy Roman Emperor, Frederick *see* Frederick II
holy war *see jihad*
Horns of Hamah 64
Horns of Hattin 67, 74, 188
horse-armour 101
Housley, Norman 3
Hülegü (Mongol khan) xxxi, 141, 209
humble piety *see* piety
Humphreys, R. Stephen 133, 138, 153
al-hurub al-salibiyya 161; *see also* Crusades
Husam al-Din Lu'lu' (Muslim admiral) 66
Husayn, Saddam xxxi, 166, 167
hygiene, Muslim views on Frankish 117

Iberian Peninsula 7–8, 21
Ibn al-'Adim, Kamal al-Din 38, 50–1
Ibn 'Asakir ('Ali ibn al-Hasan ibn 'Asakir) xxxii–lxiv, 57, 186
Ibn al-Athir ('Izz al-Din Abu'l-Hasan 'Ali) xxxii; document extracts 176–8, 180–1, 185–6, 187–8; First Crusade 27, 34–5, 40; making peace in the Levant 106, 116; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 50–1, 54, 60; post-Saladin period 132–3, 136; victory and stalemate 70, 73–5
Ibn al-Dawadari, Abu Bakr 209–10
Ibn al-Jawzi ('Abd al-Rahman ibn al-Jawzi) xxxviii, 49, 57, 207–8
Ibn al-Jawzi, Sibt *see* Sibt ibn al-Jawzi
Ibn Jubayr (Muhammad ibn Jabayr) 109, 116–17, 121
Ibn al-Khashshab (Aleppine *qadi*) 38
Ibn al-Khayyat (poet) 34, 177–9
Ibn al-Mubarak ('Abd Allah ibn al-Mubarak) 38
Ibn al-Qalanisi (Abu Ya'la Hamza ibn Asad al-Tamimi) xxxii, 6, 31, 49, 83, 93; document extracts 176–7, 184–6
Ibn Shaddad *see* Baha' al-Din ibn Shaddad
Ibn Taghri Birdi 34, 116, 177
Ibn Taymiyya (Ahmad ibn Taymiyya) xxxii, 86–9, 154, 161–2
Ibn Wasil (Jamal al-Din Muhammad ibn Wasil) 205–8
Ifranj (Franks) xliv, 5, 20, 83, 84, 177
Ilghazi of Mardin xxxii, 28, 38, 52
'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani ('Imad al-Din Muhammad ibn Muhammad al-Isfahani) xxxii, 58, 73, 74, 80, 117; document extracts 188–91, 201–4
'Imad al-Din Zangi *see* Zangi
imam xliv, 14–16, 44–5, 128
incendiaries, conduct of war 98, 99, 101
infantry 66, 77, 91–3, 184, 196, 211
inscriptions 8, 39, 42, 54, 61, 208; Mamluks 143, 150, 153; *minbar* 55
iqta' xliv, 17, 19, 73, 107, 149
Isabella I 131
Isabella II 128

al-Isfahani *see* ʿImad al-Din al-Isfahani
ISIL (Islamic State of Iraq and the Levant) *see* Islamic State
ISIS (Islamic State of Iraq and Syria/Islamic State of Iraq and *al-Sham see* Islamic State
Islam 158, 161–2, 165–6, 168–9; document extracts 178–9, 192, 195, 204, 207, 209, 215–16; First Crusade 37; making peace in the Levant 111, 114–16; making war in the Levant 84, 89–90; Mamluks 148, 153; Muslim world before the crusades 7–12, 18, 21; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 45, 47, 50–5, 60; post-Saladin period 128, 132, 134, 137; victory and stalemate 67, 71–2
Islamic State xliv, 162–4
Ismaʿili Shiʿism xlv, l
ʿIsmat al-Din (wife of Saladin) 72
isra' 57
Israel/Israelis 21, *152*, 161–3, 167, 214–16
Ithna ʿAshari Shiʿism (Twelver Shiʿism) l, 14

Jaffa 69–70, 77, 190, 207
jamiʿ xlv
Jawlan (Golan) 65
al-Jazira xlv, 73
Jerusalem 15, 162; document extracts 173–81, 186–91, 195, 197–8, 205–8, 216; First Crusade 27, 33–7; making peace in the Levant 107–8, 116–18; making war in the Levant 84–5; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 44, 47, 55–8; post-Saladin period 127–9, 132–3, 135–7; victory and stalemate 65–71, 74–9
Jesus xlv, 10, 115, 186
jihad xlv, 3–4, 161–4; the Ayyubids and 132–4; document extracts 172, 176, 181–4, 193, 210, 216–17; First Crusade 26, 32–9; making peace in the Levant 105, 110; making war in the Levant 81, 84–91, 100, 102; Mamluk 142, 149–51, 153–6; Muslim world before the crusades 12–13; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 43–4, 54–5, 58–62; post-Saladin period 136–7; victory and stalemate 71–2
al-jihad al-akbar xlv,89–90
al-jihad al-asghar xlv, 90
Jisr Jindas bridge 150–2, *152*
jizya xlv, 12, 171
Joscelin II of Edessa 29
Judgement Day 19, 88

Kaʿba xlv, 7, 11, 57, 187, 191
Kaiser Wilhelm II 160
Kalavun *see* Qalawun
Kamal al-Din *see* Ibn al-ʿAdim
al-Kamil fi'l-Ta'rikh (*The Complete History*) 176–8, 185–6
al-Kamil Muhammad (Ayyubid sultan) xxxii–xxxiv, 127–32, 135–8, 204–5
al-karr wa'l-farr 93
Kerak 65, 126, 129, 132, 187
Kerbogha (*atabeg* of Mosul) 27
Khadir al-Mihrani (Sufi *shaykh*) 153
khalifa (caliphs) xlii, 8
Khwarazmians xl, 129

Kilij-Arslan I (Seljuk ruler of *Rum*) 26
Kitab al-I'tibar (*The Book of Contemplation*) xl, 82, 122, 196
Kitab al-Jihad (*The Book of the Jihad*, by al-Sulami) xxxix, 32–4, 181
Knights Templar/Hospitallers 48, 67, 77
Köhler, Michael 2, 41, 59–62
Koran *see* Qur'an
kuffar xlv, 84
Kurds xv, 19, 92, 110, 148, 166

'la plaque tournante' (the pivot) 53–9
Lake Tiberias 67
Last Judgement 10, 57
Latin states 26–7, 50–1, 61, 93–4, 113; Mamluks 141, 155–6, 159; *see also* First Crusade
law, Muslim views on Frankish 118–20
legal texts 5, 37
Lesser Armenia 142, 155
lesser *jihad* xlv, 36, 90
letters, document extracts 187, 194–5
Lev, Yaacov 39, 42, 54–5, 59, 61, 73
Levant, before the Crusades 21–24; brief history 7–9; core beliefs and practices 10–12; economy and society 16–20; Franks through Muslim eyes 20–1; *jihad* 12–13; Sunnis and Shi'ites 13–16
Levant, making peace in 124; Muslims under Frankish rule 106–11; Muslim views on Frankish culture 114–22; trade 112–14; truces 104–7
Levant, making war in 102; armies and pitched battles 91–4; fighting at sea 99–100; Frankish influence 100–1; 'The Franks' 83–5; *jihad* and religious warfare 85–91; sources 81–3
Levant, post-Saladin 137; Ayyubids and the *jihad* 132–4; chronological overview 126–31; critics of the Ayyubids 136–7; family politics 131–2; relations with the Franks 134–6
lion symbolism 150–2, 178, 189
L'Islam et la Croisade (Sivan) 2
literature, contemporary 168–9; First Crusade 40–1; making peace in the Levant 124–5; making war in the Levant 102–3; Mamluks 156–7; Muslim world before the crusades 24–5; post-Saladin 137–8; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 62; victory and stalemate 79–80
Little, Donald 133, 154
looting 129, 158
Louis IX of France xxxiv, 84, 130, 135, 145, 156

Maalouf, Amin 2
Ma'arrat al-Nu'man 27, 107, 117
madrasa xlvi, 17, 51–4, 76
mahdi xlvi, 14
masjid xlvi, 11
Malikis xlvi, 10, 31
Malik-Shah (Great Seljuk sultan) xxxiv, 23, 28, 39, 51
Mallett, Alex 13, 35, 41
mamluks (soldiers) xlvi, 9, 92, 148, 182
Mamluks (Sultanate) xlvi, 155–6; chronological overview 139–44; historiography 143; *jihad*

153–5; legitimizing rule 149–53; Mamluk experience 144–5; Mamluk state 145–9
al-Mansur ʿAli (Mamluk sultan) 140–1
maps lii–lv
Marj ʿUyun 65, 193
martyrdom 89, 102; martyrdom operations 165
Mary, mother of Jesus 114–15
massacres 27, 107, 216
al-Masʿudi (Abu'l-Hasan ʿAli ibn al-Husayn al-Masʿudi) xxxiv, 21, 174–5
Masyaf 29, 64
Meadows of Gold and Mines of Gemstone (al-Masʿudi) xxxiv, 20, 174
Mecca xliii, 8, 11, 57, 66, 86, 110; document extracts 186, 191, 197, 216
medicine, Muslim views on Frankish 119–20, 199–200
Medieval Muslim Historians and the Franks in the Levant (Mallett) 3
Medina 7, 12, 66, 86, 109, 186
Men of the Pen 148
Men of the Sword 148
Men of the Turban 148
mercenaries 91–2, 129
Merits of Jerusalem, The (*Fada'il al-Bayt al-Muqaddas*) 57, 186–7
mihrab xlvi, 11, 75, 116, 179, 206
military architecture 95
military manuals, Muslim sources 82, 145
military tactics 82, 100, 195
minarets 54
minbar xlvi, 55–6, *56*, 72, 75, 206–7
miraculous night journey 57
Mir'at al-Zaman fi Ta'rikh al-Aʿyan (*The Mirror of Time concerning the History of Important People*) xxxix, 136, 207–9
Mirrors for Princes xlvi, 58
modern-day impact of Crusades 160–4
Möngke (Mongol Great Khan) xxxi, 141
Mongols xli, 80, 93, 102–3, 128–31, 141; document extracts 209–10; Mamluks 140–2, 148–9, 153–7
Mont Gisard 65
moral messages 21
morality, Muslim views on Frankish 120–1
al-Muʿazzam ʿIsa (Ayyubid sultan) xxxiv–xxxv, 127–9, 132, 135, 207
al-Muʿazzam Turan-Shah (Ayyubid sultan) xxxix, 73, 130
Muhammad (al-Kamil Muhammad, Ayyubid sultan) xxxii–xxxiv, 127–9, 132–4, 135–7, 204–5
Muhammad ibn Jubayr (Ibn Jubayr) 108
Muhammad ibn Muhammad al-Ghazali (Abu Hamid Muhammad ibn Muhammad al-Ghazali) 36
Muhammad, Prophet xxxiv–xxxv, 8–10, 14, 36, 57–8; document extracts 170, 172, 186, 208; making peace in the Levant 114–15; making war in the Levant 86, 91; victory and stalemate 66, 76
Muhammad, Great Seljuk Sultan
Muʿin al-Din (Muʿin al-Din Unur, Damascene military governor) xxxv, 44, 50–1, 72, 184–5, 198
mujahid xlvi, 72, 74, 91, 106, 133, 160, 167; First Crusade 39–40; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 55, 58, 61

muluk al-tawa'if xlvii, 22
al-Muqaddasi, Diya' al-Din Muhammad 109
muqarnas vaulting, mosques 54
al-murabitun xlvi, 22
mushrikun xlvii, 84
Muslim Brotherhood xliii, 161
Muslim–Byzantine frontier 38
Muslim–Frankish interactions 2, 5, 134–6, 159; Franks through Muslim eyes before 1096 20–1; making peace in the Levant 104; making war in the Levant 81–4, 102; Muslims under Frankish rule 106–11; Muslim views on Frankish culture 114–21
Muslim names (guide) xiv–xvi
Muslim perspectives *see* perspectives
al-Musta'li (Fatimid caliph) 16, 23
al-Mustansir (Fatimid caliph) 15, 23, 149
al-Musta'sim ('Abbasid caliph) 141
al-muwahhidun xlvi, 31

al-Nasir Dawud (Ayyubid sultan) xxxv, 129, 132, 136, 207
al-Nasir Muhammad (Mamluk sultan) 143, 157, 212
naval warfare 81, 99, 100
Nicaea (Iznik) 9, 26
Nicolle, David 95, 99, 101–3, 157
Nikopolis (Nikopol) 143
Nizam al-Mulk (Seljuk vizier) 23
Nizari Assassins xlvii, 15–16, 30, 46, 64
North Africa xlvi–xlvii, 48, 64, 68, 131, 159; First Crusade 29–31; Muslim world before the crusades 7–8, 15
Nur al-Din (Nur al-Din Mahmud ibn Zangi) xxxv, 29, 41–2, 158–60; document extracts 185–7, 201; making peace in the Levant 109; making war in the Levant 91–2; Mamluks 153; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 43–4, 47–8, 50–1, 53–60; victory and stalemate 63, 71–2, 75, 79

obligation, individual/of sufficiency 36
Osama bin Laden *see* Usama ibn Ladin

Palestine 23, 65, 129–31, 162, 214–15
paper making 114
Paradise 10, 37, 46, 54, 89, 173
peace agreements *see* treaties; truces
peasants 16, 87–8, 108–9, 159–60, 183
People of the Pact 12
People's Crusade (Peasants' Crusade) 26
Persian Empire 8
perspectives, 'Abbasids 8
perspectives, Frankish 104, 183
perspectives, modern-day 6, 18, 95, 165, 168
perspectives, Muslim 1–3, 33–5, 43, 57, 104–5; of the crusaders and their motives 177–82; on Frankish culture 114–21; making war in the Levant 81, 87, 90
Peter I of Cyprus 142

Philip II Augustus of France 68
piety: Christians xxxiv, 118; Mamluks 145, 149–50, 154
piety, Muslims xliii, 162; First Crusade 34, 39–40; making peace in the Levant 106, 108–9, 118; making war in the Levant 91; Mamluks 149; Muslim world before the crusades 12, 18; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 44, 46, 50–1, 54–5, 59; victory and stalemate 71–3, 76, 79
pigs/pork-eating 116–17, 197
pilgrims 7, 18, 20, 34, 85, 112; document extracts 179, 187, 199, 208; victory and stalemate 66, 69, 76
Pillars of Islam xlvii, 10–11
poetry 3–5, 33, 118, 121, 143, 201–2
political ambition/power/influence 40, 45, 59, 100, 106, 153
poll tax xlv, 12
pollution, Muslim views on Frankish culture 116–17
Prawer, Joshua 93
preachers, counter-crusade 27; *see also* religious scholars
preconceptions/prejudices 6, 120; *see also* perspectives
Principality of Antioch 44, 68, 155
prisoners of war 18
propaganda 162–3, 166, *166*, 186; First Crusade 38, 41; making peace in the Levant 105–6, 124; making war in the Levant 82, 88, 95; Mamluks 149, 153–4, 156; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 43–4, 51, 53–4, 57–60; post-Saladin period 133–4; victory and stalemate 72, 74, 79; *see also jihad*
prophecy 34
Prophet Muhammad *see* Muhammad

qadi xlvii, 38, 71, 148, 191, 204–7
al-Qadi al-Fadil xxxv–xxxvi, 70–1, 73
al-Qa'ida (al-Qaeda) xlviii, 161–5, 169, 214
Qalawun, house of *lxv*
Qalawun (al-Mansur Qalawun) xxxvi, 142, 145, 148, 156–7, 210–12
Qayrawan 14
Qur'an (Koran) xlviii, 5, 165; document extracts 170–4, 182, 217; First Crusade 32, 37; Mamluks 145, 150; making peace in the Levant 105, 114–15, 119; making war in the Levant 85, 88, 90; Muslim world before the crusades 7–12; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 49, 50, 56; victory and stalemate 72
Qutb, Sayyid xxxvi, 161
Qutuz (al-Muzaffar Qutuz, Mamluk sultan) xxxvi, 141, 209

Race for Paradise (Cobb) 2
Raful (Shayzari prisoner-of-war) 111
Ramadan xlviii, xlviii, 11, 209
ransomed prisoners of war 112, 190
rape, women prisoners of war 111
Rashid al-Din Sinan *see* Sinan
rat symbolism 150, *152*
Rawda island, River Nile 144
Raymond of Antioch 44
Raymond II of Tripoli 29
Raymond III of Tripoli xxxvi–xxxvii, 67, 111

razing the ports, conduct of war 100
reconquista, Spain 33
relic of the True Cross 67, 69, 78
religious beliefs and practices 10, 24, 53, 114
religious piety *see* piety
religious scholars 10, 164; document extracts 181–3, 207–8; First Crusade 32–4, 36–8, 41; making peace in the Levant 109, 121; making war in the Levant 86, 89; Mamluks 145, 154; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 49, 51, 53, 57; post-Saladin period 136–7; victory and stalemate 71; *see also* Sufis; *specific scholars by name*
religious texts 143
resistance to Crusaders xxx, xxxviii–xxxix, 13, 61, 129, 139
revenge attacks 167
Reynald of Châtillon xxxvii, 65–6, 75, 84, 111, 189
rhetoric 35, 75, 133, 158, 163, 165, 167–8
Richard I (Richard the Lionheart) xxxvii, 68, 76–7, 84, 105; letters exchanged during the crusade of 194–5
Roger of Salerno 28
Romanus Diogenes xxviii, 9
rum (Byzantines) xlviii, 5, 177–8, 183
Rum, Seljuk Sultanate of lviii–lix, 9, 23, 26–7, 44, 92, 141

sagas, epic 5
Saladin lxiv, 41, 79, 158–62, 165–6, 169; articulation of power 71–5; Baha' al-Din ibn Shaddad on 191–4; chronological overview 63–9; crusades of the late 12th century 76–9; Ibn al-Athir on 187–8; 'Imad al-Din al-Isfahani on 188–91, 201–4; letters 194–5; making peace in the Levant 105–7, 111–12, 118, 122; making war in the Levant 84, 92, 95, 96–7, 100, 103; Mamluks 153–4; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 43, 46–7, 55, 60–1; sources 70–1; victorious *mujahid* 73–5; *see also* Levant, post-Saladin
salat xlviii, 11, 17, 208
al-Salih Ayyub (Ayyubid sultan) *lxiv*, xxxviii, 130, 135; Mamluks 139, 144, 149, 154
al-Salih Isma'il (heir of Nur al-Din) 63–4, 72
al-Salih Isma'il (Ayyubid sultan) 129
Salihiyya 144
Saljuqs *see* Seljuks
sawm xlviii, 11
Sayf al-Din Ghazi 29, 185
Sayyid 'Ali al-Hariri: al-Akhbar al-Saniyya fi'l-Hurub al-Salibiyya (*The Splendid Accounts in the Crusading Wars*) 161
Sea of Precious Virtues, The (*Bahr al-Fava'id*) (anon) 58, 115, 118
Second Crusade 6, 43–4, 62, 83, 93, 106, 183–5
Seljuks (Saljuqs) xlix, 9, 15, 19–23, 181; First Crusade 26–8, 35–6, 40, 42; making war in the Levant 91–2; Mamluks 141, 149; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 43, 46, 51, 54; post-Saladin period 129; serfs under Latin rule
'Seveners' 14
sexual morality, Muslim views on Frankish 120–2, 200–1
Shafi'is xlix, 10, 32, 57, 87, 145
shahada xlvii, xlix, 10
Shajar al-Durr (Shajarat al-Durr) xxxviii, 18, 139–40, 144
al-Sham *see* Bilad al-Sham

Shawar (Fatimid vizier) xxii, 47–8
shaykh xlix
Shihab al-Din (uncle of Saladin) 64
Shi'ites xlix, 38, 166; Muslim world before the crusades 8, 13–16, 18–19; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 44, 51, 53
Shirkuh (Asad al-Din Shirkuh ibn Shadhi) xxxviii, 47–8, 60, 73
Sibt ibn al-Jawzi (Shams al-Din Yusuf ibn Qizughli) xxxviii, 136–7, 207–9
Sicily 2, 21–2, 48, 113, 125, 130; document extracts 180–1, 208; First Crusade 30, 33
Sidon 127
sieges 27, 64–8, 74, 81, 92, 106, 113; *al-Kamil fi'l-Ta'rikh* 185–6; conduct of war 94–101; document extracts 176, 185, 213; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 49–51; Tiberias 65–6, 72
Sinan (Rashid al-Din Sinan, Nizari leader) 46, 64, 70
Sivan, Emmanuel 2, 53, 57, 134, 138
slaves xlvi, 55, 68, 139, 144, 155; document extracts 203, 206–8; First Crusade 28; making peace in the Levant 108, 112–13; making war in the Levant 85, 91; Muslim world before the crusades 18; *see also mamluks*
sons of the people xli, 148
Spain 2, 5, 33, 174
Splendid Accounts in the Crusading Wars, The (*Sayyid 'Ali al-Hariri*) 161
Statements of Usama ibn Ladin (document extract) 213–17
successors of Saladin *see* Levant, post-Saladin
Sufis xlix, 54, 76, 118, 135; document extracts 191, 195; First Crusade 36; making war in the Levant 90, 92; Mamluks 141, 153; Muslim world before the crusades 13, 17–18
suicide 89; suicide attacks 164
al-Sulami ('Ali ibn Tahir al-Sulami) xxxix, 32–3, 36–7, 87–91, 181–4
sultan xlix–lxv
Sunnis l, 36, 84, 148, 166; Muslim world before the crusades 8–11, 13, 20; nurturing enthusiasm for the *jihad* 43, 48, 60–1; post-Saladin period 127–8; 'Sunni revival' 43, 51–4, 110
supernatural powers, Sinan's fortress of Masyaf 64
Syria 62, 138, *146*, 163, 166; document extracts 177, 180–1, 185; First Crusade 29, 34–5, 39, 42; making war in the Levant 82, *96*; Muslim world before the crusades 9, 19–20; victory and stalemate 73, 80
Syrian Assassins 64

Tall al-Sultan 64
Taqi al-Din 'Umar (nephew of Saladin) 74, 212
taxation xliv, xlv, 73, 159, 205; First Crusade 31; making peace in the Levant 107–8; Muslim world before the crusades 12, 16–17, 19
technological innovations, impact of the Crusades 159
Temple Mount 83, 117, 129, 150, 205
Temujin (Chingiz Khan) xxx, 141
terrorism, modern-day xliv, xlv, 160, 163–5, 169, 213–14
Third Crusade xxxviii, 63, 68
Tiberias 52, 65–6, 74, 188
trade 73, 159; making peace in the Levant 104–5, 112–13, 124; making war in the Levant 90, 100; Mamluks 142–3, 155; Muslim world before the crusades 7–8, 16–17; post-Saladin period 126, 134–5
treachery 106, 189, 190, 211

treaties 5, 64, 70, 78, 104–6, 112, 125; document extracts 181, 189, 210–12; First Crusade 41; Mamluks 144, 155–6; post-Saladin period 133, 137; *see also* alliances; truces
Trinity, Muslim views on xlvii, 115
Tripoli 27–9, 48–9, 66, 74, 111, 142
truces 66, 69, 158, 162; document extracts 198, 206, 211–12; making peace in the Levant 104–6, 119, 124; post-Saladin period 127–8, 135
True Cross, relic of 67, 69, 78
Tughtigin (Zahir al-Din Tughtigin) xxxix, 29, 37, 52
Tunisia 14, 22
Turan-Shah (Al-Mu'azzam Turan-Shah ibn Ayyub) xxviii, 73, 130, 139–41
Turcomans *see* Turkmen
Turkish Mamluk Sultanate 140
Turkmen l, 27–8, 38, 91–2, 148, 181; Muslim world before the crusades 9, 19
Turks xlix, 8–9, 19, 43, 51–2, 62, 142–3
twelfth-century Renaissance 113
Twelver Shi'ism l, 14
Tyre 65, 67, 69, 73, 121; document extracts 184, 201, 210–12

'Ubayd Allah ('Abd Allah, Fatimid caliph) 15
'ulama' (*ulema*) l, 17, 177, 190–1, 205
Umayyads l, 31, 207; Muslim world before the crusades 8, 14, 21
al-'Urayma (Arima) 50
Urfa (Edessa) 27–8, 31, 39–40, 43–4, 126
Usama ibn Ladin (Osama bin Laden) xxxix–xl, 162–5, 167–8, 213
Usama ibn Munqidh (Usama ibn Murshid ibn 'Ali) xl, 5, 34,; document extracts 180, 196–201; making peace in the Levant 110, 114, 125; making war in the Levant 82, 103
'Uthman ibn 'Affan 49

vaulting, mosques 54
Venice 112–14
vizier l

al-Wasiti (Muhammad ibn Ahmad al-Wasiti) 57, 186–7
weapons 112–13, 122, 145; document extracts 178, 188; making war in the Levant 82, 91, 98–9, 101, 102
Weigert, Gideon 105
West Bank 162
White, Lynn 101
Wilhelm II ,Kaiser 160
wine-seller anecdote 120
women 48, 83, 87–8, 110–11, 117, 120–2; document extracts 173, 179, 190–2, 197, 201–4; Muslim world before the crusades 11, 17–18
wood shortages 100

Yemen 44–5, 64, 135, 149, 210
Yusuf ibn Qizughli *see* Sibt ibn al-Jawzi

al-Zafir (Fatimid caliph) 45
Zahir al-Din Tughtigin *see* Tughtigin

al-Zahir Baybars *see* Baybars al-Bunduqdari
al-Zahir Ghazi (Ayyubid sultan) 127
zakat xlvii, l, 11, 110
Zangi (‘Imad al-Din Zangi ibn Aq Sunqur) xl, 26, 29, 31, 39–40, 177, 201; sons of *see* Nur al-Din; Sayf al-Din
Zangids li, 40, 46, 49–51; document extracts 187, 191; making war in the Levant 91–2; Mamluks 149; post-Saladin period 127; victory and stalemate 63, 70, 72